

---

# NSFOCUS ADS

## User Guide

---

**NSFOCUS**

Version: V4.5R90F03 (2021-08-17)

Confidentiality: RESTRICTED

---

© 2021 NSFOCUS

---

---

■ Copyright © 2021 NSFOCUS Technologies, Inc. All rights reserved.

---

Unless otherwise stated, **NSFOCUS Technologies, Inc.** holds the copyright for the content of this document, including but not limited to the layout, figures, photos, methods, and procedures, which are protected under the intellectual property and copyright laws. No part of this publication may be reproduced or quoted, in any form or by any means, without prior written permission of **NSFOCUS Technologies, Inc.**

---

# Contents

---

<b>Preface .....</b>	<b>1</b>
Scope.....	1
Audience .....	1
Organization.....	2
Conventions .....	2
Customer Support.....	3
<b>1 Introduction.....</b>	<b>4</b>
1.1 Product Overview.....	4
1.2 Typical Deployment .....	4
1.2.1 In-Path Deployment.....	4
1.2.2 Out-of-Path Deployment.....	5
<b>2 Web-based Manager .....</b>	<b>6</b>
2.1 Login .....	6
2.2 System Users.....	9
2.3 Web Page Layout.....	9
2.4 Common Icons and Buttons .....	11
<b>3 System Administration .....</b>	<b>12</b>
3.1 Local Settings.....	12
3.1.1 Basic Information.....	12
3.1.2 Interface Configuration .....	15
3.1.3 User Management .....	18
3.1.4 Management Mode Configuration .....	21
3.1.5 Configuration File Management .....	24
3.1.6 Bandwidth Overrun Limit Configuration.....	25
3.1.7 Hardware Alert Thresholds .....	26
3.1.8 Management Interface Access Control .....	28
3.1.9 HA Configuration.....	30
3.1.10 (Optional) Bypass Configuration .....	43
3.1.11 Collaboration Configuration .....	47
3.2 Security Configuration .....	54
3.2.1 Login Security Settings.....	54
3.2.2 Locked User Management .....	56
3.2.3 Authentication Configuration.....	57

3.3 Log Services.....	58
3.3.1 Syslog Configuration .....	58
3.3.2 SNMP Configuration .....	60
3.3.3 Email Configuration.....	62
3.3.4 SFTP/SSH Configuration.....	64
3.4 Others.....	65
3.4.1 License.....	65
3.4.2 System Update .....	68
3.4.3 Remote Assistance .....	71
3.4.4 SSL Certificate Import .....	72
3.4.5 One-Click Inspection .....	73
3.4.6 Version Information .....	73
3.4.7 Web API File Download .....	74
<b>4 Real-Time Monitoring .....</b>	<b>75</b>
4.1 Real-Time System Status .....	75
4.2 System Information.....	81
<b>5 Policies .....</b>	<b>82</b>
5.1 Anti-DDoS Policies.....	82
5.1.1 Protection Group Management .....	82
5.1.2 Policy Configuration for Protection Groups .....	94
5.1.3 Protection Group Policy Templates.....	118
5.1.4 Advanced Global Parameters .....	121
5.1.5 Response Page Settings.....	121
5.1.6 SSL Certificate Management .....	124
5.1.7 Mobile User-Agent Rules .....	126
5.2 Access Control Policies.....	127
5.2.1 Access Control Rules .....	127
5.2.2 Reflection Protection Rules .....	133
5.2.3 GeoIP Rules .....	135
5.2.4 Regular Expression Rules .....	138
5.2.5 DNS Keyword Checking .....	139
5.2.6 HTTP Keyword Checking.....	141
5.2.7 Connection Exhaustion Protection Rules.....	143
5.2.8 URL-ACL Protection Rules .....	145
5.2.9 Blacklist .....	148
5.2.10 Whitelist.....	156
<b>6 Diversion and Injection .....</b>	<b>163</b>
6.1 General Settings .....	163
6.1.1 Running Mode .....	163
6.1.2 Port Channel Configuration .....	165
6.1.3 GRE Tunnel Configuration .....	167

6.1.4 IP Address Configuration .....	168
6.1.5 Incoming/Outgoing Configuration .....	170
6.2 Diversion Route .....	171
6.2.1 BGP Route .....	171
6.2.2 IP Route Assignment .....	174
6.3 Traffic Injection .....	175
6.3.1 Injection Interfaces .....	176
6.3.2 Injection Routes .....	178
6.3.3 MAC Address Table .....	188
6.4 Traffic Diversion .....	191
6.4.1 Filtering Rules .....	191
6.4.2 Manual Diversion .....	193
6.4.3 Group Diversion .....	198
6.4.4 Diversion Routing Table .....	200
6.5 Advanced Route Setting .....	201
6.5.1 MPLS Route .....	201
6.5.2 Other Routes .....	203
6.6 Syslog Diversion Configuration .....	206
6.6.1 Diversion Configuration .....	206
6.6.2 Diversion Rule List .....	208
<b>7 Logs .....</b>	<b>209</b>
7.1 Attack Logs .....	209
7.1.1 Attack Details .....	209
7.1.2 Statistical Graph .....	211
7.2 System Logs .....	212
7.2.1 System Operation Logs .....	212
7.2.2 System Login Logs .....	213
7.2.3 Link Status Logs .....	214
7.2.4 Traffic Diversion Logs .....	215
7.2.5 HA Synchronization Logs .....	216
7.2.6 Syslog Diversion Logs .....	217
7.2.7 Authentication Configuration Logs .....	218
7.3 Log Analysis .....	218
7.4 Protection Logs .....	220
<b>8 Advanced Applications .....</b>	<b>222</b>
8.1 Packet Capture Management .....	222
8.1.1 Configuring Manual Packet Capture .....	222
8.1.2 Creating Automatic Packet Capture .....	233
8.2 Pattern Matching Rules .....	235
8.2.1 Creating a Pattern Matching Rule .....	236
8.2.2 Creating Pattern Matching Rules in Batches .....	239

8.2.3 Enabling/Disabling Pattern Matching Rules .....	240
8.2.4 Modifying Pattern Matching Rules .....	241
8.2.5 Deleting Pattern Matching Rules .....	241
8.2.6 Viewing Pattern Matching Rules.....	241
8.3 Cloud Signaling.....	241
8.4 Collaboration with NTI .....	245
<b>9 Operation and Maintenance .....</b>	<b>248</b>
9.1 Device Protection Status .....	248
9.1.1 Checking the Trust Status .....	248
9.1.2 Checking the Protection Status .....	249
9.2 Network Diagnosis.....	250
9.2.1 Ping.....	250
9.2.2 Port Check.....	251
9.2.3 Tcpdump .....	251
<b>10 Console-based Management.....</b>	<b>253</b>
10.1 Login to the Console .....	253
10.2 Details .....	254
10.2.1 Configuring IPv4 Network Settings .....	254
10.2.2 Configuring IPv6 Network Settings.....	255
10.2.3 Configuring DNS Settings .....	255
10.2.4 Changing the Console Password.....	256
10.2.5 Setting System Time .....	257
10.2.6 Restoring Default Settings .....	257
10.2.7 Restoring Initial Password of Web Administrator.....	257
10.2.8 Setting the Console Timeout Value .....	258
10.2.9 Rolling Back the Version .....	258
10.2.10 Viewing System Information .....	259
10.2.11 Configuring the Management Interface Access Control Function .....	259
10.2.12 Configuring the Web Server Control Function .....	260
10.2.13 Configuring Remote Assistance.....	260
10.2.14 Resetting Authentication Method.....	261
10.2.15 Restarting the System.....	261
10.2.16 Exiting the Console.....	261
<b>11 Initial Configuration .....</b>	<b>262</b>
11.1 Login to Console .....	262
11.2 Network Configuration on the Console.....	263
11.3 Login to Web-Based Manager .....	263
11.4 Importing a License.....	266
11.5 Network Configuration on Web-based Manager .....	267
<b>12 System Maintenance.....</b>	<b>269</b>

12.1 System Upgrade .....	269
12.2 Common Troubleshooting.....	270
12.2.1 Web Login Failure.....	270
12.2.2 Device Access Failure .....	270
12.2.3 License Import Failure .....	270
12.2.4 MAC Address Learning Failure .....	271
12.2.5 Ping Failure or Excessive Packets Drop .....	271
<b>A Acronyms and Abbreviations.....</b>	<b>272</b>
<b>B Default Parameters.....</b>	<b>230</b>
B.1 Default Parameters of the Management Interface .....	230
B.2 Default Account of the Web Administrator.....	230
B.3 Default Account of the Console Administrator.....	230
B.4 Default Account of the CLI Administrator .....	230
B.5 Communication Parameters of the Console Port .....	230
<b>C IPv4/IPv6 Support .....</b>	<b>231</b>

# Figures

---

Figure 1-1 In-path deployment of an ADS device.....	5
Figure 1-2 Out-of-path deployment of an ADS device .....	5
Figure 2-1 Alert page .....	7
Figure 2-2 Login page of the ADS device.....	7
Figure 2-3 Window displayed after successful login.....	8
Figure 2-4 Web page layout .....	10
Figure 3-1 Basic Settings page.....	13
Figure 3-2 System check results.....	14
Figure 3-3 Interface working mode of ADS NX5-4020E .....	16
Figure 3-4 Changing the working mode of 1000M electrical ports .....	18
Figure 3-5 System users .....	18
Figure 3-6 Adding a system user.....	19
Figure 3-7 Adding a system user – custom access user.....	19
Figure 3-8 Configuring the password of a CLI user.....	21
Figure 3-9 Changing the password of a CLI user.....	21
Figure 3-10 Management Mode page .....	22
Figure 3-11 Add Mgmt Mode Config page.....	22
Figure 3-12 Configuring HTTP authentication synchronization.....	23
Figure 3-13 Configuration file management .....	24
Figure 3-14 Configuration file backup.....	25
Figure 3-15 Bandwidth Overrun Limit page.....	26
Figure 3-16 Editing bandwidth overrun thresholds.....	26
Figure 3-17 Hardware Alert Threshold page on a hardware device .....	27
Figure 3-18 Hardware Alert Threshold page on a virtual device .....	27
Figure 3-19 Editing hardware alert thresholds .....	27
Figure 3-20 Management Interface Access Control page (access control disabled by default) .....	28
Figure 3-21 Editing management interface access control.....	28



Figure 3-22 Creating a management interface access control rule.....	29
Figure 3-23 List of management interface access control rules .....	30
Figure 3-24 Network topology for ADS in out-of-path mode to implement HA .....	31
Figure 3-25 HA Configuration page.....	33
Figure 3-26 Editing basic settings.....	34
Figure 3-27 Advanced Configurations area.....	35
Figure 3-28 Editing advanced settings .....	35
Figure 3-29 Policy configurations to be synchronized.....	37
Figure 3-30 Diversion and injection configurations to be synchronized.....	38
Figure 3-31 System configurations to be synchronized .....	39
Figure 3-32 Advanced configurations to be synchronized .....	39
Figure 3-33 HA Configuration page on a master device .....	40
Figure 3-34 HA Configuration page on a slave device .....	40
Figure 3-35 HA status information of a master device.....	41
Figure 3-36 HA status information of a slave device .....	41
Figure 3-37 Network topology for ADS in in-path mode to implement HA.....	42
Figure 3-38 HA configuration on ADS in in-path mode .....	43
Figure 3-39 Bypass Configuration page.....	44
Figure 3-40 Topology for the interaction between ADS and the bypass switch.....	45
Figure 3-41 Adding an external bypass group.....	46
Figure 3-42 Collaboration Configuration page .....	48
Figure 3-43 Configuring an upper-level ADS .....	48
Figure 3-44 Collaboration Configuration page .....	49
Figure 3-45 List of IP addresses of lower-level devices.....	49
Figure 3-46 Adding a lower-level ADS.....	49
Figure 3-47 Viewing diverted traffic .....	50
Figure 3-48 Configuring a lower-level ADS .....	50
Figure 3-49 Lower-level ADS configuration.....	52
Figure 3-50 Status of diverted traffic .....	53
Figure 3-51 Configuring manually notified IP addresses.....	53
Figure 3-52 Notification filtering rule page .....	53
Figure 3-53 Adding a notification filtering rule .....	54
Figure 3-54 Configuring login security parameters .....	55

Figure 3-55 Locked User Management page .....	57
Figure 3-56 Authentication Configuration page.....	57
Figure 3-57 Editing authentication parameters .....	57
Figure 3-58 Configuring syslog .....	59
Figure 3-59 Configuring a syslog server.....	59
Figure 3-60 SNMP Trap Setting page .....	61
Figure 3-61 Log sending by email .....	62
Figure 3-62 Editing log sending parameters .....	62
Figure 3-63 Send Test Mail dialog box .....	63
Figure 3-64 Email test result .....	64
Figure 3-65 Editing SFTP/SSH settings.....	64
Figure 3-66 License Info page before the import of a license .....	66
Figure 3-67 License Info page on a hardware device after the import of a license .....	66
Figure 3-68 License Info page on a virtual device after the import of a license .....	66
Figure 3-69 System Upgrade page .....	69
Figure 3-70 Upgrade notes page .....	70
Figure 3-71 Remote assistance.....	71
Figure 3-72 Configuring remote assistance.....	71
Figure 3-73 Configuring remote assistance.....	72
Figure 3-74 SSL Certificate Import page .....	72
Figure 3-75 One-Click Inspection page .....	73
Figure 3-76 One-click inspection result .....	73
Figure 3-77 Version information .....	73
Figure 3-78 Web API File Download page .....	74
Figure 4-1 Traffic trend .....	76
Figure 4-2 Attack traffic .....	78
Figure 4-3 Top 10 destination IP addresses by incoming traffic .....	78
Figure 4-4 System resources .....	79
Figure 4-5 Collaboration status .....	79
Figure 4-6 Interface status of ADS.....	80
Figure 4-7 System information .....	81
Figure 5-1 Protection groups.....	83
Figure 5-2 Basic information of a protection group .....	83

Figure 5-3 Configuring the running mode .....	84
Figure 5-4 IP List page.....	84
Figure 5-5 Adding an IP address range .....	85
Figure 5-6 Protection policies for a protection group.....	86
Figure 5-7 Blacklist of the protection group .....	86
Figure 5-8 List of URL protection rules of a protection group .....	87
Figure 5-9 Adding a URL protection rule — unified protection .....	87
Figure 5-10 Adding a URL protection rule — precision protection.....	87
Figure 5-11 Protection Groups page.....	90
Figure 5-12 Configuring auto-learning parameters.....	91
Figure 5-13 Auto-learning configured and started .....	92
Figure 5-14 Editing auto-learning parameters.....	93
Figure 5-15 Auto-learning details .....	94
Figure 5-16 DDoS protection policy area .....	95
Figure 5-17 Anomalous packet filtering rules .....	97
Figure 5-18 Reflection protection policy of a protection group .....	98
Figure 5-19 Adding reflection protection rules .....	98
Figure 5-20 HTTP Keyword Checking Policy area .....	99
Figure 5-21 Configuring HTTP keyword checking rules.....	99
Figure 5-22 Port check policy of a protection group.....	100
Figure 5-23 HTTPS protection policies of a protection group.....	101
Figure 5-24 Creating an application-layer protection rule .....	102
Figure 5-25 HTTP protection policy .....	104
Figure 5-26 DNS Keyword Checking Policy area .....	107
Figure 5-27 Configuring DNS keyword checking rules.....	107
Figure 5-28 DNS Protection Policy area .....	108
Figure 5-29 TCP Control Parameters Protection Policy area .....	109
Figure 5-30 TCP regular expression protection policy.....	111
Figure 5-31 Adding regular expression rules .....	112
Figure 5-32 IP Behavior Control Policy area .....	112
Figure 5-33 SIP Protection Policy area .....	113
Figure 5-34 UDP Payload Check Policy area .....	114
Figure 5-35 UDP regular expression protection policy .....	114

Figure 5-36 Adding UDP regular expression rules.....	115
Figure 5-37 UDP Protection Policy area .....	115
Figure 5-38 ICMP Protection Policy area .....	116
Figure 5-39 Watermark protection policy .....	117
Figure 5-40 Protocol ID check policy .....	118
Figure 5-41 Protection group policy templates .....	119
Figure 5-42 Basic information of a protection group policy template .....	119
Figure 5-43 Configuring protection policies for a protection group policy template .....	120
Figure 5-44 Advanced Global Parameters page .....	121
Figure 5-45 Response Page Settings tab page .....	122
Figure 5-46 Response Page Settings page.....	122
Figure 5-47 Response page preview .....	124
Figure 5-48 SSL certificate management .....	124
Figure 5-49 Adding an SSL certificate .....	125
Figure 5-50 Mobile user-agent rules .....	126
Figure 5-51 Adding a mobile user-agent rule.....	126
Figure 5-52 List of access control rules .....	128
Figure 5-53 Creating an access control rule.....	128
Figure 5-54 Creating access control rules in batches .....	130
Figure 5-55 Enabling access control rules.....	131
Figure 5-56 Confirmation dialog box.....	131
Figure 5-57 Reflection protection rules.....	133
Figure 5-58 Creating a reflection protection rule .....	134
Figure 5-59 List of GeoIP rules.....	135
Figure 5-60 Creating a GeoIP rule .....	136
Figure 5-61 Viewing the GeoIP library .....	137
Figure 5-62 List of regular expression rules.....	138
Figure 5-63 Creating a regular expression rule .....	138
Figure 5-64 List of DNS keyword checking rules.....	140
Figure 5-65 Creating a DNS keyword checking rule .....	140
Figure 5-66 List of HTTP keyword checking rules.....	142
Figure 5-67 Creating an HTTP keyword checking rule .....	142
Figure 5-68 List of connection exhaustion rules .....	143

Figure 5-69 Creating a connection exhaustion rule.....	144
Figure 5-70 List of URL-ACL rules.....	146
Figure 5-71 Creating a URL-ACL rule .....	146
Figure 5-72 Blacklist status.....	150
Figure 5-73 Enabling the blacklist policy .....	151
Figure 5-74 Blacklist function enabled .....	151
Figure 5-75 Adding a blacklist entry .....	152
Figure 5-76 Viewing blacklist entries.....	153
Figure 5-77 Searching for an IP address .....	154
Figure 5-78 Blacklist search result.....	154
Figure 5-79 Importing a blacklist file.....	154
Figure 5-80 Import success prompt.....	155
Figure 5-81 Viewing import results.....	155
Figure 5-82 Exporting a blacklist file.....	156
Figure 5-83 Viewing blacklist export results.....	156
Figure 5-84 Whitelist configuration page.....	157
Figure 5-85 Importing the whitelist file .....	158
Figure 5-86 Import progress message .....	159
Figure 5-87 Viewing the import result .....	159
Figure 5-88 Querying the whitelist .....	160
Figure 5-89 Whitelist query result.....	160
Figure 5-90 Clearing trust relationships.....	161
Figure 5-91 Clearing the configuration.....	161
Figure 6-1 Running mode of the ADS device (diversion mode).....	164
Figure 6-2 Editing the running mode (diversion mode).....	164
Figure 6-3 Port Channel page.....	166
Figure 6-4 Creating a port channel for the ADS device .....	166
Figure 6-5 GRE Tunnel Setting page .....	167
Figure 6-6 Creating a GRE tunnel.....	167
Figure 6-7 IP address list in diversion mode .....	168
Figure 6-8 Adding an IP address .....	169
Figure 6-9 Adding a loopback address .....	170
Figure 6-10 Incoming/Outgoing Setting page.....	171

Figure 6-11 Adding a pair of incoming/outgoing interfaces.....	171
Figure 6-12 Local route parameters .....	171
Figure 6-13 Creating a BGP route.....	172
Figure 6-14 Adding a BGP neighbor.....	173
Figure 6-15 IP route assignment.....	174
Figure 6-16 Creating an IP route .....	175
Figure 6-17 Injection interface list.....	176
Figure 6-18 Adding an injection interface.....	177
Figure 6-19 Injection routes .....	179
Figure 6-20 Creating an injection route .....	179
Figure 6-21 Creating injection routes in batches.....	182
Figure 6-22 Viewing injection routes and learned labels .....	183
Figure 6-23 Advanced options .....	185
Figure 6-24 Advanced options – with the injection route redundancy enabled.....	186
Figure 6-25 Searching for injection routes.....	188
Figure 6-26 MAC address table .....	189
Figure 6-27 Adding the mapping between an IP address and a MAC address.....	189
Figure 6-28 Querying the MAC address mapped to an IP address .....	190
Figure 6-29 Configuring invalid MAC addresses .....	190
Figure 6-30 Filtering rules.....	191
Figure 6-31 Creating a diversion filtering rule.....	192
Figure 6-32 Traffic diversion rules.....	193
Figure 6-33 Creating a traffic diversion rule.....	194
Figure 6-34 Creating traffic diversion rules in batches .....	195
Figure 6-35 Filtering manual diversion rules .....	196
Figure 6-36 Deleting a specified diversion rule .....	197
Figure 6-37 Group diversion rules .....	198
Figure 6-38 Creating a group diversion rule .....	199
Figure 6-39 Diversion routing table.....	200
Figure 6-40 Searching for diversion routes.....	200
Figure 6-41 List of MPLS routes .....	201
Figure 6-42 Creating an MPLS route .....	201
Figure 6-43 Adding a neighbor for MPLS route .....	202

Figure 6-44 List of other routes.....	203
Figure 6-45 Editing LDP route parameters .....	204
Figure 6-46 ADS login in SSH mode.....	205
Figure 6-47 Editing OSPF route parameters .....	205
Figure 6-48 Syslog-based diversion rule list.....	206
Figure 6-49 Creating a diversion rule.....	207
Figure 6-50 Syslog diversion list .....	208
Figure 7-1 Attack logs.....	210
Figure 7-2 Attack proportion.....	211
Figure 7-3 Number of attacks of each type .....	212
Figure 7-4 System operation logs.....	213
Figure 7-5 System login logs .....	214
Figure 7-6 Link status logs.....	215
Figure 7-7 Traffic diversion logs.....	216
Figure 7-8 HA synchronization logs .....	217
Figure 7-9 Syslog diversion logs.....	218
Figure 7-10 Authentication configuration logs.....	218
Figure 7-11 Attack traffic statistics .....	218
Figure 7-12 24-hour traffic (in kpps).....	219
Figure 7-13 24-hour traffic (in Mbps).....	219
Figure 7-14 24-hour attack type statistics .....	220
Figure 7-15 24-hour attacked IP statistics .....	220
Figure 7-16 Protection event statistics .....	221
Figure 8-1 Manual Packet Capture page .....	223
Figure 8-2 Creating a manual packet capture task .....	223
Figure 8-3 Viewing details of a packet capture file.....	226
Figure 8-4 Viewing details about a captured packet.....	227
Figure 8-5 IP Layer area.....	228
Figure 8-6 Confirmation dialog box.....	228
Figure 8-7 Newly created blacklist entry .....	228
Figure 8-8 DNS packet information.....	229
Figure 8-9 Extracting DNS fingerprints.....	229
Figure 8-10 Newly created DNS keyword checking rule.....	230

Figure 8-11 HTTP area.....	230
Figure 8-12 Extracting HTTP fingerprints .....	231
Figure 8-13 Newly created HTTP keyword checking rule.....	231
Figure 8-14 Data area.....	232
Figure 8-15 Extracting payload fingerprints .....	232
Figure 8-16 Newly created pattern matching rule .....	233
Figure 8-17 Automatic Packet Capture page.....	234
Figure 8-18 Configuring an automatic packet capture task.....	234
Figure 8-19 Automatic packet capture file list .....	235
Figure 8-20 Pattern Matching Rules page .....	236
Figure 8-21 Creating a pattern matching rule (TCP).....	236
Figure 8-22 Creating pattern matching rules in batches.....	240
Figure 8-23 Topology of the cloud signaling scenario .....	242
Figure 8-24 Configuration and Status page.....	242
Figure 8-25 Configuring cloud signaling parameters.....	243
Figure 8-26 Configuring the cloud signaling IP address and CNAME list .....	244
Figure 8-27 Message displayed in the case that cloud signaling cannot be enabled .....	244
Figure 8-28 Page displayed after cloud signaling is enabled .....	245
Figure 8-29 NTI page.....	246
Figure 8-30 Threat Intelligence Query area .....	247
Figure 9-1 Trusted IP page .....	248
Figure 9-2 Viewing the trust information of a source IP address .....	249
Figure 9-3 Protection Status page .....	249
Figure 9-4 Viewing the protection status of a destination IP address.....	250
Figure 9-5 Network diagnosis – ping .....	250
Figure 9-6 Network diagnosis – port check .....	251
Figure 9-7 Network diagnosis – tcpdump .....	252
Figure 10-1 Main menu of the console .....	254
Figure 10-2 IPv4 network settings .....	255
Figure 10-3 IPv6 network settings .....	255
Figure 10-4 Configuring the DNS server .....	256
Figure 10-5 Changing the console password.....	256
Figure 10-6 Main menu after the password is changed.....	256



Figure 10-7 Setting system time.....	257
Figure 10-8 Restoring the initial password of the web administrator .....	257
Figure 10-9 Setting the console timeout value .....	258
Figure 10-10 Setting the timeout value .....	258
Figure 10-11 Rolling back the version .....	259
Figure 10-12 Viewing system information.....	259
Figure 10-13 Configuring the management interface access control function .....	259
Figure 10-14 Managing the web server.....	260
Figure 10-15 Configuring remote assistance.....	260
Figure 10-16 Resetting the vADS authentication method.....	261
Figure 10-17 Restarting the system.....	261
Figure 10-18 System restart setting window .....	261
Figure 11-1 Security alert page .....	264
Figure 11-2 Login page .....	264
Figure 11-3 Web-based manager .....	265
Figure 11-4 Setting the country/region and time zone .....	265
Figure 11-5 Changing the initial password.....	266
Figure 11-6 License page before the import of a license.....	267
Figure 11-7 Terms and conditions for use of NSFOCUS products .....	错误!未定义书签。
Figure 11-8 Importing the license successfully .....	267
Figure 12-1 System upgrade .....	269

# Tables

---

Table 2-1 User permissions .....	9
Table 2-2 Web page layout .....	10
Table 2-3 Common buttons .....	11
Table 2-4 Buttons and icons .....	11
Table 3-1 Basic system settings.....	13
Table 3-2 Interface working mode parameters.....	17
Table 3-3 describes parameters for adding a user.....	19
Table 3-4 Management mode parameters.....	22
Table 3-5 Parameters for configuring HTTP authentication synchronization .....	24
Table 3-6 Configuration file backup parameters .....	25
Table 3-7 Bandwidth overflow thresholds .....	26
Table 3-8 Hardware alert thresholds .....	27
Table 3-9 Parameters for controlling the management interface access control function .....	29
Table 3-10 Parameters for creating a management interface access control rule .....	29
Table 3-11 Parameters of basic HA settings .....	34
Table 3-12 Advanced HA configuration parameters .....	35
Table 3-13 Parameters of the external bypass group .....	46
Table 3-14 Parameters for configuring an upper-level ADS .....	48
Table 3-15 Parameters for configuring a lower-level ADS .....	50
Table 3-16 Parameters for creating a notification filtering rule.....	54
Table 3-17 Login security parameters .....	55
Table 3-18 Parameters for configuring the authentication mode.....	58
Table 3-19 Parameters for configuring a Syslog server .....	59
Table 3-20 SNMP Trap parameters .....	61
Table 3-21 Parameters for configuring log sending by email.....	63
Table 3-22 Parameters for exporting logs via SFTP or SSH .....	64
Table 3-23 Functions available upon license expiry .....	65

Table 3-24 ADS device license parameters .....	66
Table 4-1 Mappings between attack types and curve colors .....	76
Table 5-1 Parameters for creating a protection group .....	83
Table 5-2 Format of an IP address, IP segment, and IP address range .....	85
Table 5-3 Parameters for adding a URL protection rule.....	87
Table 5-4 Parameters for configuring an auto-learning policy .....	91
Table 5-5 Parameters of the default anti-DDoS policy.....	95
Table 5-6 Parameters of a port check policy .....	100
Table 5-7 Parameters of an HTTPS connection protection policy .....	101
Table 5-8 Parameters of an application-layer protection rule.....	102
Table 5-9 Control items of an application-layer protection rule.....	102
Table 5-10 Parameters for configuring the HTTP protection policy .....	104
Table 5-11 Parameters of the default DNS keyword checking policy .....	107
Table 5-12 Parameters of the DNS protection policy.....	108
Table 5-13 Parameters of the TCP control policy.....	109
Table 5-14 IP behavior control parameters.....	112
Table 5-15 Parameters of the SIP protection policy .....	113
Table 5-16 Parameters of the UDP payload check policy .....	114
Table 5-17 Parameters of the UDP protection policy .....	115
Table 5-18 Parameters of the ICMP protection policy .....	117
Table 5-19 Parameters of a protocol ID check policy .....	118
Table 5-20 Parameters for creating a protection group policy template.....	119
Table 5-21 Advanced global parameters .....	121
Table 5-22 Parameters for creating a response page .....	122
Table 5-23 Parameters of an SSL certificate .....	125
Table 5-24 Parameters for adding a mobile user-agent rule.....	127
Table 5-25 Parameters for creating an access control rule .....	128
Table 5-26 Parameters of a reflection protection rule .....	134
Table 5-27 Parameters for creating a GeoIP rule.....	136
Table 5-28 Parameters for creating a regular expression rule .....	139
Table 5-29 Parameters of a DNS keyword checking rule.....	140
Table 5-30 Parameters of an HTTP keyword checking rule.....	142
Table 5-31 Parameters for creating a connection exhaustion rule .....	144

Table 5-32 Parameters for creating a URL-ACL rule.....	146
Table 5-33 Reason for adding a source IP address to the blacklist.....	148
Table 5-34 Blacklist parameters .....	151
Table 5-35 Blacklist parameters .....	152
Table 5-36 Parameters for blacklist export.....	156
Table 6-1 Parameters for setting the running mode.....	164
Table 6-2 Parameters for creating a a port channel .....	166
Table 6-3 Parameters for creating a GRE tunnel.....	168
Table 6-4 Interface parameters .....	169
Table 6-5 Parameters of a loopback address .....	170
Table 6-6 Parameters for creating a BGP route .....	172
Table 6-7 Parameters for creating a BGP neighbor .....	173
Table 6-8 Parameters for creating an IP route .....	175
Table 6-9 Parameters of an injection interface .....	177
Table 6-10 Parameters for creating an injection route.....	180
Table 6-11 Parameters for advanced options of injection routers.....	186
Table 6-12 Parameters for creating a diversion filtering rule .....	192
Table 6-13 Parameters for creating a diversion rule.....	194
Table 6-14 Parameters for creating a group diversion rule.....	199
Table 6-15 Parameters of a diversion route .....	200
Table 6-16 Parameters for creating an MPLS route .....	202
Table 6-17 LDP route parameters.....	204
Table 6-18 Parameters for creating a syslog-based diversion rule .....	207
Table 7-1 Attack log parameters.....	210
Table 7-2 Parameters of system operation logs.....	213
Table 7-3 Parameters of system login logs.....	214
Table 7-4 Parameters of link status logs.....	215
Table 7-5 Parameters of traffic diversion logs.....	216
Table 7-6 Parameters of HA synchronization logs .....	217
Table 8-1 Parameters for creating a manual packet capture task.....	223
Table 8-2 Parameters of a packet capture file.....	226
Table 8-3 Automatic packet capture parameters.....	234
Table 8-4 Automatic packet capture parameters.....	237

Table 8-5 Parameters for configuring cloud signaling .....	243
Table 8-6 Parameters for configuring origin IP addresses and CNAME records .....	244
Table 8-7 Status description .....	245
Table 8-8 NTI-related parameters .....	246
Table 9-1 Parameters for querying the protection status of a destination IP address .....	249
Table 9-2 Port check parameters .....	251
Table 9-3 Tcpdump parameters .....	252

# Preface

---

## Scope

This document describes the features and usage of the web-based manager and console-based manager of NSFOCUS Anti-DDoS System (ADS), covering the following series and models:

- ADS NX3-800E
- ADS NX3 2000 series (ADS NX3-2020E)
- ADS NX3-HD2500
- ADS NX5 4000 series (ADS NX5-4020E)
- ADS NX5 6000 series (ADS NX5-6025E)
- ADS NX5-8000
- ADS NX5-10000/12000
- ADS NX5-HD4500/6500
- ADS NX5 HD8500 series (ADS NX5-HD8500)
- ADS NX1-VN (virtual ADS, namely, vADS)

This document provides guidance for you in use of the products. Descriptions in this guide may slightly differ from actual products due to version upgrade or other reasons.



Unless otherwise specified, figures and texts in this document are all based on ADS NX5-4020E.

## Audience

This document is intended for the following users:

- System administrator
- Network administrator
- Users who wish to know main techniques and usage of this product



This document assumes that you have a basic knowledge of the following areas:



- Linux and Windows operating systems
- TCP/IP protocol

## Organization

Chapter	Description
<a href="#">1 Introduction</a>	Describes features of ADS devices.
<a href="#">2 Web-based Manager</a>	Describes basic information of the web-based manager.
<a href="#">3 System Administration</a>	Describes common operations and methods for system administration and maintenance.
<a href="#">4 Real-Time Monitoring</a>	Describes details about real-time monitoring.
<a href="#">5 Policies</a>	Describes contents and configuration methods of protection policies.
<a href="#">6 Diversion and Injection</a>	Describes contents and configuration methods of diversion and injection rules.
<a href="#">7 Logs</a>	Describes contents and query methods of various types of log.
<a href="#">8 Advanced Applications</a>	Describes advanced functions that include packet capturing and pattern matching.
<a href="#">9 Operation and Maintenance</a>	Describes how to query the protection status and perform network diagnosis.
<a href="#">10 Console-based Management</a>	Describes methods for logging in and managing the console of ADS devices.
<a href="#">11. Initial Configuration</a>	Describes how to complete initial configurations upon the installation of ADS.
<a href="#">12. System Maintenance</a>	Describes how to upgrade the system and how to perform common troubleshooting tasks.
<a href="#">A Acronyms and Abbreviations</a>	Describes explanation of abbreviations that appear in this article.
<a href="#">B Default Parameters</a>	Describes default parameters of the ADS devices.
<a href="#">C IPv4/IPv6 Support</a>	Describes ADS modules' support for IPv4 and IPv6.

## Conventions

Convention	Description
<b>Bold font</b>	Keywords, names of screen elements like buttons, drop-down lists or fields, and user-entered text appear in bold font.
<i>Italic font</i>	Document titles, new or emphasized terms, and arguments for which you supply values are in italic font.
 <b>Note</b>	Reminds users to take note.
 <b>Tip</b>	Indicates a tip to make your operations easier.

Convention	Description
 <b>Caution</b>	Indicates a situation in which you might perform an action that could result in equipment damage or loss of data.
 <b>Warning</b>	Indicates a situation in which you might perform an action that could result in bodily injury.
<b>A &gt; B</b>	Indicates selection of menu options.

## Customer Support

Hardware and Software Support

Email: [support@nsfocusglobal.com](mailto:support@nsfocusglobal.com)

Cloud Mitigation Support

Email: [cloud-support@nsfocusglobal.com](mailto:cloud-support@nsfocusglobal.com)

Phone:

- USA: +1-844-673-6287 or +1-844-NSFOCUS
- UK: +44 808 164 0673 or +44 808 164 0NSF
- Australia: +61 2 8599 0673 or +61 2 8599 0NSF
- Netherlands: +31 85 208 2673 or +31 85 208 2NSF
- Brazil: +55 13 4042 1673 or +55 13 4042 1NSF
- Japan: +81 3-4510-8673 or +81 3-4510-8NSF
- Singapore: +65 3158 3757
- Hong Kong: +852 5803 2673 or +852 5803 2NSF
- Middle East: +973 1619 7607



# 1 Introduction

---

## 1.1 Product Overview

ADS devices provide a widely-applicable, high-performance solution to protect Internet applications from massive Distributed Denial-of-Service (DDoS) attacks. Its powerful protection capability meets high performance and scalability requirements of large-scale enterprises and operators for defending today's complex and varying network attacks.

A single ADS device can be deployed on demand to divert and clean traffic on the target device or zone without any impact on other network traffic. The multi-level protection mechanism embedded in the device enables the system to discover and block hazardous traffic while transmitting legitimate traffic as usual, so that business systems continue without disruption even in face of severe network attacks.

## 1.2 Typical Deployment

Currently, ADS devices can be deployed in in-path mode or out-of-path mode based on different network environments. The following sections detail the two modes.



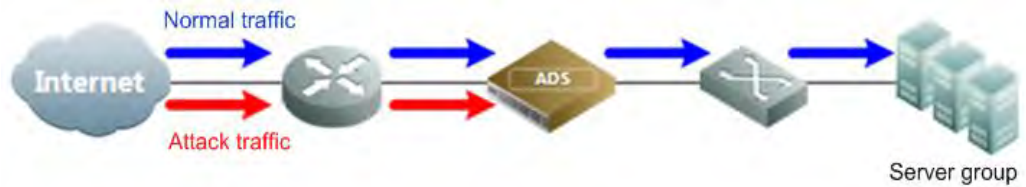
Note

- ADS NX3-2020E, NX3-800E, NX3-HD2500, NX5-HD4500, NX5-4020E, NX5-6025E, NX5-HD6500, NX5-HD8500, and NX5-8000 support both in-path and out-of-path deployment modes, whereas ADS NX5-10000/12000 supports the out-of-path deployment mode only.
- When vADS uses a virtual network adapter, it can be deployed only in out-of-path mode. For details about deployment of a virtual network adapter, see the *NSFOCUS ADS NXI-VN Installation and Deployment Guide*.

### 1.2.1 In-Path Deployment

In-path deployment is suitable for enterprises' intranets that are characterized by fewer servers and smaller outgoing bandwidth. In this mode, an ADS device is transparently deployed at the network entry to detect, analyze, and block DDoS attacks. [Figure 1-1](#) shows the deployment topology.

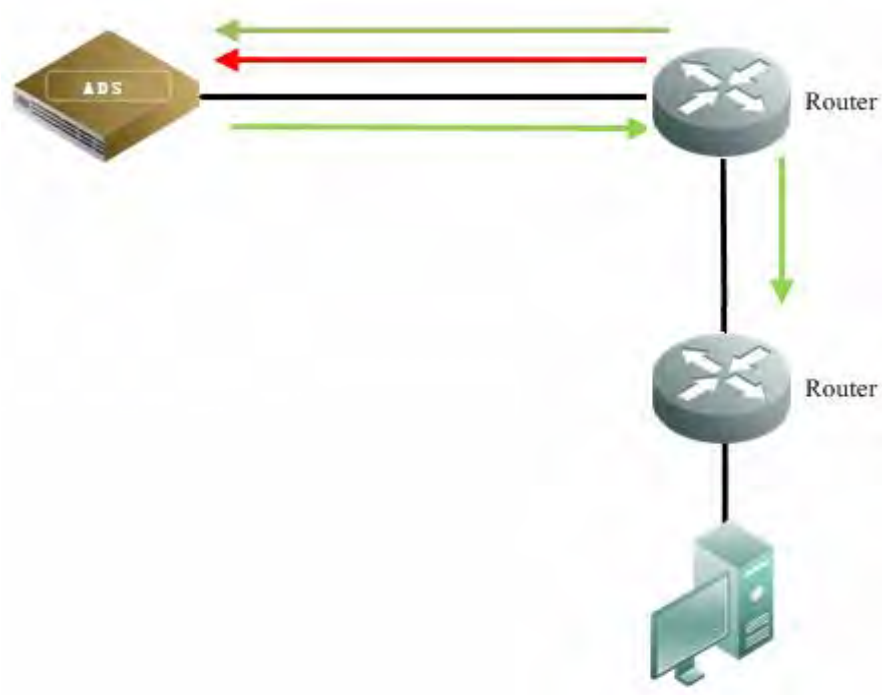
Figure 1-1 In-path deployment of an ADS device



## 1.2.2 Out-of-Path Deployment

To protect mission critical systems of Internet data centers (IDCs), Internet content providers (ICPs), or telecom carriers, ADS devices can be deployed in out-of-path mode, which employs the traffic diversion mechanism. In this mode, an ADS device is deployed at the network entry to collaborate with other routers, performing traffic diversion and injection on one line to protect servers on the network. [Figure 1-2](#) shows the deployment topology.

Figure 1-2 Out-of-path deployment of an ADS device



# 2 Web-based Manager

---

The web-based manager enables you to manage and configure the ADS device in a more intuitive man-machine interaction environment.

This chapter describes basic information of the web-based manager, as shown in the following table.

Section	Description
<a href="#">Login</a>	Describes methods for logging in to the system.
<a href="#">System Users</a>	Describes user types and permissions.
<a href="#">Web Page Layout</a>	Describes the web page layout.
<a href="#">Common Icons and Buttons</a>	Describes meanings of common icons and buttons.

## 2.1 Login

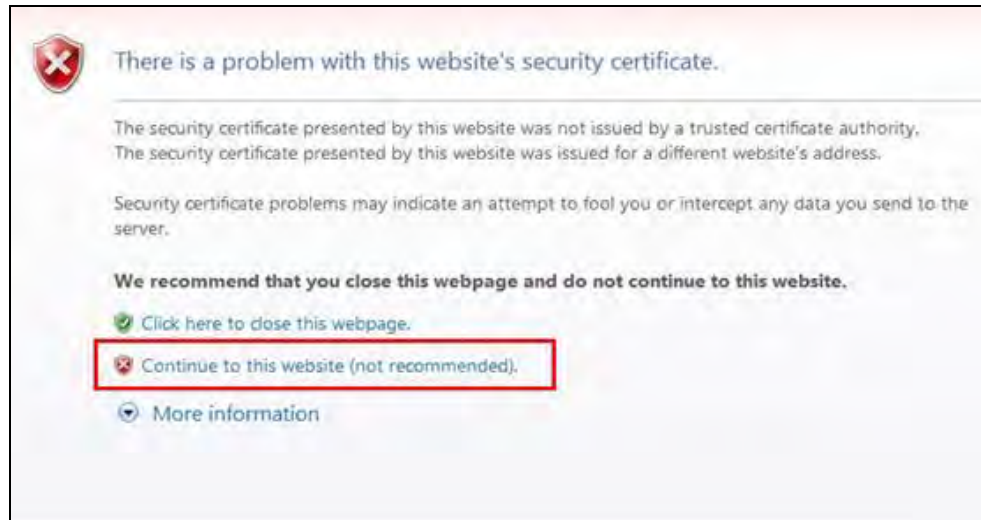
To log in to the web-based manager, perform the following steps:

- Step 1** Make sure that the client host communicates properly with an ADS device (open port 443 if the traffic passes through a firewall).
- Step 2** Start the IE browser and access the web-based manager's IP address by HTTPS.

As the ADS device supports both IPv4 and IPv6 protocols, you can type an IPv4 address (for example, **https://192.168.1.1**) or IPv6 address (for example, **https://[2001::107]**).

After you type the IP address and press **Enter**, the following security alert page appears.

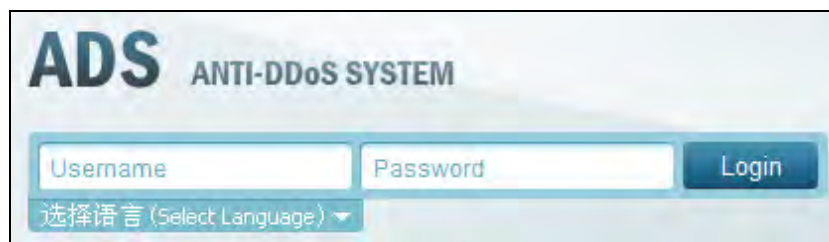
Figure 2-1 Alert page



**Step 3** Click **Continue to this website (not recommended)** to accept the channel secured by the NSFOCUS ADS certificate.

The login page shown in [Figure 2-2](#) appears.

Figure 2-2 Login page of the ADS device



**Step 4** Select the language, type a correct user name and password (the initial user name is **admin** and the password is **nsfocus**), and click **Login** or press **Enter**.

Your selection of a language from the **Select Language** drop-down list does not change the UI language of the web-based manager used by other users from different IP addresses.



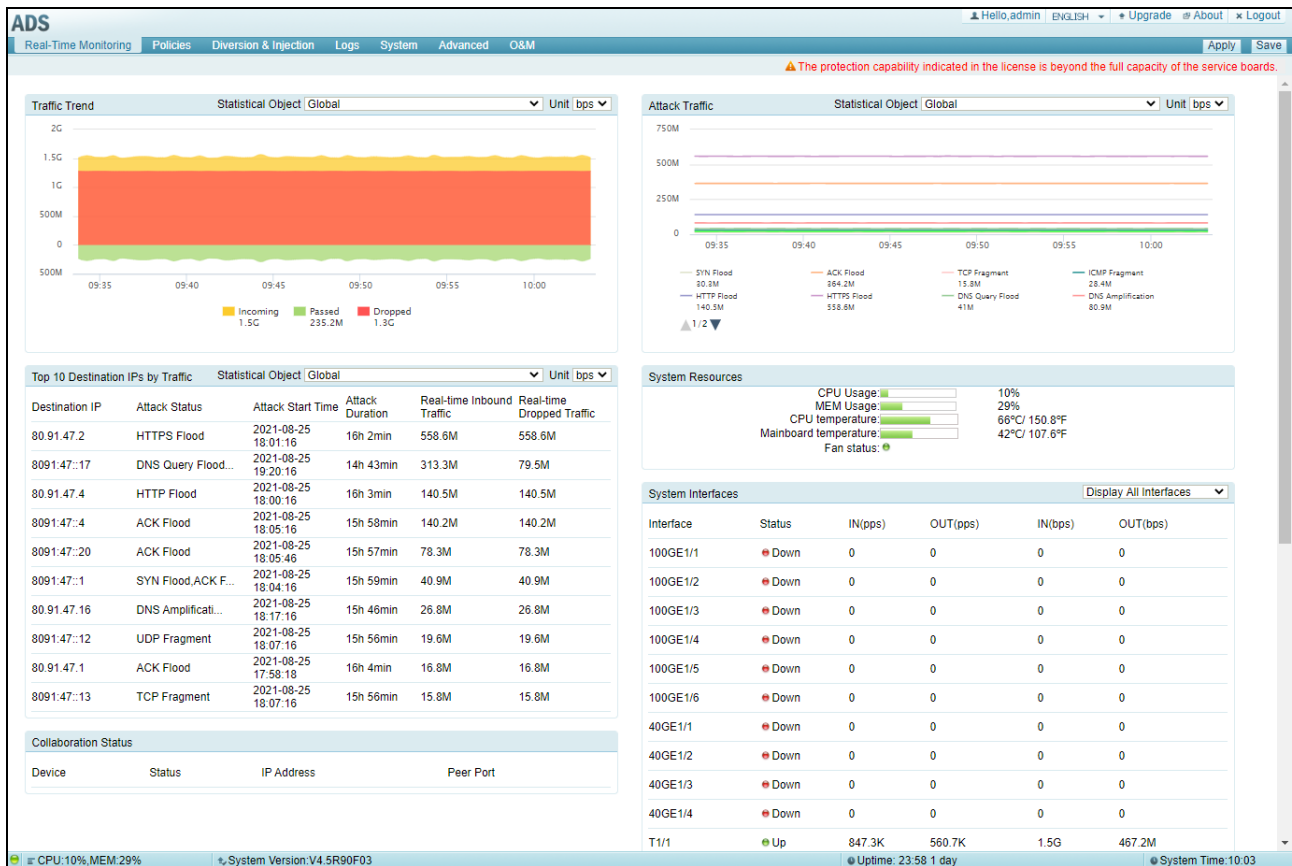
**Note**

If you log in with the initial user name and password, the **Region and Time Settings** page and **Change Initial Password** page will appear successively. You should change the region, system time zone, system time, as well as the initial password before logging in to the device. For details, see the *NSFOCUS ADS Installation Guide*.

A license must be imported after initial login to the system. After a valid license is successfully imported, log in to NSFOCUS ADS again.

The following window appears, indicating that you have successfully logged in.

Figure 2-3 Window displayed after successful login



Note the following during login:

- You are advised to use an IE browser of 8.0 through 10.0 or a Chrome browser with a resolution of 1024x768 or higher. If you use the IE-based tabbed browsers (such as MyIE and Maxthon) or browsers that are not based on the IE core (such as Opera), pages may be displayed improperly.
- Before login, check whether the option of blocking pop-ups is selected in the browser. If yes, deselect it.
- The browser you use must support JavaScript, cookies, and frames.
- Possible causes for login failures: incorrect user name, incorrect password, and upper/lower case confusion.
- You must import the license after the first login. For details, see section [3.4.1 License](#).
- The system will return to the login page if you remain inactive for a period specified by **Auto Idle Logout**. In this case, you need to log in again to continue using the system. For details, see section [3.2.1 Login Security Settings](#).

----End

## 2.2 System Users

User roles of the ADS devices include superuser (**admin** by default), CLI user (**routerman** by default), custom user, common user, administrator, auditor, and custom access user. [Table 2-1](#) lists permissions of these users.

Table 2-1 User permissions

User Role	Configuration Permission	Viewing Permission
Superuser	Default system user <b>admin</b> , who has all permissions for the web-based manager. This role cannot be created or deleted.	
CLI user	Has permissions for login to the console and management of the system.	
Custom user	Has permissions for traffic diversion and injection (manual mode), packet capture, NSFOCUS Threat Intelligence (NTI), and system management (modification of his or her own account information).	Has permissions for real-time monitoring, traffic diversion and injection, logs (detailed information and statistical graphs of the attack log, and the traffic diversion log), system management (basic system configuration and interface configuration), statistical graphs of attack traffic, and BGP neighbor status.
Common user	Has permissions for system management (modification of his or her own account information).	Has permissions for real-time monitoring and system management (basic system settings and interface settings).
Administrator	Has permissions for protection policies, traffic diversion and injection, logs (detailed information and statistical graphs of the attack log, statistical graphs of attack traffic, and the traffic diversion log), system management (basic configuration, interface configuration, and modification of his or her own account information), advanced application, and O&M.	Has permissions for real-time monitoring information, protection policies, diversion and injection, logs (detailed information and statistical graphs of the attack log, statistical graphs of attack traffic, and the traffic diversion log), system management information (basic system settings and interface settings), advanced application, and O&M..
Auditor	Has permissions for system management (modification of his or her own account information).	Has permissions for real-time monitoring, the login log, and the operation log.
Custom access user	Customizable.	Customizable.



Note

You are advised to change the initial password immediately after login with the default user account. For details on initial passwords, see appendix [B Default Parameters](#).

## 2.3 Web Page Layout

After a successful login, the user **admin** opens the homepage. [Figure 2-4](#) shows the web page layout.

Users with different permissions may view different information under the main menu, sub-menus, and work area of the system, but can view the same information and have the same permissions for the status bar and shortcut operation area.

Figure 2-4 Web page layout

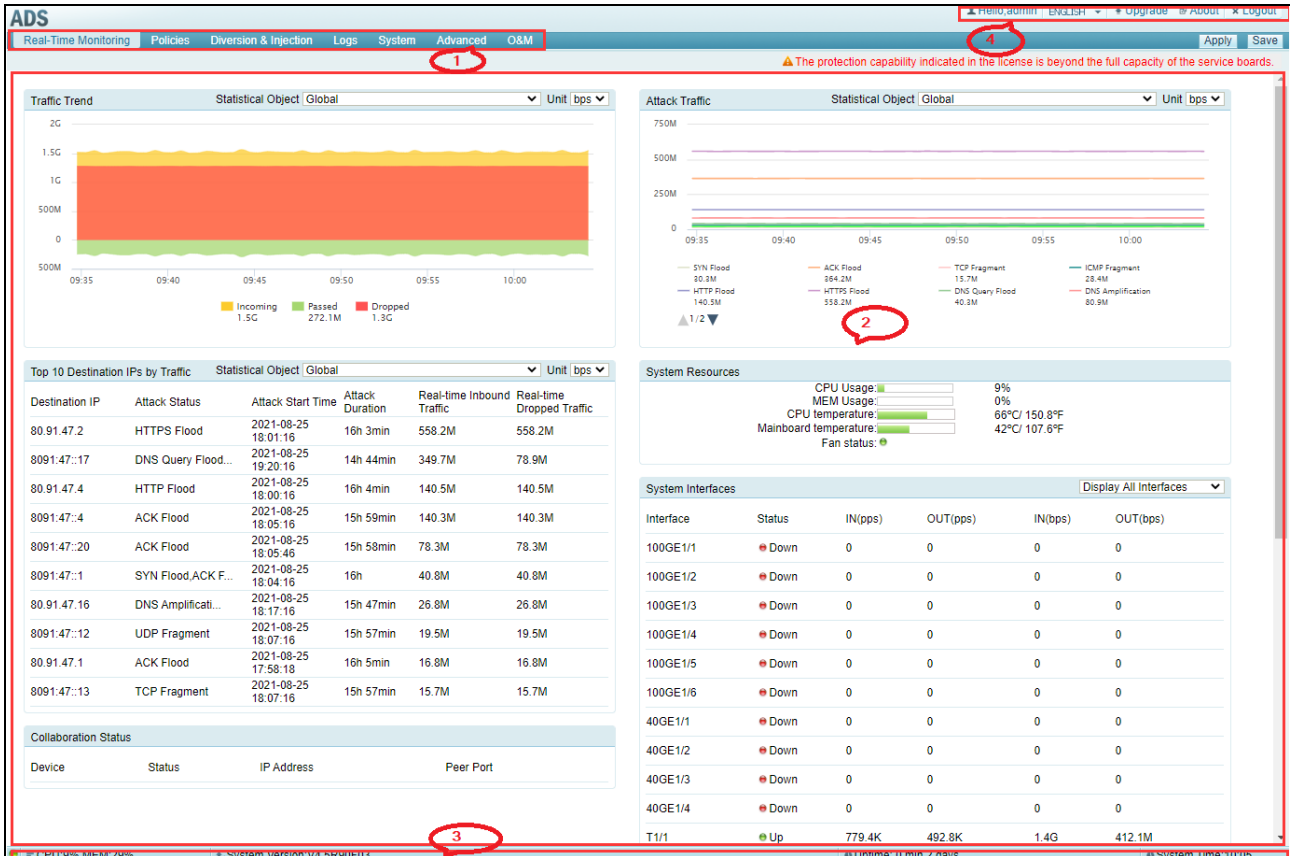






Table 2-2 describes the web page layout.

Table 2-2 Web page layout

SN	Area	Description
1	Menu bar	Main menus of the system.
2	Work area	Area where you can perform configurations and operations and view data.
3	Status bar	Displaying current device information, software version and system time. For details, see section 4.2 System Information.
4	Quick access bar	Providing frequently used buttons for quick access to the corresponding module. See Table 2-3 for details.


Table 2-3 explains buttons in the quick access bar.

Table 2-3 Common buttons

Button	Function
	Switches to another language.
	Switches to the system upgrade window.
	Displays information about the current ADS device.
	Logs you out of the system.










Note

For the sake of account security, you are advised to click  Logout when exiting the system.

## 2.4 Common Icons and Buttons

Table 2-4 describes functions of common icons and buttons on the web-based manager.

Table 2-4 Buttons and icons

Button	Function
	Edits an item.
	Deletes an item.
	Starts an operation.
	Stops an ongoing operation.
	Makes the configuration in the active work area take effect immediately.
	Saves the current configuration and writes it to the firmware.
	Views the current configuration.



# 3 System Administration

This chapter dwells upon common ways to manage ADS devices, containing the following sections:

Section	Description
<a href="#">Local Settings</a>	Describes how to configure basic system information, interfaces, and users.
<a href="#">Security Configuration</a>	Describes how to configure login security settings and unlock a locked IP address.
<a href="#">Log Services</a>	Describes how to configure system log services and export logs via SFTP/SSH.
<a href="#">Others</a>	Describes how to update the system, manage the license, enable remote assistance, and view version information.

## 3.1 Local Settings

This section covers the following topics:

- [Basic Information](#)
- [Interface Configuration](#)
- [User Management](#)
- [Management Mode Configuration](#)
- [Configuration File Management](#)
- [Bandwidth Overrun Limit Configuration](#)
- [Hardware Alert Thresholds](#)
- [Management Interface Access Control](#)
- [HA Configuration](#)
- [\(Optional\) Bypass Configuration](#)
- [Collaboration Configuration](#)

### 3.1.1 Basic Information

ADS supports the IPv4/IPv6 dual-stack, that is, it supports both IPv4 and IPv6 protocols. As a dual-stack node, ADS can be configured with IPv4 and IPv6 addresses, which are respectively used for communication with IPv4 nodes and IPv6 nodes.



Dual stack is an effective technology for IPv4-to-IPv6 transition. Powered by this technology, network nodes support both IPv4 and IPv6 stacks. The source node selects the same protocol stack as the one used by the destination node for communication and the network device selects the same protocol stack as the one used by packets when processing and forwarding packets.

You can view and modify basic information of the current ADS such as device ID, IPv4 address, IPv6 address, netmask, and gateway address.



Choose **System > Local Settings > Basic Settings**. The **Basic Settings** page appears, as shown in [Figure 3-1](#).

Figure 3-1 Basic Settings page

Item	Value
Device ID	ADS
IP Address	IPv4 Configuration
	IPv6 Configuration
	10.66.242.212
	255.255.240.0
Netmask	10.66.250.254
Gateway IP	Primary Server
DNS Server	Secondary Server
	1.1.1.1
Time Server	443
Web Server Port	2021-04-23 14:09
System Date	9104-4884-99BE-B6F6
System ID	No
Forwarding Mode	Off
NSFOCUS Cloud switch	22:32
System Uptime	
Uptime	
<input type="button" value="System Check"/> <input type="button" value="Restart Web Server"/> <input type="button" value="Restart Device"/> <input type="button" value="Edit"/>	
Region	
Region	EMEA
<input type="button" value="OK"/> <input type="button" value="Cancel"/>	
Time Zone	
Time Zone	(GMT+08:00), Beijing, Chongqing, Hong Kong, Urumqi, Shanghai
<input type="button" value="OK"/> <input type="button" value="Cancel"/>	

Table 3-1 Basic system settings

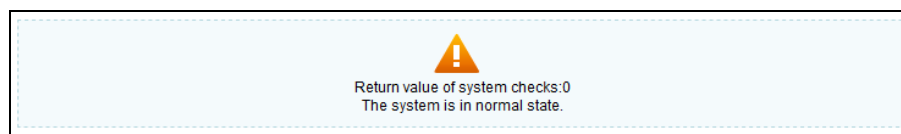
Parameter	Description
Device ID	Device model. It cannot exceed 26 characters.
IP Address/Netmask	IPv4 address/netmask or IPv6 address/prefix length of the management interface of ADS.  <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>ADS supports the IPv4/IPv6 dual-stack. Therefore, you can configure the IPv4 or IPv6 address for the management interface according to the actual network deployment.</li> <li>The device administrator can use this IP address to exercise remote device management via HTTPS, perform log-related operations, and send emails.</li> </ul>
Gateway IP	IPv4/v6 address of the gateway for the management interface.
H Port IP Configuration/H Port IP Netmask	The H port is used as a heartbeat interface for ADS to implement high availability (HA) in in-path mode. Therefore, you need to configure the IPv4 address and related subnet mask or IPv6 address and related prefix

Parameter	Description
	length for this port here.  <b>Note</b> It is recommended that you configure an IP address in another network segment for the H port than the one used by the management port to avoid loops.
DNS Server	IP addresses of the master and slave DNS servers used by the management interface of the current ADS device. Only when the master DNS server malfunctions can the slave be used.
Time Server	IP address or domain name of a server that synchronizes time on the current ADS and other NSFOCUS devices. After this is specified, all connected NSFOCUS devices will synchronize the time with the time server automatically.  <b>Note</b> If you type a domain name here, you must configure the DNS server. If you do not want to specify the DNS server, you must type an IP address for the time server.
Web Server Port	Web server port used for accessing the web-based manager of ADS.
System Date	System time. By default, the current system time is displayed.
System ID	Unique ID of ADS. It is used for applying for the device license.
Forwarding Mode	This mode is used for network troubleshooting. The value <b>Yes</b> indicates that the current ADS directly forwards packets without any check.
NSFOCUS Cloud Switch	Controls whether to turn on the NSFOCUS cloud service.
Uptime	Length of time during which the current ADS operates properly.

On the **Basic Settings** page shown in [Figure 3-1](#), you can perform the following operations:

- Edit basic system information.  
Click **Edit** to open the **Modify basic settings** page. Modify parameter settings and click **OK** to commit the changes.
- Check the system status.  
Click **System Check** to check whether the system operates properly. Then the system returns check results, as shown in [Figure 3-2](#).

Figure 3-2 System check results



A few seconds later, the system returns to the **Basic Settings** page.

- Change the web server port.
  - a. Click **Edit** to open the **Modify basic settings** page and modify the web server port.  
It can be 443 (default) or an integer ranging from 18000 to 20000. A conflicting port may make the web service inaccessible. If **Web Server Port** is set to another number than 443, management by a third-party device or ADS M may be affected.  
For example, change **Web Server Port** to **18000**. Then the accessible address of ADS is changed to **https://\*.\*.\*:18000**.
  - b. Configure parameters and click **OK** to return to the **Basic Settings** page.
  - c. Click **Restart Web Server** on the page shown in [Figure 3-1](#).
- Restart the device remotely.  
Click **Restart Device** to restart the current ADS remotely.
- Configure the region where ADS is located.  
The **Region** area shows the current geographic region of ADS. Select a region from the **Region** drop-down box and click **OK**.  
To make the region setting take effect, you must restart the system.



When **Region** is set to **Chinese mainland**:

- By default, the threat intelligence sharing switch is turned on and the China-based server is used.
- The NSFOCUS Cloud switch is turned on by default.

When **Region** is set to any other region than **Chinese mainland**:

- By default, the threat intelligence sharing switch is turned off. When the switch is turned on, the international server is used.
- The NSFOCUS Cloud switch is turned off by default.

- Configure the time zone.  
The **Time Zone** area shows the current time zone information of ADS. You can select a time zone from the drop-down list and click **OK** to save the settings.  
After the configuration, you need to restart the system to make the new time zone take effect.

## 3.1.2 Interface Configuration

The number and type of interfaces vary with ADS models.

- ADS NX3-2020E, NX5-4020E, and NX5-6025E support the following types of interface cards:
  - 8 x 1000M electrical port
  - 8 x 1000M optical port
  - 4 x 1000M electrical port
  - 4 x 1000M optical port
  - 2 x 10G optical port
- ADS NX5-8000 supports the following types of interface cards:
  - 8 x 1000M electrical port
  - 8 x 1000M optical port

- 2 x 10G optical port
- ADS NX3-800E uses six 1000M electrical ports as working interfaces and supports one expansion slot. The expansion slot supports the following types of interface cards: 8 x 1000M electrical port, 8 x 1000M optical port, 4 x 1000M electrical port, and 4 x 1000M optical port.
- ADS NX5-10000/12000 supports interface cards up to the following configuration:
  - 4 x 1000M electrical port
  - 6 x 100G optical port
  - 4 x 40G optical port
  - 20 x 10G optical port
- ADS NX3-HD2500/NX5-HD4500/NX5-HD6500/NX5-HD8500 supports the following types of interface cards:
  - 8 x 1000M electrical port
  - 8 x 1000M optical port
  - 4 x 1000M electrical port
  - 4 x 1000M optical port
  - 4 x 10G optical port
  - 2 x 10G optical port

On the interface configuration page, the administrator can enable or disable all working interfaces and change the working mode of 1000M electrical ports.

This section describes those operations in detail.

## Enabling or Disabling Working Interfaces

**Step 1** Choose **System > Local Settings > Interfaces**.


Figure 3-3 shows the interface working mode of ADS NX5-4020E.

Figure 3-3 Interface working mode of ADS NX5-4020E

Interface ID	Mode	MTU	Status	Enable/Disable Interface
G1/1	auto	1500	Up/1000/Full	⬇
G1/2	auto	1500	Up/1000/Full	⬇
G1/3	auto	1500	/Down	⬇
G1/4	auto	1500	/Down	⬇
G1/5	auto	1500	/Down	⬇
G1/6	auto	1500	Up/1000/Full	⬇
G1/7	auto	1500	/Down	⬇
G1/8	auto	1500	Up/1000/Full	⬇
F2/1	1000M full	1500	/Down	⬇
F2/2	1000M full	1500	/Down	⬇
F2/3	1000M full	1500	/Down	⬇
F2/4	1000M full	1500	/Down	⬇
F2/5	1000M full	1500	/Down	⬇
F2/6	1000M full	1500	/Down	⬇
F2/7	1000M full	1500	/Down	⬇
F2/8	1000M full	1500	/Down	⬇
T4/1	1000M full	1500	/Down	⬇
T4/2	1000M full	1500	/Down	⬇

Table 3-2 describes interface working mode parameters.

Table 3-2 Interface working mode parameters

Parameter	Description
Interface ID	<p>ADS NX3-800E:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• G1/1–G1/8:1000M electrical ports</li> <li>• F2/1–F2/8: 1000M optical ports</li> </ul> <p>ADS NX3-2020E, NX5-4020E, NX5-6025E, and ADS NX5-8000:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• T4/1 and T4/2: 10G optical ports</li> <li>• G1/1–G1/8:1000M electrical ports</li> <li>• F2/1–F2/8: 1000M optical ports</li> </ul> <p>ADS NX5-10000:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 100GE 1/1–100GE 1/6: 100G optical ports</li> <li>• 40GE 1/1–40GE 1/4: 40G optical ports</li> <li>• T1/1–T1/20: 10G optical ports</li> <li>• G1/1–G1/4: 1000M electrical ports</li> </ul> <p>ADS NX5-HD6500:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• T4/1 and T4/2: 10G optical ports</li> <li>• G1/1–G1/8: 1000M electrical ports</li> <li>• F2/1–F2/8: 1000M optical ports</li> </ul> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>Interface numbers here are provided for illustration only. They may differ from the actual numbers as boards may be inserted into other slots.</p>
Mode	<p>The default value is <b>auto</b>, indicating that the interface is working in auto negotiation mode.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>10M full</b>: indicates that the interface is currently operating at 10 Mbps and in full duplex mode.</li> <li>• <b>10M half</b>: indicates that the interface is currently operating at 10 Mbps and in half duplex mode.</li> <li>• <b>100M full</b>: indicates the interface is currently operating at 100 Mbps and in full duplex mode.</li> <li>• <b>100M half</b>: indicates the interface is currently operating at 100 Mbps and in half duplex mode.</li> <li>• <b>1000M full</b>: indicates the interface is currently operating at 1000 Mbps and in full duplex mode.</li> </ul>
MTU	The MTU is <b>1500</b> for all working interfaces and cannot be edited.
Status	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Up</b>: indicates that the current interface is up.</li> <li>• <b>Down</b>: indicates the current interface is down.</li> <li>• <b>1000/Full</b> indicates the working mode of the current interface.</li> </ul>

**Step 2** To enable or disable an interface, click  or  in the **Enable/Disable Interface** column.

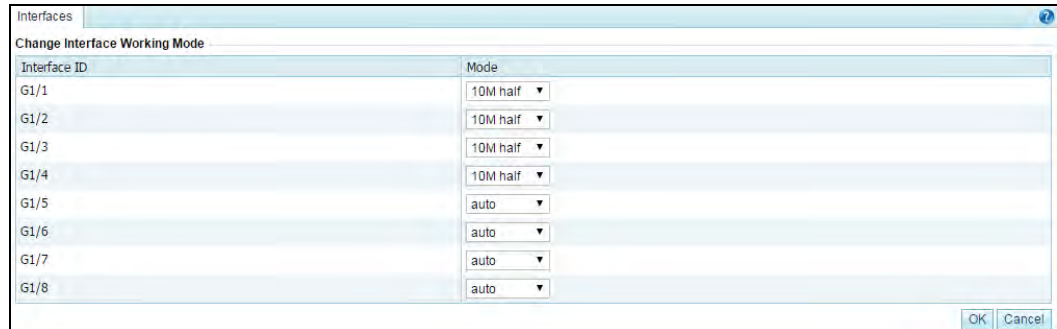
----End

## Changing the Working Mode of 1000M Electrical Ports

ADS NX5-4020E is used as an example here.

On the **Interface** page in [Figure 3-3](#), click **Edit** to change the working mode of 1000M electrical ports (G1/1 through G1/8).

Figure 3-4 Changing the working mode of 1000M electrical ports

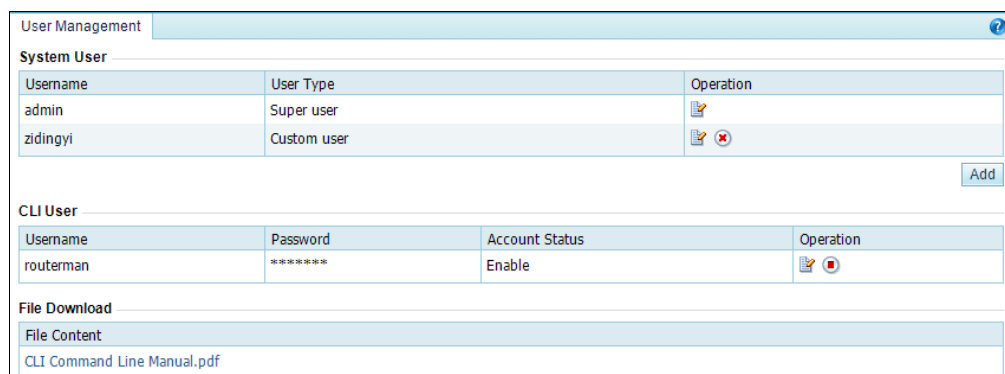


After changing the working mode, click **OK** to save the settings.

## 3.1.3 User Management

Choose **System > Local Settings > User Management**. As shown in [Figure 3-5](#), the **User Management** page that appears displays all system users. Initially, only the default web user **admin** and the CLI user **routerman** are available.

Figure 3-5 System users



User roles include the following:

- Superuser (**admin** by default)
- CLI user (**routerman** by default)
- Custom user
- Common user
- Administrator

- Auditor
- Custom access user

For permissions of these user roles, see [Table 2-1](#).

Under **File Download**, you can click the *CLI Command Line Manual* link to download this user guide.

## Adding a User

Click **Add** in the **System User** area to add a system user. On the page shown in [Figure 3-6](#), configure the user name and login password, and select a role to limit the user's permissions.

Figure 3-6 Adding a system user

Figure 3-7 Adding a system user – custom access user


Table 3-3 describes parameters for adding a user


Parameter	Description
Username	Specifies the user name of the new account, which is 4 to 20 characters long. The minimum user name length is determined by the <b>Min User Name Length</b> value



Parameter	Description
	specified under <b>System &gt; Security Configuration &gt; Login Security Settings</b> . Also, the user name can only consist of letters, digits, and underscores.
Password	Specifies the password of the new account, which should contain 6 to 30 characters and whose minimum length depends on the <b>Min Length</b> value specified for <b>Password Strength Check</b> under <b>System &gt; Security Configuration &gt; Login Security Settings</b> .
Confirm Password	Specifies a repeat entry of the password for accuracy.
User Type	Specifies the role of the new account, which can be <b>Custom user</b> , <b>Common user</b> , <b>Administrator</b> , <b>Audit user</b> , and <b>Custom access user</b> . For details about permissions of each user role, see <a href="#">Table 2-1</a> .  For the selection of <b>Custom access user</b> , you also need to specify permissions for this role, as shown in <a href="#">Figure 3-7</a> .

## Editing a User

Click  in the **Operation** column of a user to edit the user's account information.

 <b>Note</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>You cannot delete the superuser (<b>admin</b>) or edit its permissions.</li> <li>Only <b>admin</b> can edit user accounts and other users can only change their own passwords.</li> </ul>
--	--


## Deleting a User

Click  in the **Operation** column of a user to delete this user.

Only **admin** can delete users.

## Enabling a CLI User

Only **admin** can enable or disable CLI users.

By default, CLI users are disabled. In the CLI user list, click  in the **Operation** column to enable a CLI user. For first enabling, the web page redirects you to the password page, as shown in [Figure 3-8](#).

The password must be 6 to 30 characters long. The minimum length of passwords depends on the **Min Length** value specified under **System > Security Configuration > Login Security Settings**. The CLI user name is set by the system and cannot be edited. After the password is configured, you will not be prompted to set it if you enable it again.

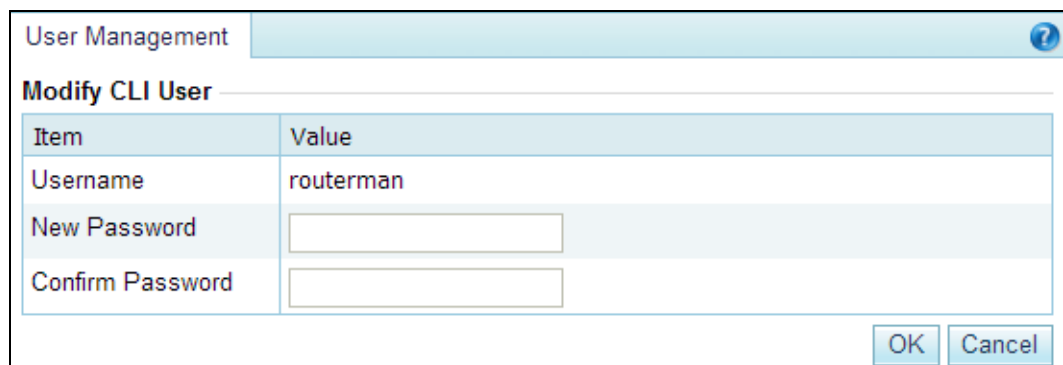
Figure 3-8 Configuring the password of a CLI user

Item	Value
Username	routerman
New Password	<input type="text"/>
Confirm Password	<input type="text"/>

## Editing a CLI User

Click  in the **Operation** column of a CLI user to change the user's password.

Figure 3-9 Changing the password of a CLI user



Item	Value
Username	routerman
New Password	<input type="text"/>
Confirm Password	<input type="text"/>

OK Cancel

## 3.1.4 Management Mode Configuration

This section describes how to configure the management mode and HTTP authentication synchronization.

### 3.1.4.1 Configuring the Management Mode

Currently, the administrator can exercise centralized management and monitoring over ADS in the following ways:

- Third-party management: allows the administrator to use a third-party program to manage ADS.
- ESPC/ESPP management: allows the ADS daemon to upload files to ESPC or ESPP.
- ADS M management: allows the ADS daemon to upload files to ADS M and ADS M to dispatch configuration to ADS. After this is selected, users can conduct centralized management and maintenance of ADS devices via ADS M.

To enable and configure the management mode, perform the following steps:

**Step 1** Choose **System > Local Settings > Management Mode**.

Figure 3-10 Management Mode page

The screenshot shows the 'Management Mode' configuration page. It features a table with columns for 'IP Address', 'Port', 'Management Platform Type', 'Language', 'Enable', and 'Operation'. Below the table are 'Enable', 'Disable', 'Delete', and 'Add' buttons. A second section, 'HTTP Authentication Synchronization', contains a table with columns for 'IP Address', 'Synchronization Status and Cause for Exception', 'Enable', and 'Operation', with an 'Add' button at the bottom right.

IP Address	Port	Management Platform Type	Language	Enable	Operation
<input type="checkbox"/> 10.66.32.7	443	ADS M	Simplified Chinese	Yes	
<input type="checkbox"/> 10.66.242.34	443	ADS M	Simplified Chinese	Yes	
<input type="checkbox"/> 10.66.250.166	443	ADS M	Simplified Chinese	Yes	
<input type="checkbox"/> 10.66.250.182	443	ADS M	Simplified Chinese	Yes	
<input type="checkbox"/> 10.66.32.86		Third-Party Management	Simplified Chinese	Yes	

Buttons: Enable, Disable, Delete, Add

IP Address	Synchronization Status and Cause for Exception	Enable	Operation

Button: Add

**Step 2** Click **Add** in the lower- right corner of the **Management Mode** area to open the **Add Mgmt Mode Config** page.

Figure 3-11 Add Mgmt Mode Config page

The screenshot shows the 'Add Mgmt Mode Config' page. It contains a table with 'Item' and 'Value' columns. The 'Enable' item has radio buttons for 'Yes' and 'No'. 'IP Address' is a text input field with an asterisk. 'Management Platform Type' is a dropdown menu set to 'ADS M'. 'Language' is a dropdown menu set to 'English'. 'Port' is a text input field with a help icon. 'OK' and 'Cancel' buttons are at the bottom right.

Item	Value
Enable	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Yes <input type="radio"/> No
IP Address	<input type="text"/> *
Management Platform Type	ADS M
Language	English
Port	<input type="text"/> ?

Buttons: OK, Cancel

Table 3-4 describes management mode parameters.

Table 3-4 Management mode parameters

Parameter	Description
Enable	Controls whether ADS accepts centralized management. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Yes</b>: indicates that ADS is subject to centralized management.</li> <li>• <b>No</b>: indicates that ADS is not subject to centralized management.</li> </ul>
IP Address	IP address of ADS M or the third-party device to which ADS submits data. You can type either an IPv4 or IPv6 address. This is required when <b>ADS M</b> or <b>Third-Party Management</b> is selected as the management platform. <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>Currently, ADS can submit data to five management devices simultaneously.</p>
Domain Name/IP Address	Domain name or IP address of ESPC/ESPP to which ADS submits data. You can type either an IPv4 or IPv6 address. This is required when <b>ESPC/ESPP</b> is selected as the management platform.

Parameter	Description
Management Platform Type	Type of the device to which ADS submits data. The value can be one of the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>ADS M</b></li> <li>• <b>ESPC/ESPP</b></li> <li>• <b>Third-Party Management</b>: third-party device</li> </ul>
Port	Specifies a port for ADS to collaborate with ADS M. This parameter is available only when <b>ADS M</b> is selected as the management platform.
Key	Specifies the key used for configuring the web API. This parameter is available only when <b>Third-Party Management</b> is selected as the management platform. The key must be a combination of 6 to 15 uppercase letters, lowercase letters, and digits.
File Upload Path	Specifies an interface from which files are uploaded to a third-party management platform. Such a file upload path, for example, https://192.168.0.1:31943/devicelog, consists of an IP address, port number, and URI. If ADS is accessed via port 443, the port number can be omitted here. This parameter is available only when <b>Third-Party Management</b> is selected as the management platform.
Language	Specifies the language of messages sent by ADS to ADS M, ESPC/ESPP, or a third-party platform. Generally, after you configure protection policies for ADS via ADS M, ADS returns related messages.

**Step 3** Configure parameters and click **OK** to save the settings.

**Step 4** Select the newly added management mode and click **Enable** to enable the management mode.

---End

### 3.1.4.2 Configuring HTTP Authentication Synchronization

**Step 1** Choose **System > Local Settings > Management Mode** to open the management mode page shown in [Figure 3-10](#).

In the **HTTP Authentication Synchronization** area, the **Synchronization Status and Cause for Exception** column shows the current synchronization status and the **Enable** column shows whether HTTP authentication synchronization is enabled.


**Step 2** Click **Add** in the lower- right corner of the **HTTP Authentication Synchronization** area.

Figure 3-12 Configuring HTTP authentication synchronization

Item	Value
Enable	<input type="radio"/> Yes <input checked="" type="radio"/> No
IP Address	<input type="text"/> *

[Table 3-5](#) describes parameters for configuring HTTP authentication synchronization.

Table 3-5 Parameters for configuring HTTP authentication synchronization

Parameter	Description
Enable	Controls whether to enable the HTTP authentication synchronization function. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Yes:</b> enables this function.</li> <li>• <b>No:</b> disables this function.</li> </ul>
IP Address	Specifies the IP address to which HTTP authentication information is synchronized. Both IPv4 and IPv6 addresses are allowed here. <div style="margin-top: 10px;">  <p><b>Note</b></p> <p>Only one IP address can be configured.</p> </div>

**Step 3** Configure parameters and click **OK** to complete the configuration.

---End

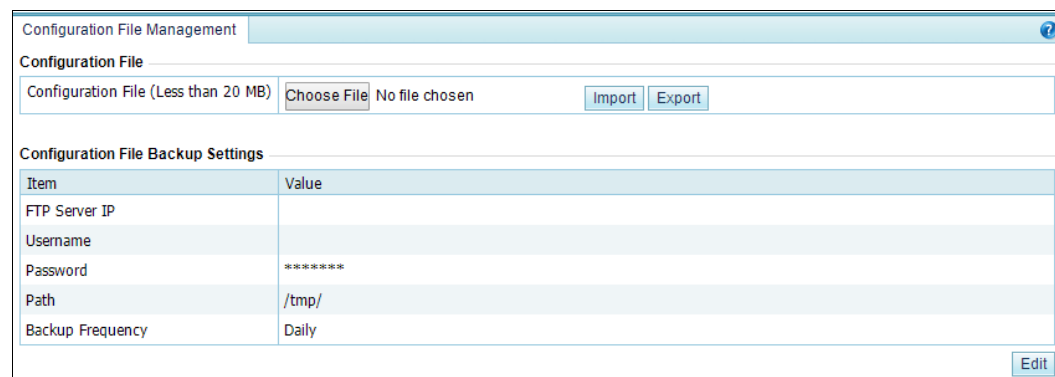
### 3.1.5 Configuration File Management

The configuration file contains all the configured policies and system settings of the system. The configuration file is an encrypted file with the extension **.conf**.

#### Exporting a Configuration File

On the **Configuration File Management** page shown in [Figure 3-13](#), click **Export** to export a configuration file with the default file name **collapsar.conf**.

Figure 3-13 Configuration file management



Item	Value
FTP Server IP	
Username	
Password	*****
Path	/tmp/
Backup Frequency	Daily



You are advised not to change the name of the exported configuration file, **collapsar.conf**.

## Importing a Configuration File

On the page shown in [Figure 3-13](#), click **Browse** and select a configuration file from the local host. Then click **Import** to import the configuration information and restore the system back to the state right before the configuration file was exported.

Pay attention to the following while importing or exporting a configuration file:

- The size of the configuration file should be no greater than 20 MB; otherwise, the import would fail.
- Configuration files cannot be imported across product models.
- Configuration files cannot be imported between devices running in different modes even if they are of the same model.

## Backing Up a Configuration File

You can regularly back up configuration files to the FTP server. On the page shown in [Figure 3-13](#), click **Edit** and set configuration file backup parameters.

Figure 3-14 Configuration file backup

Item	Value
FTP Server IP	<input type="text"/>
Username	<input type="text"/>
Password	<input type="password"/> (Both Username and Password must be typed.)
Path	<input type="text" value="/tmp/"/> *(Fill in a UNIX absolute path, for example: /tmp/.)
Backup Frequency	Daily <input type="button" value="v"/>
Test FTP Setting	<input type="button" value="Test Now"/>

[Table 3-6](#) describes configuration file backup parameters.

Table 3-6 Configuration file backup parameters

Parameter	Description
FTP Server IP	IP address of the FTP server.
Username	User name for logging in to the remote FTP server.
Password	Password for logging in to the remote FTP server.
Path	Path to save the data uploaded to the remote FTP server.
Backup Frequency	Specifies how often the configuration file is backed up, which can be <b>Daily</b> , <b>Weekly</b> , or <b>Monthly</b> .

### 3.1.6 Bandwidth Overrun Limit Configuration

After two bandwidth overrun thresholds are configured, if the total traffic on ADS exceeds either of them, the system reports an alert, which is displayed in red, prompting bandwidth overrun. Also, the system logs system operation messages when the alert is generated and ends.

**Step 1** Choose **System > Local Settings > Bandwidth Overrun Limit**.

Figure 3-15 Bandwidth Overrun Limit page

Item	Value
Enable	No
Device pps Alert Threshold	0(pps)
Device bps Alert Threshold	0(Kbps)

[Edit](#)

**Step 2** Click **Edit**.

Figure 3-16 Editing bandwidth overrun thresholds

Item	Value
Enable	<input type="radio"/> Yes <input checked="" type="radio"/> No
Device pps Alert Threshold	0 pps ▼
Device bps Alert Threshold	0 Kbps ▼

[OK](#) [Cancel](#)

[Table 3-7](#) describes bandwidth overrun thresholds.

Table 3-7 Bandwidth overflow thresholds

Parameter	Description
Enable	Controls whether to enable the bandwidth overrun alerting. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Yes:</b> enables the function.</li> <li><b>No:</b> disables the function.</li> </ul>
Device pps Alert Threshold	Alert triggering threshold for overall traffic in pps. A bandwidth overrun alert is generated when this threshold is exceeded.
Device bps Alert Threshold	Alert triggering threshold for overall traffic in bps. A bandwidth overrun alert is generated when this threshold is exceeded.

**Step 3** Set parameters and click **OK** to complete the configuration.

----End

### 3.1.7 Hardware Alert Thresholds

You can set alert thresholds for various types of hardware by performing the following steps:

**Step 1** Choose **System > Local Settings > Hardware Alert Threshold**.

Figure 3-17 Hardware Alert Threshold page on a hardware device

Item	Value
CPU Threshold	80%
Memory Threshold	90%
CPU Temperature Threshold	70°C
Mainboard Temperature Threshold	70°C
Fan Alert Switch	On
Power Alert Switch	On

Figure 3-18 Hardware Alert Threshold page on a virtual device

Item	Value
CPU Threshold	80%
Memory Threshold	90%

**Step 2** Click **Edit**.

Figure 3-19 Editing hardware alert thresholds


Edit Hardware alert thresholds.	
CPU Threshold	80 % (1-100)
Memory Threshold	90 % (1-100)
CPU Temperature Threshold	70 °C (1-100) 158°F
Mainboard Temperature Threshold	70 °C (1-100) 158°F
Fan Alert Switch	<input checked="" type="radio"/> On <input type="radio"/> Off
Power Alert Switch	<input checked="" type="radio"/> On <input type="radio"/> Off

Table 3-8 describes hardware alert thresholds.

Table 3-8 Hardware alert thresholds

Parameter	Description
CPU Threshold	Specifies the percentage of CPU usage that will trigger an alert.
Memory Threshold	Specifies the percentage of memory usage that will trigger an alert.
CPU Temperature Threshold	Specifies the temperature of the CPU that will trigger an alert.
Mainboard Temperature Threshold	Specifies the temperature of the motherboard that will trigger an alert.
Fan Alert Switch	Controls whether to turn the fan switch on. If it is turned on, an alert will be triggered when a fan fails.



Parameter	Description
Power Alert Switch	<p>Controls whether to turn the power switch on. If it is turned on, an alert will be triggered when the power supply fails.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>This parameter is available only for ADS NX3-HD2500, NX5-HD4500, NX5-HD6500, and NX5-HD8500 and some NX5-8000 devices.</p>

**Step 3** Set parameters and click **OK** to complete the configuration.

---End

### 3.1.8 Management Interface Access Control

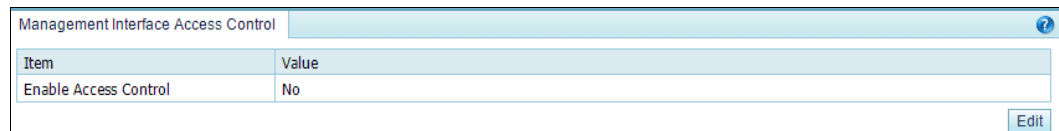
The management interface access control is disabled by default. After being enabled, it can be disabled via the console. After source IP addresses/segments are specified for access to the management interface, those beyond the specified range cannot access ADS, whether via web, Telnet, or ping. In addition, the system can dynamically identify external IP addresses to which ADS connects, such as NSFOCUS Cloud or other collaborative platforms, and allow access from these IP addresses.

#### 3.1.8.1 Creating a Management Interface Access Control Rule

To create a management interface access control rule, perform the following steps:

**Step 1** Choose **System > Local Settings > Management Interface Access Control**.

Figure 3-20 Management Interface Access Control page (access control disabled by default)



**Step 2** Enable management interface access control and create a default rule.

a. Click **Edit**.

Figure 3-21 Editing management interface access control

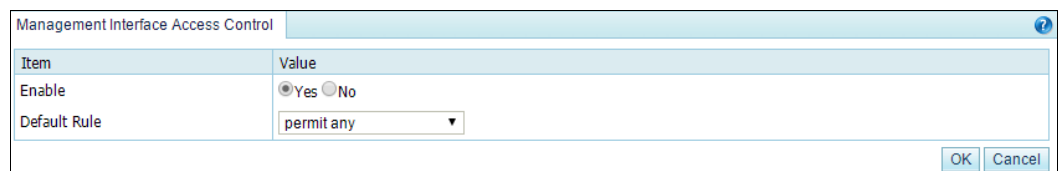


Table 3-9 describes parameters for editing the management interface access control function.

Table 3-9 Parameters for controlling the management interface access control function

Parameter	Description
Enable	Controls whether to enable the management interface access control function. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Yes:</b> enables the function.</li> <li>• <b>No:</b> disables the function.</li> </ul>
Default Rule	Specifies a default rule. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>permit any:</b> allows any IP addresses other than those denied access in management interface access control rules to access ADS.</li> <li>• <b>forbid all:</b> forbids any IP addresses other than those allowed access in management interface access control rules to access ADS. After this option is selected, only IP addresses allowed access in management interface access control rules can access ADS.</li> </ul>

b. Set parameters and click **OK** to complete the configuration.

**Step 3** Create a management interface access control rule.

a. Click **Add**.

Figure 3-22 Creating a management interface access control rule

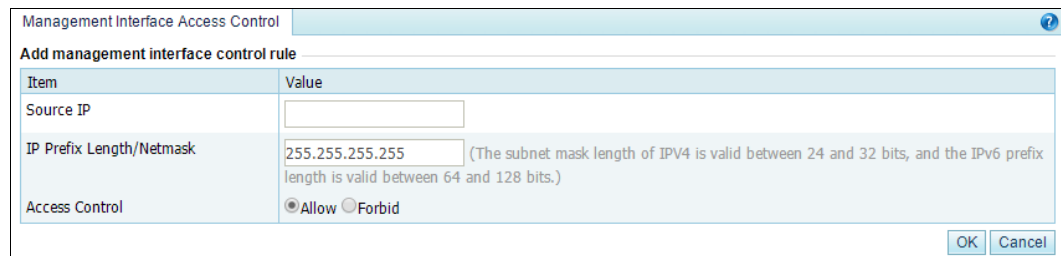


Table 3-10 describes parameters for creating a management interface access control rule.

Table 3-10 Parameters for creating a management interface access control rule

Parameter	Description
Source IP	Specifies a source IP address/segment that is allowed or forbidden to access ADS.
IP Prefix Length/Netmask	Specifies the subnet mask of the source IP address/segment. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The netmask length for IPv4 addresses ranges from 24 to 32 bits.</li> <li>• The netmask length for IPv6 addresses ranges from 64 to 128 bits.</li> </ul>
Access Control	Specifies an action to be taken by ADS for traffic from the specified IP address/segment: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Allow:</b> allows the specified IP address/segment to access ADS.</li> <li>• <b>Forbid:</b> forbids the specified IP address/segment to access ADS.</li> </ul>

**Step 4** Set parameters and click **OK**.

A new management interface access control rule is thus created, as shown in [Figure 3-23](#).

Figure 3-23 List of management interface access control rules

Management Interface Access Control				
Management Interface Control Rule				
ID	Source IP	IP Prefix Length/Netmask	Access Control	Operation
0	10.66.200.73	255.255.255.255	Allow	
1	10.245.5.123	255.255.255.255	Allow	

Item	Value
Enable Access Control	Yes
Default Rule	permit any

----End

### 3.1.8.2 Changing the Rule Match Sequence

When there is more than one management interface access control rule, the rule on top is matched first and, if it is a hit, no other rules will be checked for a match. You can adjust the sequence of rules to change their priority.

On the page shown in [Figure 3-23](#), click or in the **Operation** column of a rule to move it up or down.

### 3.1.8.3 Editing a Management Interface Access Control Rule

You can edit parameter settings of a management interface access control rule after it is configured. To do that, perform the following steps:


- Step 1** On the page shown in [Figure 3-23](#), click in the **Operation** column of a rule.
- Step 2** Edit parameter settings and then click **OK** to save the changes and return to the rule list page.

----End

### 3.1.8.4 Deleting a Management Interface Access Control Rule

On the page shown in [Figure 3-23](#), click in the **Operation** column of a rule and click **OK** in the confirmation dialog box to delete this rule.

## 3.1.9 HA Configuration

 <b>Note</b>	<p>HA can be implemented in in-path mode not only between two ADS devices of the same model but also between the following different models:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• ADS NX3-HD2500 and ADS NX3 2020E</li> <li>• ADS NX5-HD4500 and ADS NX5-4020E</li> <li>• ADS NX3-2020E/NX5-4020E/NX5-6025E and ADS NX5-HD6500</li> </ul>
--	---

Currently, ADS, whether in in-path or out-of-path mode, supports two dual-system hot standby modes: active-active and active-standby.

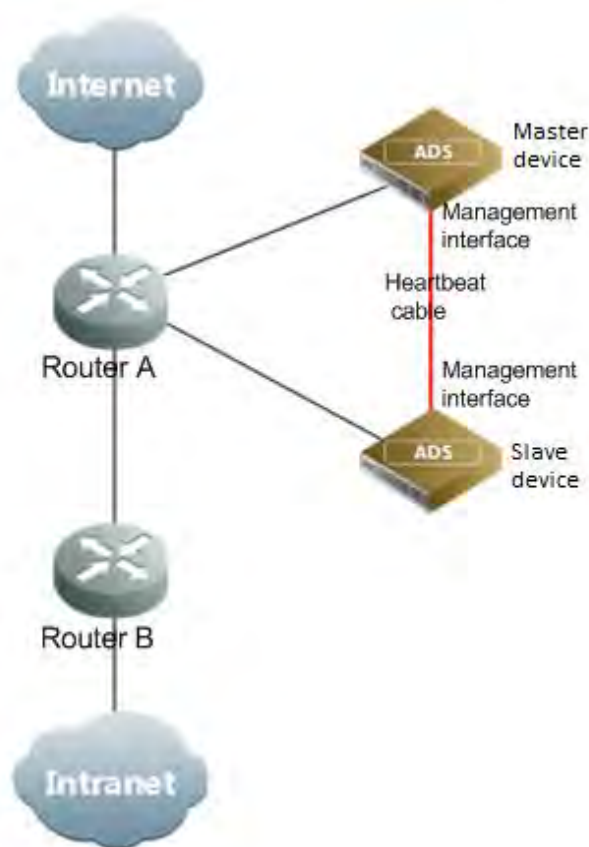
- In active-active mode, one ADS device functions as the master device, and the other as the slave device. Both the master and slave devices handle services and achieve load balancing. If the master device fails, the slave device takes over all work and traffic handled by the former, ensuring to the maximum extent that services are available.
- In active-standby mode, one ADS device functions as the master device, and the other as the slave device. By default, the master device handles all traffic and synchronizes heartbeat information and real-time status to the slave device that is only a backup device and does not handle services. If the master device fails, the slave device takes over all work and traffic handled by the former, ensuring to the maximum extent that services are available.

### 3.1.9.1 HA Configuration on ADS in Out-of-Path Mode

This section describes how to configure ADS deployed in out-of-path mode to implement HA by giving an example of configuring such devices to work in active-standby mode.

As shown in [Figure 3-24](#), the master and slave devices are connected by their heartbeat interfaces (management interfaces on devices) to synchronize heartbeat information and real-time status and establish the BGP neighbor relationship with the peer router.

Figure 3-24 Network topology for ADS in out-of-path mode to implement HA



Note

- Usually, ADS is deployed on the backbone network. Currently, HA can be implemented only in the case of BGP diversion.
- Currently, once the master device fails, the slave device automatically takes over all services from the master device.

- |  |  |
|--|--|
|  | <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• If <b>Syn Diversion Config After Entering a Cluster</b> is enabled in HA advanced configurations on both the master and slave devices, the master device will automatically take back services after it recovers. Otherwise, the administrator needs to manually stop the BGP diversion on the slave device and enable BGP diversion on the master device.</li></ul> |
|--|--|

For dual-system hot standby deployment, the administrator first needs to perform the following interface configuration on the two devices (see section [10.2.1 Configuring IPv4 Network Settings](#) for details):

- Configure the heartbeat interface (management interface).  
The heartbeat interface is used by the master device to synchronize the specified configuration file to the slave device. For details, see [HA File Synchronization Configuration](#). The heartbeat interfaces on the master and slave devices must be reachable for each other.
- Configure other communication interfaces.

After the interface configuration, enable the dual-system hot standby function and configure HA by completing the following:

- Basic settings
- Synchronization file configuration

## Basic HA Settings

Before enabling HA, you need to perform basic HA configuration on both the master the slave devices. To do that, perform the following steps:

**Step 1** Choose **System > Local Settings > HA Configuration**.

Figure 3-25 HA Configuration page

HA Configuration
?

**Device Status**

HA Status: -      Role: Not running      Connection Status: -

**Basic Settings**

Item	Value
HA Mode	Active-Standby
HA Role	Master
Local IP	
Master IP	
Slave IP	

[View Status](#)   [Enable](#)   [Edit](#)   [Advanced Config](#)

**Synchronization File Configuration**

Policies
Diversion & Injection
System
Advanced

Item	Value
Protection Groups	No
Group Policy Templates	No
Advanced Global Parameters	No
Response Page Settings	No
SSL Certificate Mgmt	No
Mobile Device User-Agent Rules	No
Access Control Rules	No
Reflection Protection Rules	No
GeoIP Rules	No
Regular Expression Rules	No
Connection Exhaustion Rules	No
URL-ACL Protection Rules	No
DNS Keyword Checking	No
HTTP Keyword Checking	No

[Edit](#)

**Step 2** Modify basic settings of HA.

- a. Click **Edit** in the lower-right corner of the **Basic Settings** area to open the editing page.

Figure 3-26 Editing basic settings



The screenshot shows the 'HA Configuration' dialog box. At the top, it displays 'Device Status' with 'HA Status: [Red Circle]', 'Role: Not running', and 'Connection Status: [Red Circle]'. Below this is the 'Edit Basic Settings' section, which contains a table with the following items and values:

Item	Value
HA Mode	Active-Standby
HA Role	Master
Local IP	80.94.244.1
Master IP	[Empty text box]
Slave IP	[Empty text box]

At the bottom right of the dialog, there is a note: '(Please separate them by return carriages.)' and two buttons: 'OK' and 'Cancel'.

Table 3-11 describes parameters of basic HA settings.

Table 3-11 Parameters of basic HA settings

Parameter	Description
HA Mode	HA mode, which can be <b>Active-Active</b> or <b>Active-Standby</b> .
HA Role	<p>Role played by the current device in dual-system hot standby mode.</p> <p>In active-standby mode:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Master:</b> indicates that this device works as a master device. After HA is enabled, it starts handling services until a failure occurs.</li> <li><b>Slave:</b> indicates that this device acts as a slave device. After HA is enabled, this device is in backup state and starts handling services only when the master device fails.</li> </ul> <p>In active-active mode:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Master:</b> indicates that this device works as a master device. After HA is enabled, it starts handling services until a failure occurs.</li> <li><b>Slave:</b> indicates that this device acts as a slave device. After HA is enabled, this device is in backup state and handles services the same as the master device, to achieve load balancing. If the master device fails, the slave device takes over all services.</li> </ul>
Local IP	IP address of the management interface on the current device, which can be an IPv4 or IPv6 address.
Master IP	<p>IP address of the master device, which can be an IPv4 or IPv6 address.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>This parameter needs to be set only when <b>HA Role</b> is set to <b>Slave</b>.</li> <li>The route between <b>Master IP</b> and <b>Slave IP</b> must be reachable.</li> </ul>
Slave IP	<p>IP address of the slave device, which can be an IPv4 or IPv6 address.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>This parameter needs to be set only when <b>HA Role</b> is set to <b>Master</b>.</li> </ul>

Parameter	Description
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The route between <b>Master IP</b> and <b>Slave IP</b> must be reachable.</li> </ul>

b. Set parameters and click **OK** to save the settings.

**Step 3** (Optional) Modify advanced HA configurations.

a. Click **Advanced Config** in the lower-right corner of the **Basic Settings** area.

Figure 3-27 Advanced Configurations area

Item	Value
Communication Port	6666
Heartbeat Sync Interval	1000ms
Interval Multiplier	5
Real-Time Status Sync	No
Real-Time Status Sync Interval	600 second
Check Exception over Diversion and Injection Interfaces	Disable
Syn Diversion Config After Entering a Cluster	Disable

(\*For devices working in HA mode, the communication port must be the same and it is recommended that other parameters have the same settings.)


b. Click **Edit**.

Figure 3-28 Editing advanced settings



Item	Value
Communication Port	6666 (6666-6700)
Heartbeat Sync Interval	1000 ms (1000-60000)
Interval Multiplier	5 (2-100)
Real-Time Status Sync	<input type="radio"/> Yes <input checked="" type="radio"/> No
Real-Time Status Sync Interval	600 second (100-3600)
Check Exception over Diversion and Injection Interfaces	<input type="radio"/> Enable <input checked="" type="radio"/> Disable
Syn Diversion Config After Entering a Cluster	<input type="radio"/> Enable <input checked="" type="radio"/> Disable

Table 3-12 describes the advanced HA configuration parameters.

Table 3-12 Advanced HA configuration parameters

Parameter	Description
Communication Port	Port for HA communication.
Heartbeat Sync Interval	Interval for the active device to synchronize keepalive information to the standby device, in milliseconds.   <b>Note</b> The <b>Heartbeat Sync Interval</b> values on the master and slave devices should be as close as possible to avoid possible HA connection



Parameter	Description
	establishment failures.
Interval Multiplier	An auxiliary parameter for detecting heartbeat timeouts when an HA connection is established.   <b>Note</b>  The <b>Interval Multiplier</b> values on the master and slave devices should be as close as possible to avoid possible HA connection establishment failures.
Real-Time Status Sync	Whether to enable real-time status synchronization.   <b>Note</b>  <b>Real-Time Status Sync</b> should be enabled on both the master and slave devices so that files can be synchronized between the two devices.
Real-time Status Sync Interval	Interval at which the master device to synchronize specified configuration files to the slave device.
Check Exception over Diversion and Injection Interfaces	Controls whether to check the status of diversion and injection interfaces. When an exception is detected on the diversion or injection interface, a master/slave switchover is triggered.
Syn Diversion Config After Entering a Cluster	After an ADS device joins a cluster, the diversion status of the peer is synchronized to this device.

**Step 4** Click **OK** to save the settings.

----End

## HA File Synchronization Configuration

After configuring basic HA settings on both the master and slave devices, you can specify which policy, diversion and injection, system, and advanced configurations are to be synchronized.

### Policies

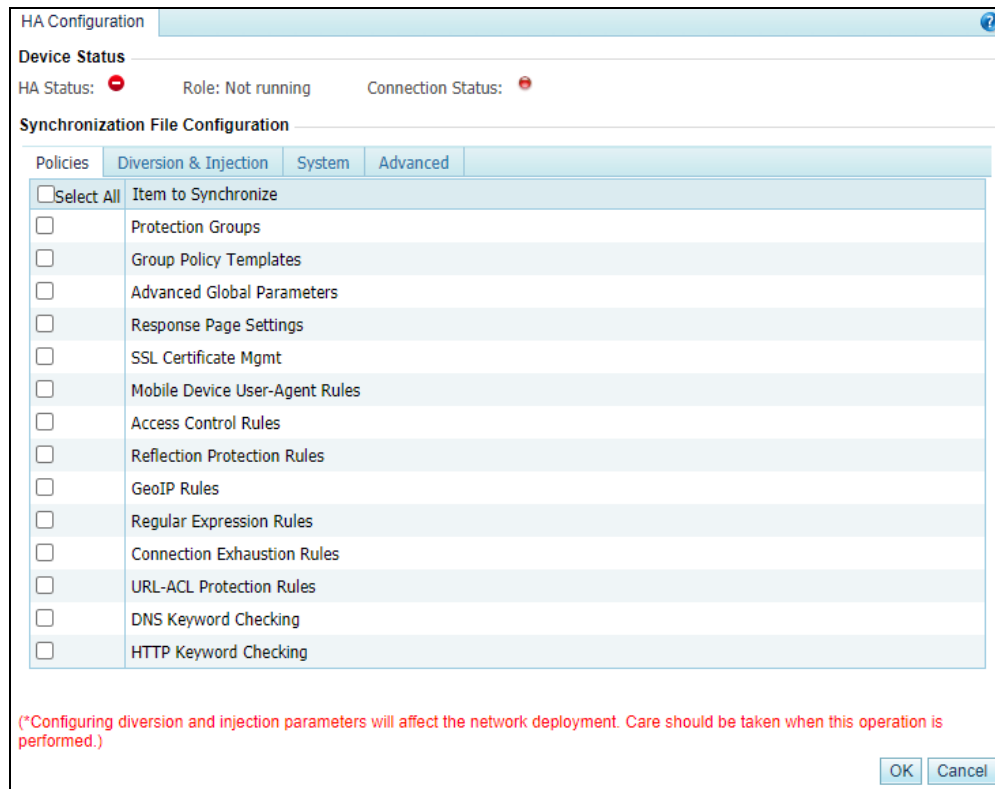
To specify policy configurations to be synchronized, perform the following steps:

**Step 1** Choose **System > Local Settings > HA Configuration**.

The **Policies** tab page is displayed by default in the **Synchronization File Configuration** area, as shown in [Figure 3-25](#).

**Step 2** Click **Edit** in the lower- right corner of the **Synchronization File Configuration** area to open the editing page.

Figure 3-29 Policy configurations to be synchronized



**Step 3** Select the desired configuration(s) and click **OK**.

----End

## Diversion and Injection

To specify diversion and injection configurations to be synchronized, perform the following steps:

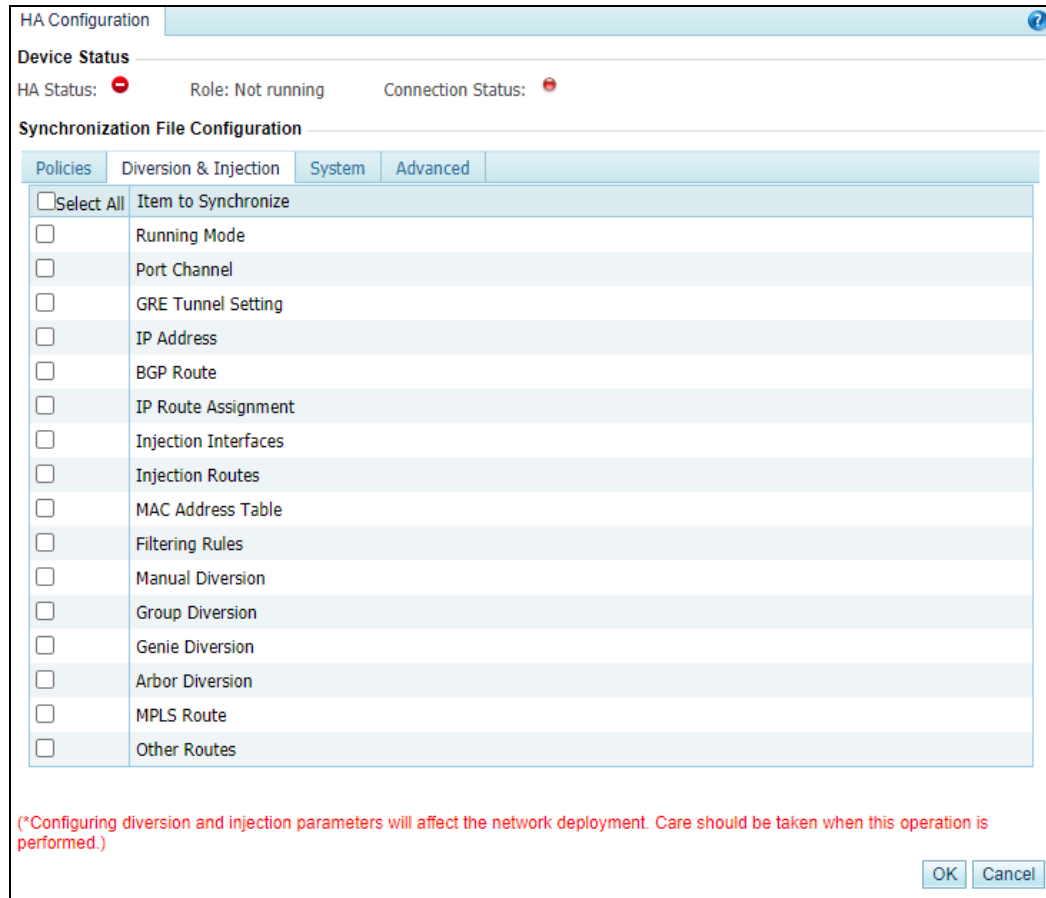
**Step 1** On the page shown in [Figure 3-25](#), click the **Diversion & Injection** tab.



**Caution**

Synchronizing diversion and injection configurations may cause network interruption or other problems. Be careful and perform such synchronization only when necessary.

Figure 3-30 Diversion and injection configurations to be synchronized



**Step 2** Select the desired configuration(s) and click **OK**.

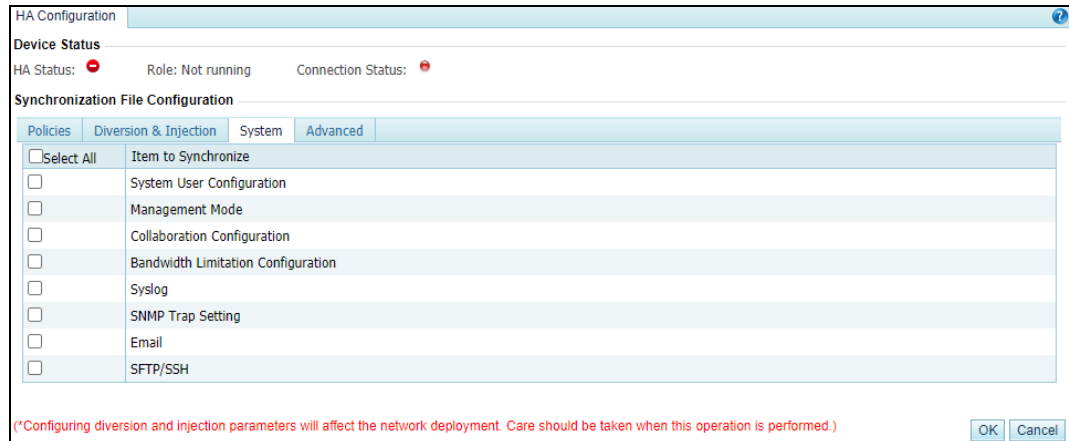
----End

## System

To specify system configurations to be synchronized, perform the following steps:

**Step 1** On the page shown in [Figure 3-29](#), click the **System** tab.

Figure 3-31 System configurations to be synchronized



**Step 2** Select the desired configuration(s) and click **OK**.

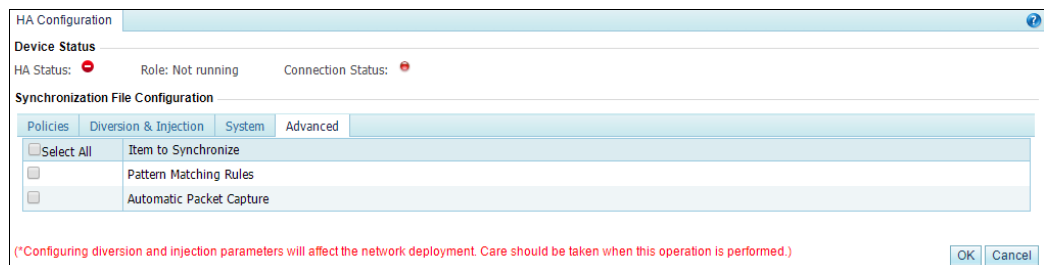
----End

## Advanced Configuration

To specify advanced configurations to be synchronized, perform the following steps:

**Step 1** On the page shown in [Figure 3-29](#), click the **Advanced** tab.

Figure 3-32 Advanced configurations to be synchronized



**Step 2** Select the desired configuration(s) and click **OK**.

----End

## Enabling HA

After completing basic HA settings and file synchronization configuration on both the master and slave devices, you can enable HA on them separately by clicking **Enable** in the lower-right corner of the **Basic Settings** area on the **HA Configuration** tab page shown in [Figure 3-25](#).

After HA is enabled, the **HA Configuration** tab page on a master device is as shown in [Figure 3-33](#), and that on a slave device is as shown in [Figure 3-34](#).

Figure 3-33 HA Configuration page on a master device

HA Configuration

Device Status

HA Status: ● Role: master Connection Status: ●

Basic Settings

Item	Value
HA Mode	Active-Standby
HA Role	Master
Local IP	10.66.242.212
Master IP	
Slave IP	10.66.250.250

(\*Please disable the HA function before modifying HA Mode, HA Role, Local IP, Master IP, Slave IP, Communication Port, or Heartbeat Sync Interval.) [View Status](#) [Disable](#) [Edit](#) [Advanced Config](#)

Synchronization File Configuration

Policy [Diversion & Injection](#) [System](#) [Advanced](#)

Item	Value
Protection Groups	Yes
Group Policy Templates	Yes
Advanced Global Parameters	Yes
Response Page Settings	No
SSL Certificate Mgmt	No
Mobile Device User-Agent Rules	No
Access Control Rules	No
Reflection Protection Rules	No
GeoIP Rules	No
Regular Expression Rules	No
Connection Exhaustion Rules	No
URL-ACL Protection Rules	No
DNS Keyword Checking	No
HTTP Keyword Checking	No

[Edit](#)

Figure 3-34 HA Configuration page on a slave device

HA Configuration

Device Status

HA Status: ● Role: slave Connection Status: ●

Basic Settings

Item	Value
HA Mode	Active-Standby
HA Role	Slave
Local IP	80.100.4.1
Master IP	80.100.4.2
Slave IP	80.100.4.1

(\*Please disable the HA function before modifying HA Mode, HA Role, Local IP, Master IP, Slave IP, Communication Port, or Heartbeat Sync Interval.) [View Status](#) [Disable](#) [Edit](#) [Advanced Config](#)

Synchronization File Configuration

Policy [Diversion & Injection](#) [System](#) [Advanced](#)

Item	Value
Protection Groups	No
Group Policy Templates	No
Advanced Global Parameters	No
Response Page Settings	No
SSL Certificate Mgmt	No
Mobile Device User-Agent Rules	No
Access Control Rules	No
Reflection Protection Rules	No
GeoIP Rules	No
Regular Expression Rules	No
Connection Exhaustion Rules	No
URL-ACL Protection Rules	No
DNS Keyword Checking	No
HTTP Keyword Checking	No

[Edit](#)

## Disabling HA

After HA is enabled, in the lower-right corner of the **Basic Settings** area on the **HA Configuration** page shown in [Figure 3-25](#), the **Enable** button changes to **Disable**. You can click **Disable** to disable HA.

Generally, you need to disable HA before editing such parameters as **HA Mode**, **HA Role**, **Local IP**, **Master IP**, **Slave IP**, and **Heartbeat Sync Interval**.

## Viewing HA Status

After HA is enabled, the work status, role, connection status, and peer list of HA are displayed in the **Device Status** area shown in [Figure 3-25](#).

To view the detailed status of HA configuration, you can click **View Status** in the lower-right corner of the **Basic Settings** area shown in [Figure 3-25](#).

[Figure 3-35](#) shows the HA status information of a master device in active-standby mode, and [Figure 3-36](#) shows that of a slave device in active-standby mode.

Figure 3-35 HA status information of a master device

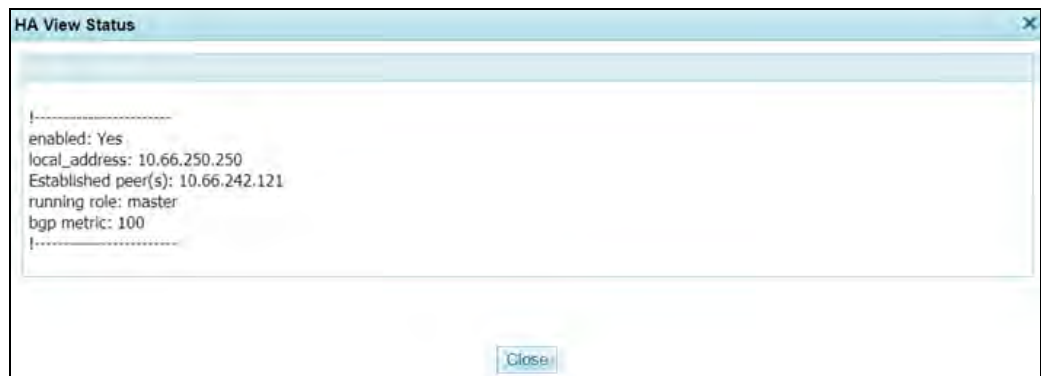


Figure 3-36 HA status information of a slave device



### 3.1.9.2 HA Configuration on ADS in In-Path Mode

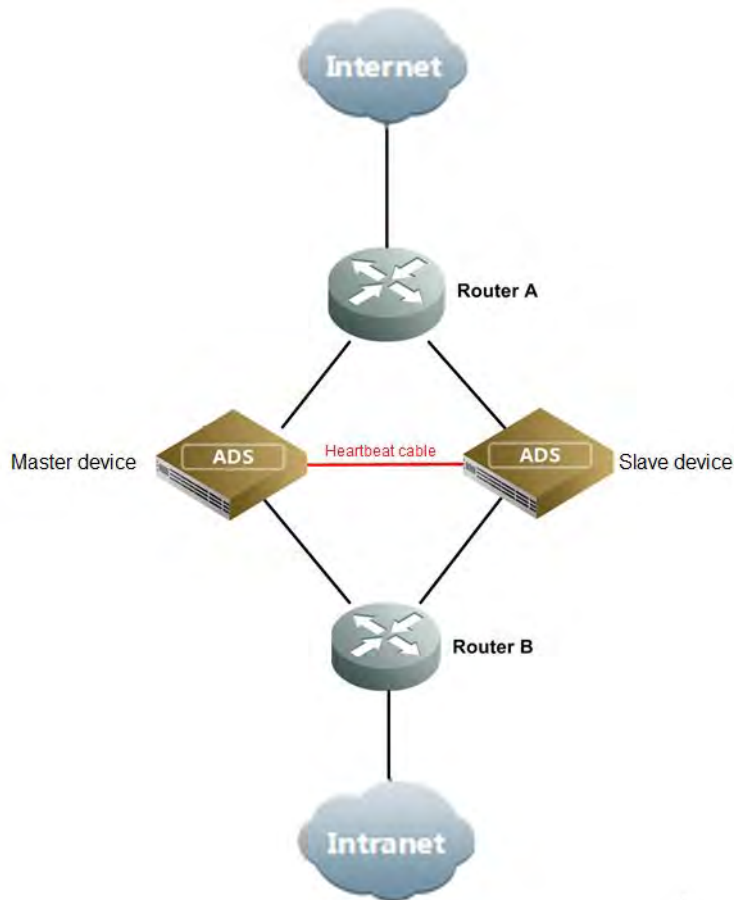


Note

On ADS in in-path mode, if the bypass function is enabled, the HA function is unavailable.

When ADS is deployed in in-path mode, the topology for it to implement HA is as shown in [Figure 3-37](#).

Figure 3-37 Network topology for ADS in in-path mode to implement HA



HA configuration on ADS in in-path mode is similar to that on ADS in out-of-path mode. For details, see section [3.1.9.1 HA Configuration on ADS in Out-of-Path Mode](#). Note the following differences in the **HA Configuration** page:

- **Advanced Configurations: Check Exception over Diversion and Injection Interfaces and Syn Diversion Config After Entering a Cluster** are unavailable on ADS in in-path mode.
- **Synchronization File Configuration:** The **Diversion & Injection** tab is unavailable on ADS in in-path mode.

Figure 3-38 HA configuration on ADS in in-path mode

HA Configuration ?

**Device Status**  
 HA Status: ● Role: Not running Connection Status: ●

**Basic Settings**

Item	Value
HA Mode	Active-Standby
HA Role	Master
Local IP	
Master IP	
Slave IP	

[View Status](#) [Enable](#) [Edit](#) [Advanced Config](#)

**Synchronization File Configuration**

[Policies](#) [Diversion & Injection](#) [System](#) [Advanced](#)

Item	Value
Protection Groups	No
Group Policy Templates	No
Advanced Global Parameters	No
Response Page Settings	No
SSL Certificate Mgmt	No
Mobile Device User-Agent Rules	No
Access Control Rules	No
Reflection Protection Rules	No
GeoIP Rules	No
Regular Expression Rules	No
Connection Exhaustion Rules	No
URL-ACL Protection Rules	No
DNS Keyword Checking	No
HTTP Keyword Checking	No

[Edit](#)

### 3.1.10 (Optional) Bypass Configuration

The bypass function is available only for ADS devices running in in-path mode. Currently, ADS NX5-10000 and NX1-VN do not support bypass configuration.



On ADS in in-path mode, if the HA function is enabled, the bypass function is unavailable.

This function ensures uninterrupted network communications when ADS fails. ADS devices provide the built-in and external bypass functions.

To configure this function, choose **System > Local Settings > Bypass Configuration**.



Figure 3-39 Bypass Configuration page

Bypass Configuration						
<b>Built-in Bypass Configuration</b>						
Status	Bypass group		Operation			
⊘	T1/1-T1/2		▶			
⊘	T2/1-T2/2		▶			
<b>External Bypass Configuration</b>						
Status	IN/OUT Interface Pair	Bypass Switch Heartbeat IP	Bypass Switch Type	Link	Password	Operation
⊘	F3/1-F3/2	10.66.242.44	BP240X	1	*****	⚙️ ⊘
⊕	T1/1-T1/2	10.66.242.169	BP240X	1	*****	⚙️ ⊕
						<input type="button" value="Add"/> <input type="button" value="Enable All"/> <input type="button" value="Disable All"/>

Note that the **Link** column appears in the table, indicating the link ID of the external bypass switch, only when the switch type is **BP240X**.

### 3.1.10.1 Built-in Bypass

The built-in bypass function is disabled by default, as shown in Figure 3-39. You can specify an interface group as built-in bypass interfaces.

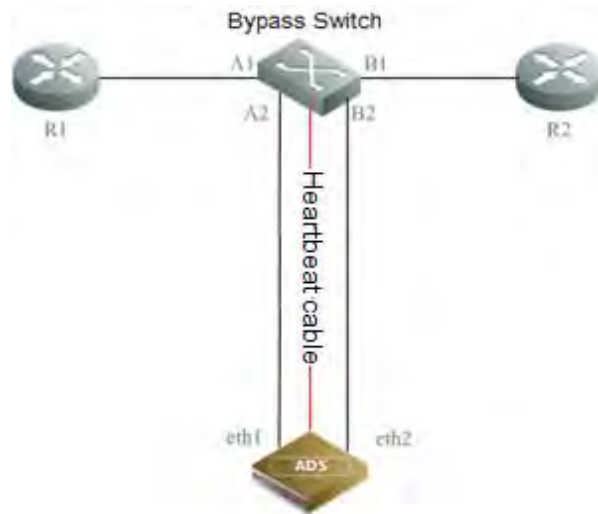
- To enable this function, click ▶ in the **Operation** column. Then the indicator in the **Status** column turns to ⊕, indicating that the built-in bypass function is enabled. At the same time, the button in the **Operation** column turns to ⊘.
- To disable this function, click ⊘ in the **Operation** column. Then the indicator in the **Status** column turns to ⊘, indicating that the built-in bypass function is disabled.

### 3.1.10.2 External Bypass

The external bypass function can only be enabled on optical interfaces. This function is only available for ADS in in-path mode. External bypass devices from NSFOCUS are called NSF-BS.

Figure 3-40 shows the topology for the interaction between ADS and the bypass switch.

Figure 3-40 Topology for the interaction between ADS and the bypass switch



When any of the following occurs:

- ADS is powered off;
- the heartbeat interface is Down; or
- the interface check function is enabled,

the associated working interfaces are Down, and the bypass switch automatically switches to the bypass mode so that the traffic is transmitted to the next-hop device, bypassing ADS. This ensures uninterrupted network communications.



Note

If any of the following occurs, the bypass switch automatically switches to the bypass mode:

- ADS's engine quits.
- ADS is restarted.
- ADS hangs.
- NSF-BS is manually switched to the bypass state via the web-based manager.
- The route is unreachable between the management interface on ADS and the heartbeat interface on NSF-BS, for example, when the physical connection is broken.
- ADS is powered off.
- The IN and OUT interfaces used by ADS to connect to NSF-BS are in different states, that is, one interface is Up and the other is Down.
- NSF-BS is manually switched to the bypass state via a heartbeat interface or serial port.

If any of the following occurs, the NSF-BS is automatically switched to the non-bypass mode:

- NSF-BS is manually switched to the non-bypass state via the web-based manager.
- The NSF-BS is manually switched to the non-bypass state via a heartbeat interface or serial port.
- The heartbeat synchronization succeeds after a previous failure, that is, the route becomes reachable between the management interface on ADS and the heartbeat interface on NSF-BS.



In in-path mode, ADS enters the bypass state by default when started. If you want ADS to implement protection, you must manually disable the external bypass so that ADS can switch to the normal protection state.

In the **External Bypass** area shown in [Figure 3-39](#), you can manage the bypass function as follows:

## Adding an External Bypass Group

Click **Add** to the lower right of the external bypass configuration table to add an external bypass group. See [Figure 3-41](#).


Figure 3-41 Adding an external bypass group

[Table 3-13](#) describes parameters of the external bypass group.


Table 3-13 Parameters of the external bypass group

Parameter	Description
IN/OUT Interface Pair	A pair of IN and OUT interfaces used by ADS to connect to the bypass switch.
Bypass Switch Heartbeat IP	IP address used by the external switch to communicate with ADS. For details on installation and usage of the external switch, refer to the related user guide shipped with the switch.
Bypass Switch Type	Specifies a model of the external bypass switch, which can be <b>BP240X</b> , <b>BP2301</b> , <b>BP2201</b> , or <b>BP2100</b> .
Bypass Link ID	Specifies the link ID of the external bypass switch. This is available only when <b>BP240X</b> is selected as the bypass switch. Other models support only one link by default.
Password	Password used for login to the bypass switch. This is available only when <b>BP2100</b> is selected as the bypass switch. For the password, refer to the related user guide shipped with the switch.
Confirm Password	Login password typed for confirmation. This is available only when <b>BP2100</b> is selected as the bypass switch.

## Editing an External Bypass Group



Click  in the **Operation** column of an external bypass group to modify its configuration. Then click **OK** to save the changes.

## Deleting an External Bypass Group

Click  in the **Operation** column of an external bypass group and then click **OK** to delete the group.



## Enabling External Bypass Groups

On ADS, you can enable one or all external bypass groups:

- To enable one group, click  in the **Operation** column. Then the indicator in the **Status** column turns to , indicating that the bypass group is enabled.
- To enable all external groups, click **Enable All** to the lower right of the external bypass table and click **OK** in the displayed dialog box.

## Disabling External Bypass Groups

On ADS, you can disable one or all external bypass groups:

- To disable a bypass group, click  in the **Operation** column. Then the indicator in the **Status** column turns to , indicating that the bypass group is disabled.
- To disable all bypass groups, click **Disable All** to the lower right of the external bypass table and click **OK** in the displayed dialog box.

## 3.1.11 Collaboration Configuration



- ADS NX5-10000 does not support collaboration configuration.
- This module supports only IPv4 addresses.

ADS devices can work in hierarchical mode to provide better security protection: Once detecting that traffic exceeds a specified threshold, a lower-level ADS instructs the upper-level ADS with more powerful processing capabilities to divert the traffic for processing. After processing, the upper-level ADS injects the legitimate traffic back to the lower-level ADS.

Choose **System > Local Settings > Collaboration Configuration**. The **Collaboration Configuration** page appears, as shown in [Figure 3-42](#).

Figure 3-42 Collaboration Configuration page

Item	Value
Enable	No
Role	Not configured

[Diverted IP Status List](#)
[Lower-Level Device IP List](#)
[Edit](#)

### 3.1.11.1 Managing Upper-Level ADS Devices

#### Configuring an Upper-Level ADS

To configure an upper-level ADS, perform the following steps:

- Step 1** On the **Collaboration Configuration** page shown in [Figure 3-42](#), click **Edit** and set **Enable** to **Yes** and **Role** to **Upper-Level Device**, as shown in [Figure 3-43](#).


 <b>Note</b>	<p>For an upper-level device, you must set <b>Enable</b> to <b>Yes</b> and specify an IP address for the lower-level device in the <b>Management Mode</b> area under <b>System &gt; Local Settings &gt; Management Mode</b>.</p>
--	--


Figure 3-43 Configuring an upper-level ADS

Item	Value
Enable	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Yes <input type="radio"/> No
Role	Upper-Level Device ▾

[OK](#)
[Cancel](#)

[Table 3-14](#) describes parameters for configuring an upper-level ADS.

Table 3-14 Parameters for configuring an upper-level ADS

Parameter	Description
Enable	<p>Controls whether to enable collaboration between lower-level and upper-level ADS devices.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Yes:</b> enables the collaboration function.</li> <li><b>No:</b> disables the collaboration function.</li> </ul> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>To enable collaboration, you need to set <b>Enable</b> to <b>Yes</b> in the <b>Management Mode</b> area (<b>System &gt; Local Settings &gt; Management Mode</b>). For details, see section <a href="#">3.1.4 Management Mode Configuration</a>.</p>
Role	Role of the device. Here, <b>Upper-Level Device</b> should be selected.

**Step 2** Click **OK** to return to the **Collaboration Configuration** page.

Figure 3-44 Collaboration Configuration page

Collaboration Configuration	
Item	Value
Enable	Yes
Role	Upper-Level Device

**Step 3** Click **Lower-Level Device IP List**.

IP addresses of lower-level ADS devices are displayed. See [Figure 3-45](#).

Figure 3-45 List of IP addresses of lower-level devices

Collaboration Configuration				
Lower-Level Device IP List				
IP Address	Device ID	Subnet-Wide Diversion ?	Status	Operation
				<input type="button" value="Add"/> <input type="button" value="Back"/>

**Step 4** Click **Add** to add a lower-level device.

Type the IP address and hash value of the lower-level device and leave other parameters at their default values.

Figure 3-46 Adding a lower-level ADS

Collaboration Configuration	
Add Lower-Level Device	
IP Address	<input type="text"/>
HASH	<input type="text"/>
Subnet-Wide Diversion ?	<input type="radio"/> Yes <input checked="" type="radio"/> No
Server Status	<input type="button" value="Enable"/>
<input type="button" value="OK"/> <input type="button" value="Cancel"/>	

**Step 5** Click **OK** to complete the configuration.

----End

## Viewing Diverted IP Status List

On the **Collaboration Configuration** page shown in [Figure 3-42](#), click **Diverted IP Status List** to view IP addresses notified to the current ADS by lower-level ADS devices for traffic diversion and traffic information on the current ADS.

Figure 3-47 Viewing diverted traffic

Collaboration Configuration								
Diverted IP Status List <span style="color: red;">Please first configure a lower-level device IP address.</span>								
ID	IP Address	Collaboration Status <span>?</span>	Current ADS Traffic				Total pps	Total bps
			SYN (pps)	ACK (pps)	UDP (pps)	ICMP (pps)		
<input type="button" value="Refresh"/> <input type="button" value="Clear Status"/> <input type="button" value="Back"/>								

### 3.1.11.2 Managing Lower-Level ADS Devices

#### Configuring a Lower-Level ADS

To configure a lower-level ADS, perform the following steps:

- Step 1** On the **Collaboration Configuration** page shown in [Figure 3-42](#), click **Edit** and set **Enable** to **Yes** and **Role** to **Lower-Level Device**, as shown in [Figure 3-48](#).



Figure 3-48 Configuring a lower-level ADS

Collaboration Configuration	
Item	Value
Enable	<input type="radio"/> Yes <input checked="" type="radio"/> No
Role	Lower-Level Device ▼
<b>Configuration Items</b>	
Upper-Level Device IP	<input type="button" value="Edit upper-level device IP"/> <input type="text"/>
Diversion Mode	Single-IP Diversion ▼
SYN Flood Notification Threshold	<input type="text" value="0"/> pps ▼
ACK Flood Notification Threshold	<input type="text" value="0"/> pps ▼
UDP Flood Notification Threshold	<input type="text" value="0"/> pps ▼
ICMP Flood Notification Threshold	<input type="text" value="0"/> pps ▼
Overall pps Notification Threshold	<input type="text" value="0"/> pps ▼
Overall bps Notification Threshold	<input type="text" value="0"/> Kbps ▼
Time of Stopping Traffic Diversion <span>?</span>	Automatically ▼
<b>Advanced Options</b>	
Query Interval <span>?</span>	<input type="text" value="240"/> (minutes)
Notification Interval	<input type="text" value="30"/> (seconds)
<input type="button" value="OK"/> <input type="button" value="Cancel"/>	

[Table 3-15](#) describes parameters for configuring a lower-level ADS.

Table 3-15 Parameters for configuring a lower-level ADS

Parameter	Description
Enable	Controls whether to enable collaboration between lower-level and upper-level ADS devices. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Yes:</b> enables the collaboration function.</li> </ul>

Parameter	Description	
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>No:</b> disables the collaboration function.</li> </ul>  <p><b>Note</b></p> <p>The lower-level device instructs the upper-level ADS to divert traffic when finding that traffic exceeds a notification threshold.</p>	
Role	Role of the device. Here <b>Lower-Level Device</b> should be selected.	
Upper-Level Device IP	IP address of the management interface of the upper-level ADS.	
Diversion Mode	<p>Mode of traffic diversion between upper-level and lower-level devices.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Single-IP Diversion:</b> indicates that traffic diversion is triggered when traffic destined for a single IP address exceeds a threshold.</li> <li><b>Device Overall Threshold:</b> indicates that traffic diversion is triggered when the overall traffic of the lower-level device exceeds a threshold.</li> </ul>	
SYN Flood Notification Threshold	Threshold for SYN flood traffic. When the traffic rate of SYN packets reaches the threshold, the lower-level ADS instructs the upper-level ADS to divert the traffic.	
ACK Flood Notification Threshold	Threshold for ACK flood traffic. When the traffic rate of ACK packets reaches the threshold, the lower-level ADS instructs the upper-level ADS to divert the traffic.	
UDP Flood Notification Threshold	Threshold for UDP flood traffic. When the traffic rate of UDP packets reaches the threshold, the lower-level ADS instructs the upper-level ADS to divert the traffic.	
ICMP Flood Notification Threshold	Threshold for ICMP flood traffic. When the traffic rate of ICMP packets reaches the threshold, the lower-level ADS instructs the upper-level ADS to divert the traffic.	
Overall Notification Threshold	pps	Threshold for overall traffic in pps. When the traffic rate reaches the threshold, the lower-level ADS instructs the upper-level ADS to divert the traffic.
Overall Notification Threshold	bps	Threshold for overall traffic in bps. When the traffic rate reaches the threshold, the lower-level ADS instructs the upper-level ADS to divert the traffic.
Time of Stopping Traffic Diversion	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Automatically:</b> The lower-level ADS determines whether to send notifications to the upper-level ADS for stopping traffic diversion.</li> <li><b>Scheduled:</b> If this is selected, you also need to specify how many minutes later traffic diversion will be stopped. The lower-level ADS sends notifications to the upper-level ADS for stopping traffic diversion only when the scheduled time expires.</li> </ul>  <p><b>Note</b></p> <p>When the upper-level ADS diverts traffic, the lower-level ADS suspends protection for the related IP address. After the upper-level ADS's traffic diversion stops, the lower-level ADS resumes protection for this IP address.</p>	
Query Interval	Interval at which the lower-level device queries the upper-level device about the current traffic destined for an IP address after the traffic destined for this IP address is diverted. The interval should be longer than 5 minutes; otherwise, route flapping may occur.	



Parameter	Description
Notification Interval	Interval at which the lower-level device resends a diversion notification to the upper-level ADS after a failed diversion notification. The recommend value is 30 to 60 seconds.

**Step 2** Click **OK**.

The lower-level ADS configuration page appears, as shown in [Figure 3-49](#).

Figure 3-49 Lower-level ADS configuration

The screenshot shows the 'Collaboration Configuration' dialog box. It contains a table with the following data:

Item	Value
Enable	Yes
Role	Lower-Level Device

Below this table is the 'Configuration Items' section, which includes the following settings:


Upper-Level Device IP	Existing IPs: 1 99.99.99.99 <input type="button" value="Test"/>
Diversion Mode	Single-IP Diversion
SYN Flood Notification Threshold	7440000(pps)
ACK Flood Notification Threshold	7440000(pps)
UDP Flood Notification Threshold	7440000(pps)
ICMP Flood Notification Threshold	7440000(pps)
Overall pps Notification Threshold	7440000(pps)
Overall bps Notification Threshold	10000000(Kbps)
Time of Stopping Traffic Diversion	Automatically

The 'Advanced Options' section includes:

Query Interval	240(minutes)
Notification Interval	30(seconds)

At the bottom of the dialog, there are four buttons: 'Manually Notified IP', 'Notification Filtering Rule', 'Diverted IP Status List', and 'Edit'.

**Step 3** Click **Test** to check whether the connection between the upper-level and lower-level devices succeeds.

If the icon  appears to the left of the **Test** button, the connection succeeds.

---End

## Viewing Diverted IP Status List

On the **Collaboration Configuration** page shown in [Figure 3-49](#), click **Diverted IP Status List** to view the current traffic on the upper-level and lower-level ADS devices. See [Figure 3-50](#).

Figure 3-50 Status of diverted traffic

ID	IP Address	Collaboration Status	Current ADS Traffic				Total pps	Total bps
			SYN (pps)	ACK (pps)	UDP (pps)	ICMP (pps)		
Refresh Clear Status Back								

## Specifying IP Addresses for Manual Diversion

Sometimes you want an upper-level ADS to divert traffic destined for certain IP addresses. For this purpose, you should specify IP addresses by performing the following steps:

- Step 1** On the **Collaboration Configuration** page shown in [Figure 3-49](#), click **Manually Notified IP**.

Figure 3-51 Configuring manually notified IP addresses

Item	Value
IP Address	<input type="text"/>

- Step 2** Type a desired IP address and click **OK** to complete the configuration.

If multiple IP addresses are required, add them one by one.

----End

## Configuring Notification Filtering Rules

The upper-level ADS can successfully divert traffic destined for the specified IP addresses upon a manual or automatic notification only when notification filtering rules are configured.

To create a notification filtering rule, perform the following steps:

- Step 1** On the **Collaboration Configuration** page shown in [Figure 3-49](#), click **Notification Filtering Rule**.

Figure 3-52 Notification filtering rule page

IP Address	IP Prefix Length/Netmask	Allow Notification	Rule Status	Operation
10.10.10.1	255.255.255.255	No	Enable	

- Step 2** Click **Add**.

Figure 3-53 Adding a notification filtering rule

Collaboration Configuration	
<b>Add Notification Filtering Rule</b>	
Item	Value
IP Address	<input type="text"/>
IP Prefix Length/Netmask	255.255.255.255
Allow Notification	<input type="checkbox"/>
Rule Status	Enable ▾
<input type="button" value="OK"/> <input type="button" value="Cancel"/>	

Table 3-16 describes parameters for creating a notification filtering rule.

Table 3-16 Parameters for creating a notification filtering rule

Parameter	Description
IP Address	Destination IP address or segment of traffic to be manually diverted to the upper-level device.
IP Prefix Length/Netmask	Prefix length or netmask of the IP address. The default value is <b>255.255.255.255</b> .
Allow Notification	Whether notification is allowed for the IP address. The upper-level device can receive notification regarding the IP address only after <b>Allow Notification</b> is selected.
Rule Status	Controls whether to enable this rule. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Enable</b>: enables this rule.</li> <li>• <b>Disable</b>: disables this rule.</li> </ul>

**Step 3** Set parameters and click **OK** to complete the configuration.

---End

## 3.2 Security Configuration

This section covers the following topics:

- [Login Security Settings](#)
- [Locked User Management](#)
- [Authentication Configuration](#)

### 3.2.1 Login Security Settings

This section describes how to configure login security parameters.

The procedure is as follows:

**Step 1** Choose **System > Security Configuration > Login Security Settings**, and then click **Modify**. See [Figure 3-54](#).



Parameter	Description
Lockout Period	<p>Specifies how long a user will be locked after <b>Maximum Allowed Login Failures</b> is exceeded. During the lockout period, the user is prevented from logging in to the system.</p> <p>The value ranges from 1 to 1000 seconds. You are advised to set it to a value no smaller than 180 seconds.</p>
IP Access Control Status	<p>Controls whether to control access from certain IP addresses.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Unlimited:</b> allows access to the device from all IP addresses.</li> <li>• <b>Allow access from the following IP addresses:</b> allows access to the device from IP addresses listed below.</li> <li>• <b>Block access from the following IP addresses:</b> blocks access to the device from IP addresses listed below. When you access ADS from a blocked IP address, the system displays "You cannot log in from the current IP address. Please contact the administrator to check access control settings." on the login page.</li> </ul>
Auto Idle Logout	<p>Specifies the time, in minutes, that a user is allowed to remain idle. When this period expires, a user is logged out and has to log in again before continuing using this system.</p> <p>The value ranges from 0 to 1440. You are advised to set it to a value no greater than 10. The value <b>0</b> indicates that this function is disabled.</p>
Login Verification Code	<p>Controls whether to allow use of login verification codes.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Open:</b> allows use of login verification codes, indicating that a user can successfully log in to ADS only after typing a correct verification code.</li> <li>• <b>Close:</b> disallows use of login verification codes.</li> </ul>

**Step 3** Click **OK** to save the settings.

----End

## 3.2.2 Locked User Management

A user's account will be automatically locked after the number of failed login attempts exceeds the specified value. During the lockout period, the user cannot log in again. After the lockout period expires, the account will be automatically unlocked. You can also go to the **Locked User Management** page to manually unlock the account.



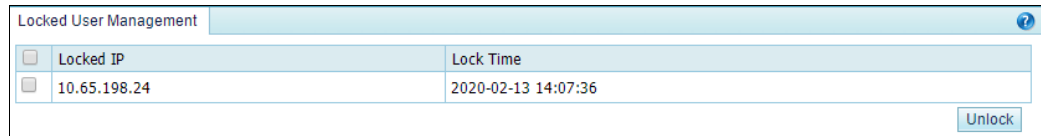
Note

Only the user **admin** can unlock user accounts.

The procedure is as follows for **admin** to unlock a user account:

**Step 1** Choose **System > Security Configuration > Locked User Management**.

Figure 3-55 Locked User Management page



**Step 2** Select the IP address to be unlocked and click **Unlock**.

---End

### 3.2.3 Authentication Configuration

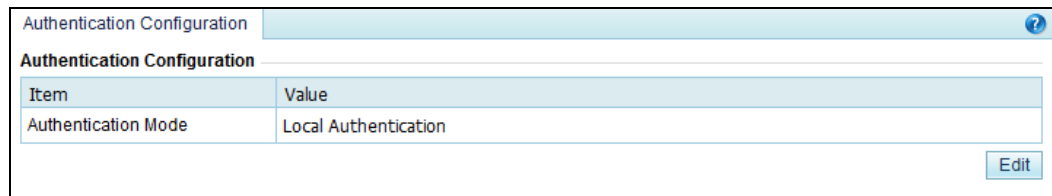
When a user logs in to the web-based manager of ADS, the following authentication modes are supported:

- **Local authentication:** The user can log in to ADS only if a correct user name and password are entered. The system user **admin** can only be locally authenticated.
- **Radius authentication:** The user can log in to ADS only if a correct user name, password, and key are entered. After **Authentication Mode** is set to **Radius Authentication**, Radius authentication is required for all users except the system user **admin**.

The procedure is as follows for **admin** to configure the authentication mode:

**Step 1** Choose **System > Security Configuration > Authentication Configuration**.

Figure 3-56 Authentication Configuration page



**Step 2** Click **Edit** to configure the authentication mode.

Figure 3-57 Editing authentication parameters

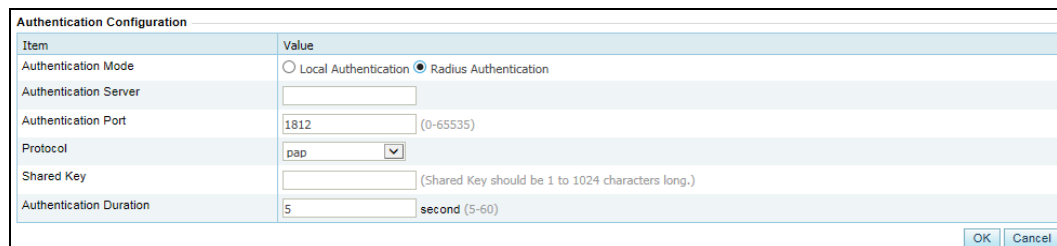


Table 3-18 Parameters for configuring the authentication mode

Parameter	Description
Authentication Mode	Specifies the authentication mode, which can be <b>Local Authentication</b> or <b>Radius Authentication</b> .
Authentication Server	Specifies the IP address of the Radius authentication server. Both IPv4 and IPv6 addresses are supported.
Authentication Port	Specifies the port on which the Radius authentication server listens for authentication requests. The default Radius authentication port is <b>1812</b> .
Protocol	Specifies the authentication mode of the Radius authentication server. This parameter can be set to <b>pap</b> , <b>spap</b> , <b>chap</b> , <b>mschapv1</b> , or <b>mschapv2</b> .
Shared Key	Specifies the shared key that serves as a password between the Radius server and a Radius client. The shared key configured on ADS must be the same as that configured on the Radius server; otherwise, ADS cannot communicate with the Radius server.
Authentication Duration	Specifies the duration of Radius authentication, after which ADS returns the success or failure of the authentication information.

**Step 3** Click **OK** to save the settings.

----End

## 3.3 Log Services

This section covers the following topics:

- [Syslog Configuration](#)
- [SNMP Configuration](#)
- [Email Configuration](#)
- [SFTP/SSH Configuration](#)

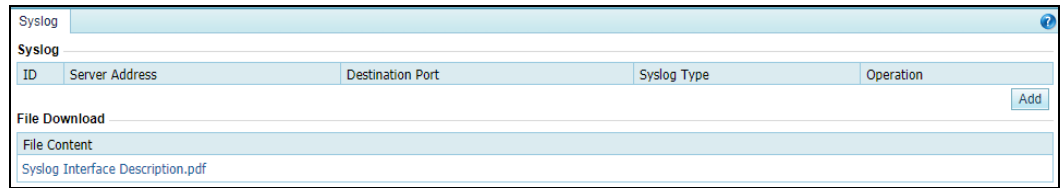
### 3.3.1 Syslog Configuration

After configuration, ADS can send specified logs to the remote syslog server through the communication interface.

**Step 1** Choose **System > Log Services > Syslog**.

Before configuration, you can download the related syslog interface description file. In [Figure 3-58](#), you can click the file name in the **File Download** area to download the syslog file to a local disk drive.

Figure 3-58 Configuring syslog



**Step 2** Click **Add** to add a syslog server.


 <b>Note</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• A maximum of 10 syslog servers can be added. Syslog configurations are independent. When one syslog server fails, other servers can still receive syslog messages.</li> <li>• Syslog servers can share a device ID and port number.</li> </ul>
--	---

Figure 3-59 Configuring a syslog server

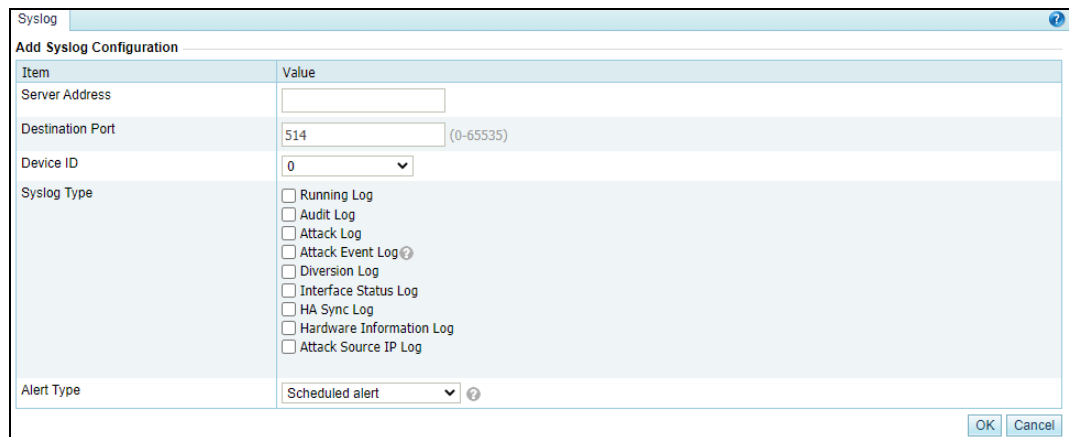



Table 3-19 Parameters for configuring a Syslog server

Parameter	Description
Server Address	IPv4 or IPv6 address of the syslog server.
Destination Port	Port of the syslog server.
Device ID	Uniquely identifies the device that sends log messages to the syslog server. It is an important parameter, ranging from 0 to 7.
Syslog Type	Specifies the type of log messages that are sent to the syslog server, which can be: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Running log</li> <li>• Audit log</li> <li>• Attack log</li> <li>• Attack event log</li> </ul>



Parameter	Description
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Diversion log</li> <li>• Interface status log</li> <li>• HA sync log</li> <li>• Hardware information log</li> <li>• Attack source IP log</li> </ul> <p>By default, the system sends log messages every 30 seconds.</p>
Alert Type	<p>Specifies the type of alerts, which can be either of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Scheduled alert:</b> sends alerts every 30 seconds.</li> <li>• <b>Threshold exceeding alert:</b> sends alerts when a threshold is exceeded.</li> </ul> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• This parameter is valid only for the running log and hardware information log.</li> <li>• If <b>Threshold exceeding alert</b> is selected, you need to further set hardware alert thresholds. For details, see section <a href="#">3.1.7 Hardware Alert Thresholds</a>.</li> </ul>

**Step 3** Configure parameters and click **OK** to save the settings.

----End

### 3.3.2 SNMP Configuration

Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP) is used to ensure the transmission of management information between two arbitrary nodes on the network, so that the network administrator can query information, modify information, locate faults, and diagnose faults on any network node.

SNMP adopts the polling mechanism with basic function sets and is especially applicable to small, fast, and low-price environments. The SNMP implementation is based on the UDP protocol and so can connect to various products.

SNMP configuration on ADS includes:

- **SNMP agent:** configures ADS to collect information that can be reported to the network management station (NMS). SNMP V2C and SNMP V3 are supported.
- **SNMP trap:** configures ADS to collect trap messages, namely SNMP server-related information.

After SNMP is configured, ADS will send SNMP trap messages to SNMP NMS in an unsolicited manner.

To configure SNMP, perform the following steps:

**Step 1** Choose **System > Log Services > SNMP Setting**.

The **SNMP Trap Setting** page appears, as shown in [Figure 3-60](#).

Before configuration, you can download the related SNMP description or MIB file by clicking a file name in the **SNMP-related Downloads** area to download the file to a local disk drive.

Figure 3-60 SNMP Trap Setting page

Item	Value
Run SNMP at Startup	No
SNMP Server IP	
Alert Type	Scheduled alert
Service Status	Not running

[Edit](#)

Item	Value
Run SNMP Agent at Startup	Yes
Service Status	Running
SNMP Protocol Version	2c
Community	collapsar

[Edit](#)

**SNMP-related Downloads**

Files for Download


[SNMP Description.pdf](#)

[COLLAPSAR-RECORD-MIB.v2.0.mib](#)

**Step 2** Click **Edit** in the **SNMP Trap Setting** area and **SNMP Agent** area respectively to modify SNMP trap and SNMP agent parameters.

[Table 3-20](#) describes SNMP Trap parameters.

Table 3-20 SNMP Trap parameters

Parameter	Description
Run SNMP at Startup	Controls whether to launch the SNMP trap service when ADS is started. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Yes:</b> launches the SNMP trap service when ADS is started.</li> <li><b>No:</b> does not launch the SNMP trap service when ADS is started.</li> </ul>
SNMP Server IP	IPv4 or IPv6 address of the SNMP server. At most two server IP addresses can be specified to receive logs via SNMP trap.
Alert Type	Specifies the type of alerts, which can be either of the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Scheduled alert:</b> sends alerts every 30 seconds.</li> <li><b>Threshold exceeding alert:</b> sends alerts when a threshold is exceeded.</li> </ul> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>If <b>Threshold exceeding alert</b> is selected, you need to further set hardware alert thresholds. For details, see section <a href="#">3.1.7 Hardware Alert Thresholds</a>.</p>
Service Status	Running status of the SNMP server.
Run SNMP at Startup	Controls whether to launch the SNMP agent when ADS is started. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Yes:</b> launches the SNMP agent when ADS is started.</li> <li><b>No:</b> does not launch the SNMP agent when ADS is started.</li> </ul>
Service Status	Running status of the SNMP agent server
SNMP Protocol Version	SNMP protocol supported by the SNMP agent, which can be SNMPv2c or SNMPv3
Community	Community supported by the SNMP agent. When the SNMP agent function is

Parameter	Description
	disabled, this parameter is unavailable.

**Step 3** Set parameters and click **OK** to save the settings.

----End

### 3.3.3 Email Configuration

Email configuration is required when ADS is configured to send one or multiple types of log to a specified email address.

To configure email parameters, perform the following steps:

**Step 1** Choose **System > Log Services > Email**.

Figure 3-61 Log sending by email

The screenshot shows a window titled 'Email' with a sub-header 'Log Sending by Mail'. It contains a table with the following items and values:

Item	Value
Auto Log Sending	No
Receiver	
Log Content	
Log Sending Cycle	60
SMTP Server Setting	
SMTP Server	
SMTP Server Port	25
Sender Email Address	
SMTP Username	
SMTP Password	*****

Buttons at the bottom right: Edit, Send Test Mail, Test Result.

**Step 2** Click **Edit**.

Figure 3-62 Editing log sending parameters

The screenshot shows the 'Email' configuration window in 'Edit' mode. The 'Log Sending by Mail' section is expanded to show more options:

- Auto Log Sending:** Radio buttons for Yes and No, with 'No' selected.
- Receiver:** A large empty text area.
- Log Content:** A list of checkboxes:
  - Attack Log
  - System Logs
  - Traffic Diversion Log
  - Link Status Log
  - HA Logs
- Log Sending Cycle:** A text input field containing '60' with '(5-60)(minutes)' as a hint.
- SMTP Server Setting:**
  - SMTP Server:** An empty text input field.
  - SMTP Server Port:** A text input field containing '25' with '(1-65535)' as a hint.
  - Sender Email Address:** An empty text input field.
  - Use Authentication:** A dropdown menu currently set to 'No'.

Buttons at the bottom right: OK, Cancel.

Table 3-21 describes parameters for configuring log sending by email.

Table 3-21 Parameters for configuring log sending by email

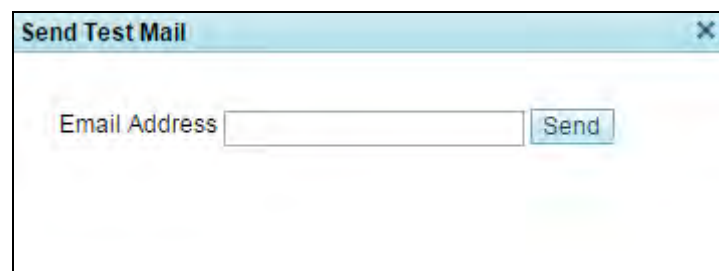
Parameter	Description
Auto Log Sending	Controls whether the system sends the selected logs to a specific email address. The value <b>Yes</b> indicates that the system sends the selected logs to a specific email address. If this function is enabled, you need to configure <b>Receiver</b> and <b>Log Content</b> .
Receiver	Email address that receives logs. A maximum of 10 email addresses are allowed, with each in a separate line.
Log Content	Type of logs to be sent, which can be <b>Attack Log</b> , <b>System Logs</b> , <b>Traffic Diversion Log</b> , <b>Link Status Log</b> , and <b>HA Logs</b> . By default, the system sends log messages every 60 minutes.
Log Sending Cycle	Specifies how frequently emails are to be sent. The value range is 5 to 60 minutes.
SMTP Server	IP address or domain name of the SMTP server that sends emails from ADS to the receiver. You can type either an IPv4 or IPv6 address. At most two server IP addresses can be specified to receive logs via SNMP trap.
SMTP Server Port	Specifies a port for the SMTP server to send emails to the receiver.
Sender Email Address	Email address that sends logs.
Use Authentication	Specifies whether to authenticate the SMTP user that attempts to send emails. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Yes</b>: authenticates the user that attempts to send emails.</li> <li>• <b>No</b>: does not authenticate the user that attempts to send emails.</li> </ul>
SMTP Username/SMTP Password	User name and password for sending emails. The two parameters are available only when you select <b>Yes</b> for <b>Use Authentication</b> .

**Step 3** Configure parameters and click **OK** to save the settings.

**Step 4** Send a test mail.

After email parameters are configured, click **Send Test Mail** to check whether parameters are correctly configured. In the dialog box shown in [Figure 3-63](#), type the email address to receive the test mail.

Figure 3-63 Send Test Mail dialog box



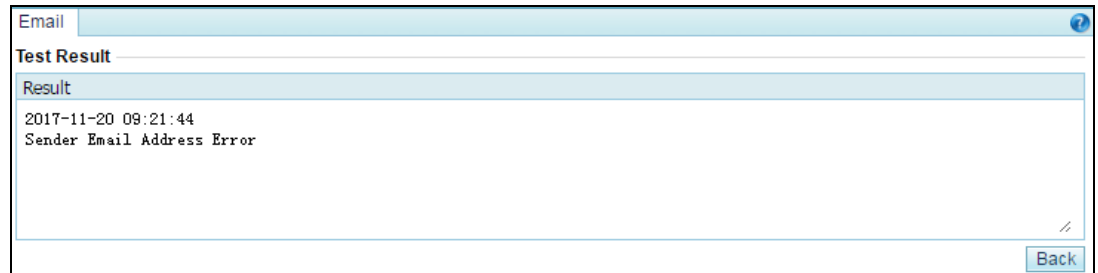
**Step 5** Type the receiving address and then click **Send**.


ADS then sends a test mail to the specified address.

**Step 6** View the test result.

Click **Test Result**. Then the test result is displayed, as shown in [Figure 3-64](#).

Figure 3-64 Email test result



 <b>Note</b>	After email parameters are configured, when the engine fails for three times, the system will automatically send engine fault logs to the specified email address.
--	--

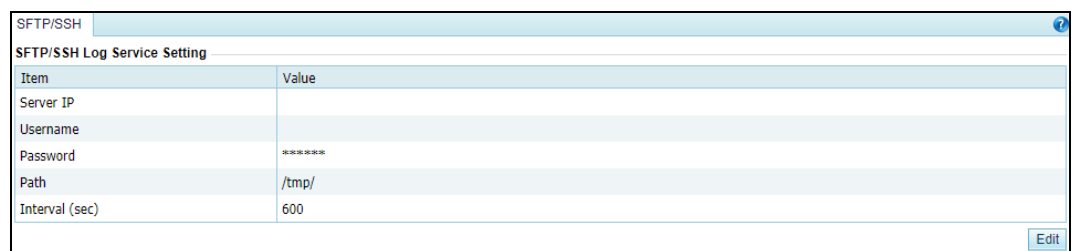
---End

### 3.3.4 SFTP/SSH Configuration

As shown in [Figure 3-65](#), ADS can be configured to export logs of the protected server to a specified directory via SFTP or SSH.

**Step 1** Choose **System > Log Services > SFTP/SSH**, and then click **Edit**.

Figure 3-65 Editing SFTP/SSH settings



[Table 3-22](#) describes parameters for exporting logs via SFTP or SSH.

Table 3-22 Parameters for exporting logs via SFTP or SSH

Parameter	Description
Server IP	IPv4 or IPv6 address of the SFTP/SSH server that receives logs from ADS.
Username	User name for logging in to the SFTP/SSH server.

Parameter	Description
Password	Password for logging in to the SFTP/SSH server.
Path	Path on the SFTP/SSH server for saving logs.
Interval(sec)	Interval (unit: second) for exporting logs via SFTP or SSH. The value ranges from 60 to 86400, that is, 1 minute to 1 day.

**Step 2** Configure parameters and click **OK** to save the settings.

----End

## 3.4 Others

This section covers the following topics:

- [License](#)
- [System Update](#)
- [Remote Assistance](#)
- [SSL Certificate Import](#)
- [One-Click Inspection](#)
- [Version Information](#)
- [Web API File Download](#)

### 3.4.1 License

After ADS is installed, you must import a license before using it. License types vary a bit for hardware devices and virtual devices:

- Hardware device: License types include **Trial**, **Interim**, and **Formal**.
- Virtual device (vADS): License types include **Trial**, **Interim**, **Formal**, and **Subscription**.

When a license expires, ADS will provide limited functions, as shown in [Table 3-23](#). What functions are still available depends on the license type.

Table 3-23 Functions available upon license expiry

License Type	Functions Available upon Expiry
Trial	ADS cannot be upgraded and then it will enter the packet forwarding mode, indicating that it will no longer provide protection.
Interim	ADS cannot be upgraded and then it will enter the packet forwarding mode, indicating that it will no longer provide protection.
Formal	ADS can still provide protection, but will no longer be upgraded.
Subscription	vADS cannot be upgraded and then it will enter the packet forwarding mode, indicating that it will no longer provide protection.

Choose **System > Others > License Info**. The initial license information page appears, as shown in [Figure 3-66](#).

Figure 3-66 License Info page before the import of a license



After a license is imported, different license information is displayed for hardware and virtual devices, as shown in [Figure 3-67](#) and [Figure 3-68](#).

Figure 3-67 License Info page on a hardware device after the import of a license

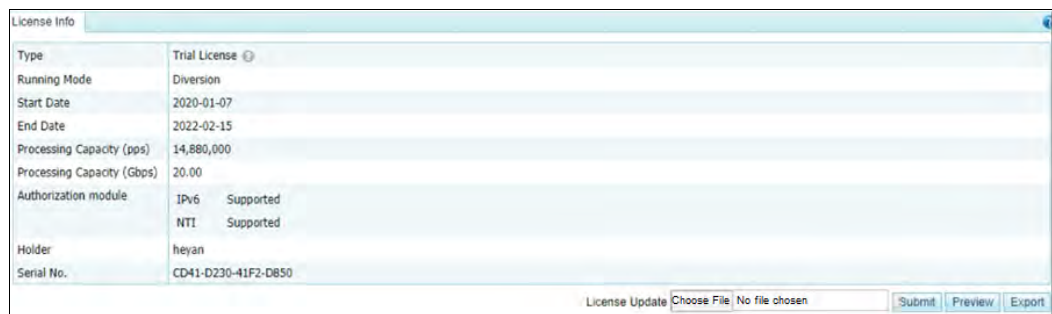
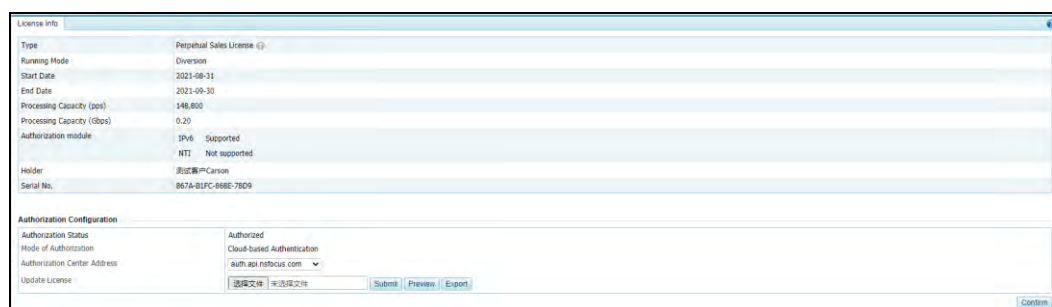






Figure 3-68 License Info page on a virtual device after the import of a license



[Table 3-24](#) describes ADS device license parameters.

Table 3-24 ADS device license parameters

Parameter	Description
Type	Type of the license, which can be <b>Trial</b> , <b>Interim</b> , <b>Formal</b> , and <b>Subscription</b> .


Parameter		Description
		 <p>Only vADS supports the <b>Subscription</b> license type.</p>
Running Mode		ADS can run in <b>In-path</b> or <b>Cluster probe</b> mode.
Start Date		Date when the current service license is produced.  <p>The "current service" indicates the service authorized by the current license.</p>
End Date		Date when the current service license is terminated. When the license expires, ADS will provide limited functions, as shown in <a href="#">Table 3-23</a> . What functions are still available depends on the license type..  <p>The "current service" indicates the service authorized by the current license.</p>
Processing Capacity (pps)		Maximum number of packets that ADS can process per second.
Processing Capacity (Gbps)		Maximum bandwidth for traffic cleaning.  <p>If the traffic exceeds the specified maximum bandwidth, ADS will log a system operation alert message.</p>
Authorization Module		Shows whether the current version supports IPv6 and NTL.
Holder		Customer who owns the current ADS device.
Serial No.		Serial number of the current ADS device.
Authorization Configuration	Authorization Status	Indicates the authorization status of the current virtual device, which can be: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Authorized:</b> This is displayed when the address of the cloud authorization center is correct and the connection to the cloud is properly established.</li> <li>• <b>Offline:</b> This is displayed when the device, which has been authorized, fails to connect to the cloud. In this state, you can still use the web-based manager for a while.</li> <li>• <b>Unauthorized:</b> This is displayed when the device remains offline for more than 15 days. In this state, you cannot use the web-based manager any more.</li> </ul>
	Mode of Authorization	Indicates the way the virtual device is authorized. Virtual devices can be authorized via either local authentication or cloud-based authentication. For this purpose, you must ensure vADS can properly connect to the cloud authorization center.
	Authorization Center Address	Specifies the address of the authorization center. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• For local authentication, you need to type an IP address plus a port in the format of ip:port. Once the IP address of the authorization center is changed, vADS will initiate reauthentication.</li> </ul>



Parameter	Description
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>For cloud-based authentication, after the address is correctly configured, vADS automatically sends an authentication request to the cloud every time it is started. During its operation, vADS periodically sends authentication requests to the cloud. Therefore, you must ensure that vADS remains connected to the cloud all the time.</li> </ul> <p>Specifies the server URL of the cloud authorization center:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>For use on the Chinese mainland, choose <b>auth.api.nsfocus.com</b>.</li> <li>For use in other countries and regions, choose <b>auth.nsfocusglobal.com</b>.</li> </ul>

On the **License Info** page, you can perform the following operations:

- **Previewing a license**  
To the lower right of the license information table, click **Choose File** to select a license file from a local disk drive and then click **Preview** to preview details about the file.
- **Importing a license**  
To the lower right of the license information table, click **Choose File** to select a license file from a local disk drive and then click **Submit** to import it. After the license is imported, it takes effect immediately. You can refresh the page to update license information.


	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To get a license file, contact NSFOCUS technical support.</li> <li>The license file name cannot contain special characters or Chinese characters.</li> </ul>
---	---

- **Exporting a license**

To the lower right of the license information table, click **Export** and select a storage path in the dialog box that appears to export the current license to the specified location as a backup.

## 3.4.2 System Update

You can manually import the update file to update ADS.

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>If the version of the update package is equal to or earlier than the current version, the system cannot be updated.</li> <li>ADS NX1-VN can only be updated via a package subject to two-layer encryption.</li> </ul>
---	--

To update ADS, perform the following steps:

- Step 1** Contact NSFOCUS technical support for ADS update packages.

Make sure that the package matches your product.

**Step 2** Choose **System > Others > System Upgrade**.

Figure 3-69 System Upgrade page

System Upgrade

System Upgrade

Item Value

File **Warning:**  
 1. After upgrade completes, a system restart is needed to make the upgrade take effect. The system restart may bring service interruption. Please stop the system from providing services before upgrade.  
 2. If configuration changes are made before upgrade, please save them before upgrade. Otherwise, they will be lost after upgrade.

Choose File No file chosen

Start Upgrade Reset

Upgrade History

ID	Time	Source Version Number	Source Version Build Date	Target Version Number	Source Version Build Date	Operation	Upgrade Notes
1	2021-08-18 11:15:51	V4.5R90F02.sp04.12000v2	20210129	V4.5R90F03	20210817	Normal upgrade.	View
2	2021-08-18 10:59:50	V4.5R90F03	20210809	V4.5R90F02.sp04.12000v2	20210129	Version Rollback	
3	2021-08-11 15:29:48	V4.5R90F02.sp04.12000v2	20210129	V4.5R90F03	20210809	Normal upgrade.	
4	2021-08-11 15:13:46	V4.5R90F03	20210809	V4.5R90F02.sp04.12000v2	20210129	Version Rollback	
5	2021-08-09 15:41:05	V4.5R90F02.sp04.12000v2	20210129	V4.5R90F03	20210809	Normal upgrade.	

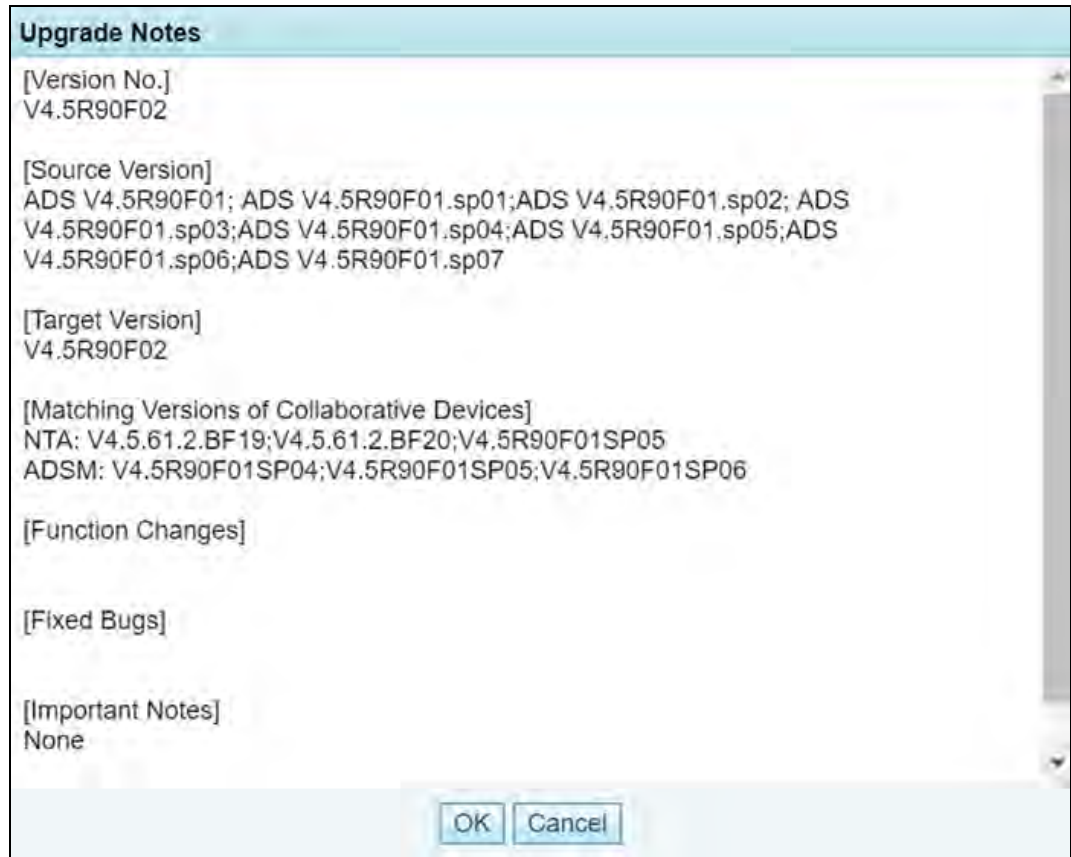
**Step 3** Click **Choose File** and select the desired update package.

The **Upgrade Notes** page appears.




This page appears only when the source version is V4.5R89F03 or later.


Figure 3-70 Upgrade notes page



**Step 4** Click **OK** to start updating the device.

 <b>Note</b>	<p>The update process may take a long time. Wait until an update success message appears.</p> <p>If problems emerge after the update and version rollback is needed, the system can only be rolled back to the source version. For details, see section <a href="#">10.2.9 Rolling Back the Version</a>.</p>
--	--

**Step 5** After an update success message appears, restart the system as prompted.

 <b>Note</b>	<p>If you do not restart the system at this moment, clicking <b>Save</b> in the right-upper corner of the page will not work. If you need to save settings previously configured, you must restart the system. Alternatively, you can save the settings before updating the system.</p>
--	---

**Step 6** Re-log in to the system and choose **System > Others > Version Info** to view version information and check whether the update succeeds.

**Step 7** If the update succeeds, click **View** in the **Upgrade Notes** column of the **Upgrade History** table on the **System Upgrade** page shown in [Figure 3-69](#) to view the update notes.

---End

### 3.4.3 Remote Assistance

When a failure occurs in the system, you may need to contact NSFOCUS technical support for remote assistance. For this purpose, enable remote assistance on the **Remote Assistance** page shown in [Figure 3-71](#).

- 

By default, this function is disabled. You need to enable it before using the function.

To enable the remote assistance function, follow these steps:

**Step 1** Choose **System > Others > Remote Assistance**.

Figure 3-71 Remote assistance

Item	Status
Remote Assistance	<input type="radio"/> Yes <input checked="" type="radio"/> No

**Step 2** Select **Yes** and configure the IP address for remote assistance.

You can configure at most three IP addresses.

Figure 3-72 Configuring remote assistance

Item	Status
Remote Assistance	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Yes <input type="radio"/> No
Allowed IP 1	<input type="text"/>
Allowed IP 2	<input type="text"/>
Allowed IP 3	<input type="text"/>

**Step 3** Click **OK** to complete the configuration.

Then the login key used by the specified IP address for remote access to NTA and its QR code are displayed below, as shown in [Figure 3-73](#).

Figure 3-73 Configuring remote assistance



---End

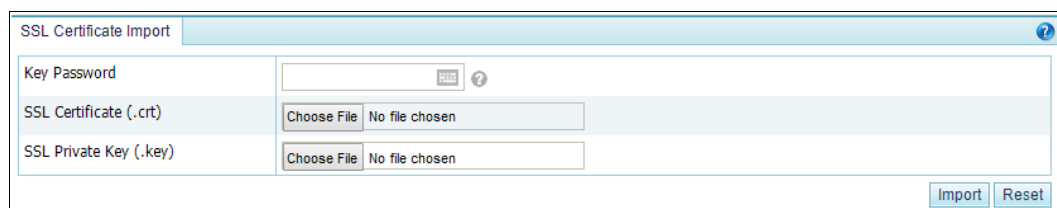
### 3.4.4 SSL Certificate Import

The SSL certificate can be imported manually. After the certificate is successfully imported, the system automatically restarts the web server to make the new certificate take effect.

To import the SSL certificate, perform the following steps:

- Step 1** Choose **System > Others > SSL Certificate Import**.

Figure 3-74 SSL Certificate Import page



- Step 2** Browse respectively to the SSL certificate file and private key file and then click **Import** to import the SSL certificate.

If a password is set for the private key of the SSL certificate to be imported, type the correct password before the certificate import.

After the import succeeded, the system displays the message "Succeeded in importing the SSL certificate. The web server is restarting ... Please refresh the page later."

---End

### 3.4.5 One-Click Inspection

When ADS fails, you can collect device information by using the one-click inspection function, and deliver such information to NSFOCUS technical support, who therefore do not need to log in to ADS for collection of such information.

The one-click inspection function collects system configuration information, system status information, and logs and generates a related **.dat** file.

To collect the preceding information, perform the following steps:

**Step 1** Choose **System > Others > One-Click Inspection**.

Figure 3-75 One-Click Inspection page

**Step 2** Set a time range and click **Start Collection** to start collecting device information.

After fault information is successfully collected, an information file is displayed in the **Info Collection Mgmt** list, as shown in [Figure 3-76](#).

Figure 3-76 One-click inspection result

**Step 3** Click the file name in the **Filename** column and download it to a local disk drive.

You can then send this file to NSFOCUS technical support for troubleshooting.

---End

### 3.4.6 Version Information

Choose **System > Others > Version Info**. The **Version Info** page displays the version number and the email address of NSFOCUS technical support, as shown in [Figure 3-77](#).

Figure 3-77 Version information

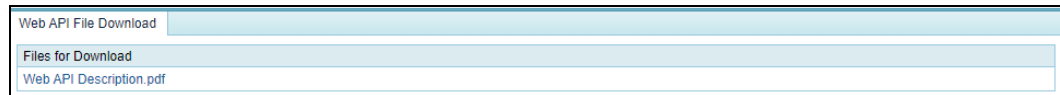
Version Info	
Item	Value
Version	V4.5R90F02.sp07
Build Date	20210422
Email	support@nsfocusglobal.com

### 3.4.7 Web API File Download

You can download the web API file that describes API communication interfaces from the web-based manager of ADS. The procedure is as follows:

- Step 1** Choose **System > Others > Web API File Download**.
- Step 2** On the page shown in [Figure 3-78](#), click the file name in the **Files for Download** area to download the file to a local disk drive.

Figure 3-78 Web API File Download page



---End

# 4 Real-Time Monitoring

The real-time monitoring module provides real-time traffic information and attack information for you to have a full understanding of the current network status.

This chapter details real-time monitoring information, as shown in the following table.

Section	Description
<a href="#">Real-Time System Status</a>	Describes real-time monitoring traffic of the system.
<a href="#">System Information</a>	Describes basic current system operating information.

## 4.1 Real-Time System Status

The system monitors incoming and outgoing traffic, attack traffic, and interface status and displays monitoring information in real time.

This section covers the following topics:

- [Traffic Trend](#)
- [Attack Traffic](#)
- [Top 10 Destination IPs by Traffic](#)
- [System Resources](#)
- [Collaboration Status](#)
- [System Interfaces](#)

### Traffic Trend

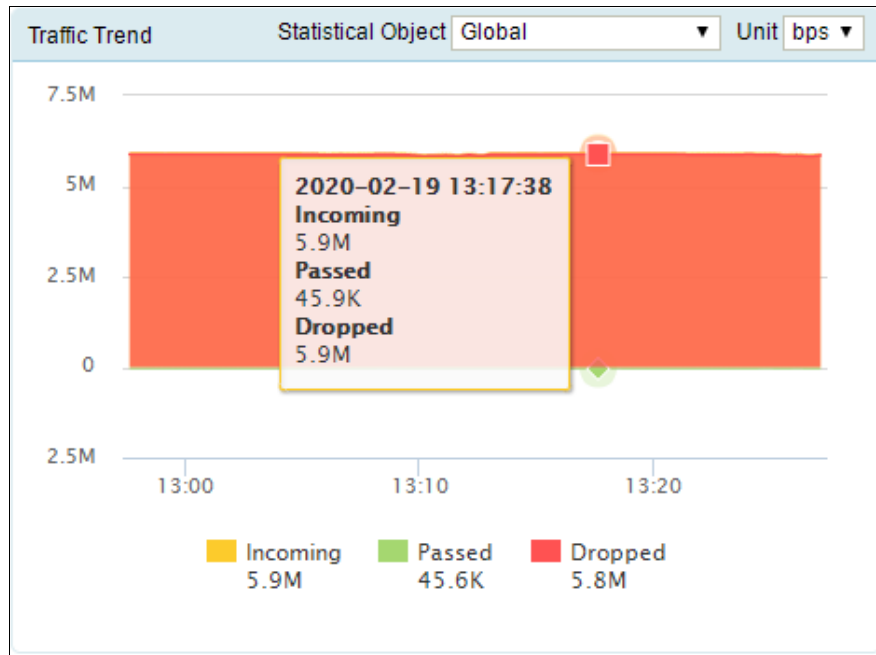
On the **Real-Time Monitoring** page, the **Traffic Trend** area shows traffic received, passed, and dropped by the ADS device in the last 30 minutes, as shown in [Figure 4-1](#). Here, the yellow curve indicates incoming traffic, the green curve outgoing traffic, and the orange curve dropped traffic. The traffic curves are automatically updated every 30 seconds.

When pointing to the traffic trend graph, you can view the incoming traffic, outgoing traffic, and dropped traffic at a specific time.

- You can click the drop-down box of **Statistical Object** and select **Global** or a specific protection group to view global traffic information or traffic information of that group.
- You can specify the traffic unit by selecting **bps** or **pps** from the **Unit** drop-down box in the upper-right corner of this area.



Figure 4-1 Traffic trend



## Attack Traffic

The **Attack Traffic** area presents the attack traffic detected and dropped by the current ADS device in the last 30 minutes, as shown in [Figure 4-2](#). When pointing to the attack traffic graph, you can view the dropped traffic at a specific time.

- You can click the drop-down box of **Statistical Object** and select **Global** or a specific protection group to view global attack traffic information or attack traffic information of that group.
- You can specify the traffic unit by selecting **bps** or **pps** from the **Unit** drop-down box in the upper-right corner of this area.

[Table 4-1](#) shows mappings between attack traffic types and curve colors.

Table 4-1 Mappings between attack types and curve colors

Attack Type	Color Indication
SYN flood	— SYN Flood
ACK flood	— ACK Flood
UDP flood	— UDP Flood
ICMP flood	— ICMP Flood
TCP misuse	— TCP Misuse
TCP connection flood	— TCP Connection Flood






















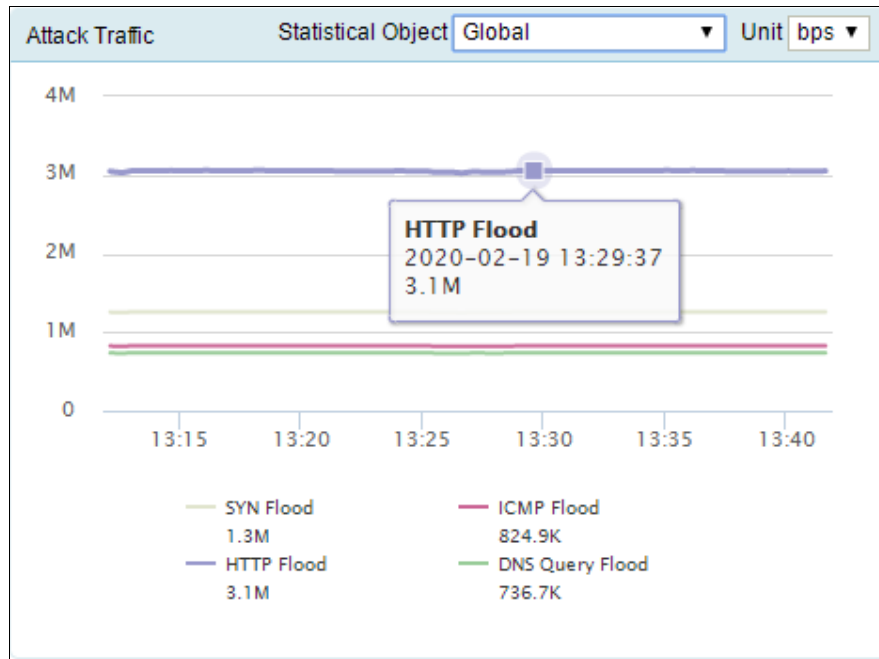
Attack Type	Color Indication
TCP fragment	 TCP Fragment
ICMP fragment	 ICMP Fragment
HTTP flood	 HTTP Flood
HTTPS flood	 HTTPS Flood
SIP flood	 SIP Flood
DNS query flood	 DNS Query Flood
DNS amplification	 DNS Amplification
SSDP amplification	 SSDP Amplification
NTP amplification	 NTP Amplification
Chargen amplification	 Chargen Amplification
SNMP amplification	 SNMP Amplification
Memcache amplification	 Memcache Amplification
Manual strategy	 Manual Strategy
Amplification	 Amplification
UDP fragment	 UDP Fragment
DNS flood	 DNS Flood
LAND flood	 LAND Flood
HTTP slow attack	 HTTP Slow Attack
FIN/RST flood	 FIN/RST Flood
CLDAP Amplification	 CLDAP Amplification
MS SQL Amplification	 MS SQL Amplification

Figure 4-2 Attack traffic



### Top 10 Destination IPs by Traffic

The **Top 10 Destination IPs by Traffic** area shows information about top 10 destination IP addresses receiving the most traffic, including the destination IP address, attack status, attack start time, attack duration, real-time incoming traffic, and real-time dropped traffic.



If no packet is dropped for a destination IP address, "---" is displayed in **Attack Status**, **Attack Start Time**, and **Attack Duration** columns.

- You can click the drop-down box of **Statistical Object** and select **Global** or a specific protection group to view global information about top 10 destination IP addresses or top 10 destination IP addresses of that group.
- You can specify the traffic unit by selecting **bps** or **pps** from the **Unit** drop-down box in the upper-right corner of this area.

Figure 4-3 Top 10 destination IP addresses by incoming traffic

Top 10 Destination IPs by Traffic					
		Statistical Object			Unit
		Global			bps
Destination IP	Attack Status	Attack Start Time	Attack Duration	Real-time Inbound Traffic	Real-time Dropped Traffic
8:14:66::99	SYN Flood,HTTP ...	2020-02-18 18:00:47	19h 50min	5.4M	5.3M
80.91.47.2	SYN Flood	2020-02-18 17:45:17	20h 5min	561.4K	561.4K

## System Resources

The **System Resources** area shows the status of various system resources in real time, including the CPU usage, memory usage, CPU temperature, motherboard temperature, fan status, and power supply status. For fan status and power supply status,  indicates that the fans or power supply works properly and  indicates the opposite.


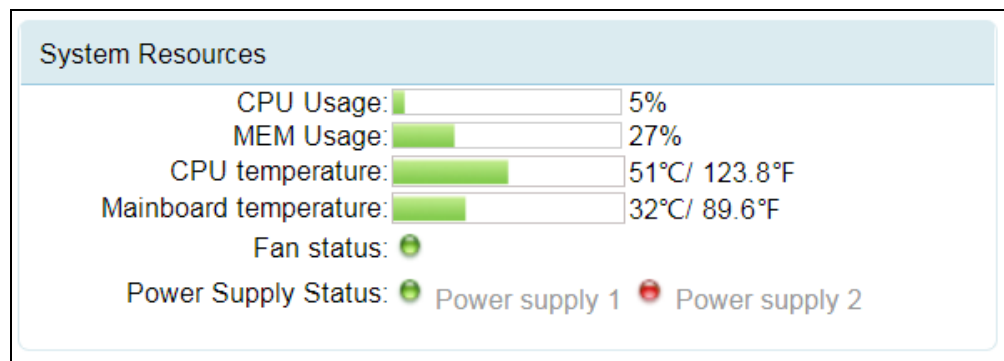
 <b>Note</b>	Only ADS NX3-HD2500, NX5-HD4500, NX5-HD6500, and ADS NX5-HD8500 and some ADS NX5-8000 devices have the power supply status displayed.
--	---

Figure 4-4 System resources



## Collaboration Status


The **Collaboration Status** area shows the status of collaboration between the current ADS and another device. [Figure 4-5](#) shows the status of collaboration between ADS and NSFOCUS NTA.  indicates that the device collaborating with ADS is online. If the device is offline, it will not be listed here.

Figure 4-5 Collaboration status



Collaboration Status			
Device	Status	IP Address	Peer Port
NTA	 Online	10.245.2.206	44148
NTA	 Online	10.245.2.210	52329

## System Interfaces

The **System Interfaces** area, for example, on ADS NX5-4020E, shows the connection status of interfaces on ADS (🟢 means "online"; 🛑 means "offline"), and real-time incoming and outgoing traffic (both pps and bps) of each interface. **Total** indicates total traffic of all interfaces. The information is automatically updated every 10 seconds.

By default, information about all interfaces is displayed, as shown in [Figure 4-6](#). Clicking **Display Online Interfaces** in the drop-down box in the upper-left corner of this area displays information only about online interfaces.

Figure 4-6 Interface status of ADS

System Interfaces <span style="float: right;">Display All Interfaces ▼</span>					
Interface	Status	IN(pps)	OUT(pps)	IN(bps)	OUT(bps)
T1/1	🟢 Up	0	0	0	0
T1/2	🟢 Up	0	0	0	0
T2/1	🛑 Down	0	0	0	0
T2/2	🛑 Down	0	0	0	0
T3/1	🛑 Down	0	0	0	0
T3/2	🛑 Down	0	0	0	0
G4/1	🟢 Up	0.2	0.2	154	127
G4/2	🟢 Up	0	0	0	0
G4/3	🟢 Up	2K	0	1.8M	0
G4/4	🛑 Down	0	0	0	0
G4/5	🟢 Up	1.2	0.7	970	462
G4/6	🛑 Down	0	0	0	0
G4/7	🛑 Down	0	0	0	0
G4/8	🛑 Down	0	0	0	0
<b>Total</b>		2K	0.9	1.8M	589

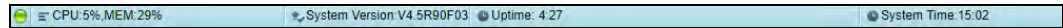
Interfaces on the device that you are using may be different from those described here.

## 4.2 System Information

All users can view system information. The status bar displays basic system information, including hardware CPU and memory usage, system version, system uptime, and system time, as shown in [Figure 4-7](#).

The green indicator (🟢) indicates that the device works properly and the red indicator (🔴) indicates that the device works improperly.

Figure 4-7 System information



# 5 Policies

---

This chapter details protection policies.

Section	Description
<a href="#">Anti-DDoS Policies</a>	Describes how to configure anti-DDoS policies.
<a href="#">Access Control Policies</a>	Describes how to configure access control policies.

## 5.1 Anti-DDoS Policies

This section covers the following topics:

- [Protection Group Management](#)
- [Policy Configuration for Protection Groups](#)
- [Protection Group Policy Templates](#)
- [Advanced Global Parameters](#)
- [Response Page Settings](#)
- [SSL Certificate Management](#)
- [Mobile User-Agent Rules](#)

### 5.1.1 Protection Group Management

Some networks serve a large number of users who have various anti-DDoS requirements. In response, the ADS device provides the protection group function, which allows the administrator to provide different protection policies for various users.

A protection group is a collection of one or more customer's machines that are protected by ADS devices using the same policy. ADS supports a maximum of 65535 IP addresses in total.

In addition to manual configuration, ADS can automatically generate protection groups based on policy auto-learning results. For details, see section [5.1.1.6 Configuring Policy Auto-Learning](#).

**default\_protection\_group** is the default protection group for which the IP address list cannot be edited or deleted or automatic learning is unavailable. By default, when traffic protection is enabled, ADS cleans and protects traffic as indicated in protection policies configured for **default\_protection\_group**, if no other protection groups are created or matched.

This chapter describes how to configure and manage protection groups manually. It covers the following topics:

- [Creating a Protection Group](#): creating a protection group and configuring the IP list, protection policies, and URL rules for this protection group.
- [Searching for Protection Groups](#): searching for a protection group by name or IP address.
- [Viewing a Protection Group](#): viewing settings of a protection group.
- [Editing a Protection Group](#): editing protection group settings, including the IP list, protection policies, and URL rules.
- [Deleting a Protection Group](#): deleting one or more protection groups.
- [Configuring Policy Auto-Learning](#): configuring auto-learning parameters, enabling/disabling the auto-learning function, and viewing learning details

### 5.1.1.1 Creating a Protection Group

To create a protection group manually, perform the following steps:

**Step 1** Choose **Policies > Anti-DDoS > Protection Groups** to open the protection group list.

Figure 5-1 Protection groups

<input type="checkbox"/> Select All	Group Name	Running Mode	Edit IP List	Edit Policy	Access Policy	Edit URL Rule	Auto-learning	Description	Delete
	default_protection_group	Protect			Blacklist		-	all_users	Delete

**Step 2** Configure basic information of a protection group.

To the lower right of the list, click **Create Group** to create a protection group, as shown in [Figure 5-2](#).

Figure 5-2 Basic information of a protection group

Group Name	<input type="text"/>
Description	<input type="text"/>
Template	test

[Table 5-1](#) describes parameters for creating a protection group.

Table 5-1 Parameters for creating a protection group

Parameter	Description
Group Name	Name of the group. It must be unique and consist of 1 to 200 letters, digits, or underscores.
Description	Description of a group. It can contain a maximum of 80 characters.
Template	Allows users to select a protection group policy template from default templates and those created by the administrator. For template details, see <a href="#">section 5.1.3</a>



Parameter	Description
	<a href="#">Protection Group Policy Templates.</a>

### Step 3 Configuring the running mode of the protection group.

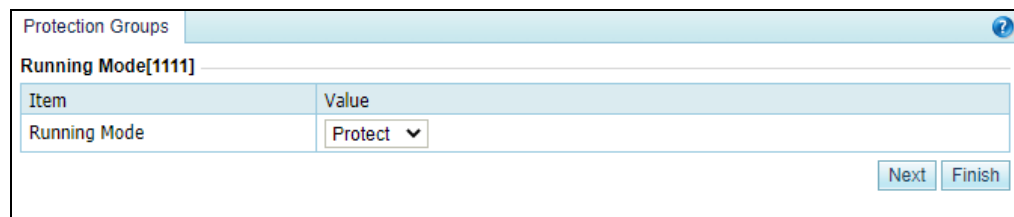
After the protection group is created, click **Next** to configure the running mode for this group.

You can select the running mode from three values: **Protect**, **Inactive**, and **Forward**.

- **Protect:** After protection policies take effect, ADS starts to protect traffic of the protection group.
- **Inactive:** After protection policies take effect, ADS conducts protective analysis of and generates alerts for attacks. Meanwhile, it allows traffic to pass through without protection. Under the [System Interfaces](#) tab, you can see that ADS directly forwards traffic without any filtering.
- **Forward:** After protection policies take effect, ADS allows traffic to pass through, without performing attack analysis and protection.

After the running mode is selected, you can click **Next** to go to the next step or click **Finish** to complete the protection group configuration.

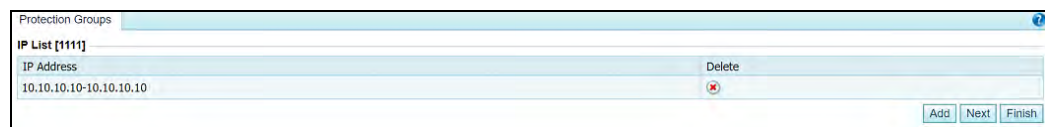
Figure 5-3 Configuring the running mode



### Step 4 Configure the IP address range of the protection group.

After the running mode is configured, click **Next** to open the **IP List** page. You can add IP address ranges one by one. If IP address ranges are not required currently, click **Next** to skip this step or click **Finish** to complete the protection group configuration.

Figure 5-4 IP List page



Note

ADS supports the IPv4/IPv6 dual-stack. Therefore, protection groups can involve both IPv4 and IPv6 address ranges.

**Adding an IP Address Range**

- b. Click **Add** to the lower right of the IP list.

Figure 5-5 Adding an IP address range

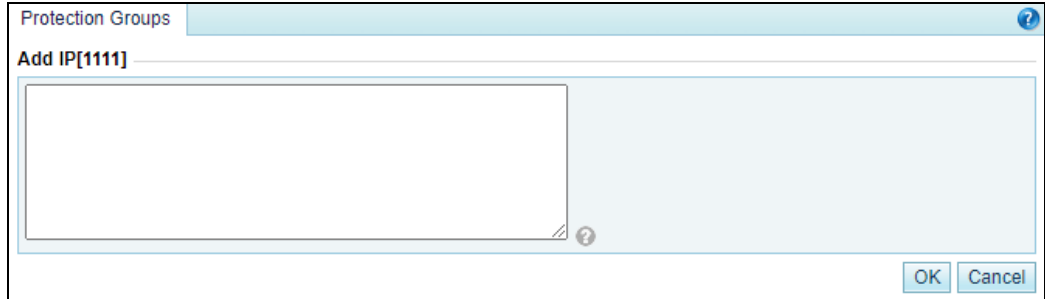




Table 5-2 describes the format of an IP address range.


Table 5-2 Format of an IP address, IP segment, and IP address range

Parameter	Description
IP address format	<p>You can type IPv4 or IPv6 addresses or segments, with one in each line, in the following formats:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Individual IP address: If an IP address such as 192.168.1.1 or 2::2 is typed, it will be automatically displayed as 192.168.1.1-192.168.1.1 or 2::2-2::2.</li> <li>IP address/netmask: an IPv4 address with a netmask ranging from 8 to 32, such as 192.168.1.1/24; IPv6 address with a prefix length ranging from 1 to 128, such as fe80::250:56ff:fec0:0/114.</li> <li>Start IP-End IP: 256 IPv4 address within a /24 segment, such as 192.168.1.1-10; or IPv6 address with a 16-bit prefix, such as 1::1-ffff.</li> </ul> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>The IP addresses or IP segments added here cannot conflict with those in existing protection groups.</p>

- c. After the parameter configuration is complete, click **OK** to save the settings.

**Deleting an IP Address or IP Address Range**

On the IP list shown in Figure 5-4, click  in the **Delete** column of an IP address or IP address range and click **OK** in the confirmation dialog box to delete this IP address or IP address range.

 <b>Note</b>	IP address ranges cannot conflict across protection groups.
--	---

**Step 5** Configure policies for the protection group.

After the IP address range is configured, click **Next** to configure protection policies for this group. For details, see section [5.1.2 Policy Configuration for Protection Groups](#). If policies are not required currently, click **Next** to skip this step or click **Finish** to complete the protection group configuration.

Figure 5-6 Protection policies for a protection group

The screenshot displays the 'Protection Groups' configuration window. The 'Description' field contains 'tyr'. The main configuration area is divided into several sections:

- DDoS [1111]**: A table with columns for 'Anti-DDoS', 'Threshold 1', 'Threshold 2', 'Protection Enabled', and 'Protection Algorithm'.
 

Anti-DDoS	Threshold 1	Threshold 2	Protection Enabled	Protection Algorithm
SYN Flood	2000 (pps)	32000 (pps)	Yes	1-SafeConnect
ACK Flood	8000 (pps)		Yes	
UDP Flood	3000 (pps)		Yes	
ICMP Flood	4000 (pps)		Yes	
Connection Exhaustion			No	
Traffic Control by Dst IP		1000 (kbps)	No	
Group Cleaning Capacity Control		1000 (kbps)	No	
- Anomalous Packet Filtering Rules [1111]**: A list of rules with 'Enable' dropdowns.
 

Rule Name	Enable
Invalid SYN Packet Filtering	Enable
UDP Port 80 Filtering	Enable
LAND Filtering	Enable
HTTP异常报文过滤	Disable
- Reflection Protection Policy [1111]**: Includes an 'Enable' radio button (set to 'No'), an 'Add rule' button, and a 'Rule List' table with columns for ID, Name, and Operation.
- HTTP Keyword Checking Policy [1111]**: Similar to the Reflection Protection Policy, with 'Enable' set to 'No'.

**Step 6** Configure a blacklist for the protection group.

After the protection policies are configured, click **Next** to configure the blacklist for the protection group.

You need to specify whether to enable the blacklist, lockout period, and whether to enable proxy monitoring. For details about the blacklist function, see section 5.3.9.

Figure 5-7 Blacklist of the protection group

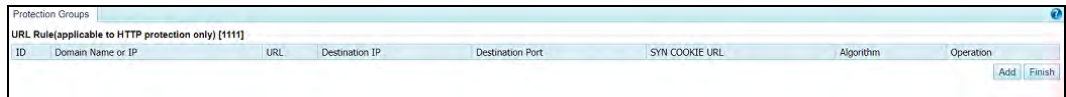
The screenshot shows the 'Blacklist[1111]' configuration window. It includes the following fields:

- Enable**: A dropdown menu set to 'No'.
- Auto Block**: A section containing a 'Block for a period' dropdown set to '120' and '(minutes)'.
- Proxy Monitoring**: A dropdown menu set to 'No'.
- Buttons**: 'Next' and 'Cancel' buttons at the bottom right.

**Step 7** Configure a URL protection rule for the protection group.

After protection policies are configured, click **Next** to configure URL protection rules for this group. For details, see [5.2.9 Blacklist](#). If URL protection rules are not required currently, click **Next** to skip this step or click **Finish** to complete the protection group configuration.

Figure 5-8 List of URL protection rules of a protection group



**Adding a URL Protection Rule**

- a. To the lower right of the URL protection rule list, click **Add** to add a URL protection rule. [Figure 5-10](#) shows the page for adding a URL protection rule with **Algorithm** set to **Precision Protection**.

Figure 5-9 Adding a URL protection rule — unified protection

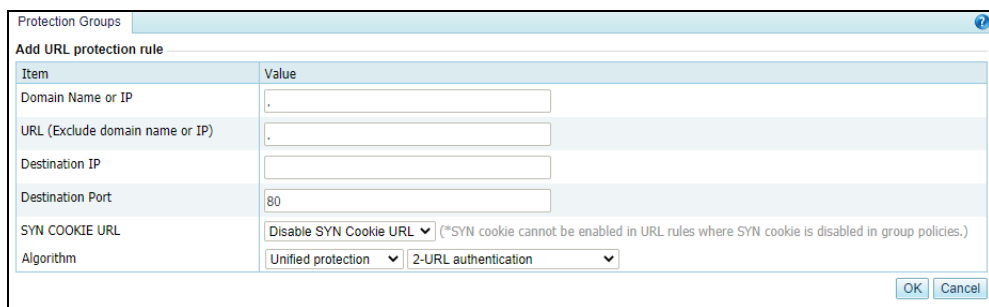
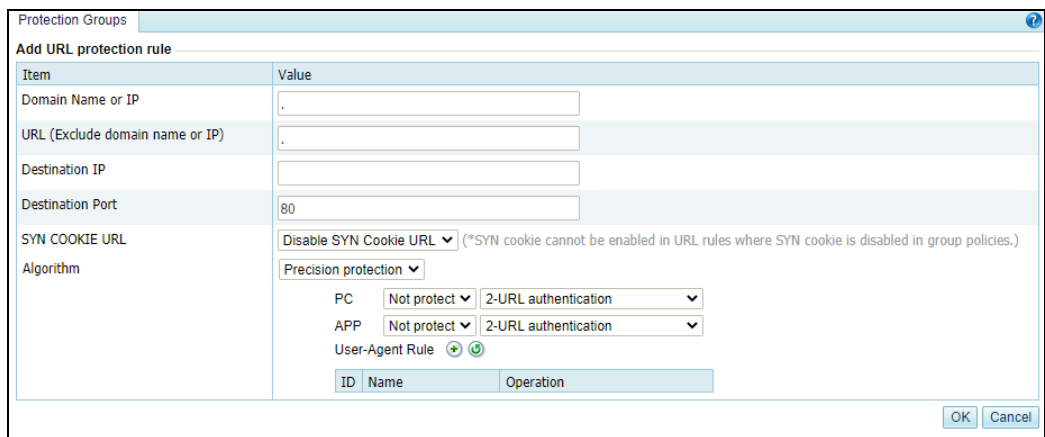




Figure 5-10 Adding a URL protection rule — precision protection



[Table 5-3](#) describes parameters for creating a URL protection rule.


Table 5-3 Parameters for adding a URL protection rule

Parameter	Description
Domain Name or IP	Domain name or IP address of a URL protection object. The symbol "." indicates that this rule is valid for all domain names and IP addresses.
URL(Exclude domain name or IP)	Relative path of a URL protection object, that is, URL excluding the domain name or IP address. The symbol "." indicates that this rule is valid for all


Parameter	Description
	URLs.
Destination IP	<p>IP address of the server. You can type an IPv4 or IPv6 address according to the actual network deployment.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>IP addresses specified in URL protection rules must belong to the protection group in question.</p>
Destination Port	TCP port of the server.
SYN COOKIE URL	<p>If <b>SYN COOKIE URL</b> is enabled, a client can access the server only after being authenticated by ADS, so as to protect the server from SYN cookie attacks.</p> <p>The setting of this parameter determines available options for <b>Algorithm</b>.</p> <p>The setting of this parameter depends on whether <b>SYN COOKIE URL</b> is enabled for HTTP protection.</p>
Algorithm	<p>Protection mode and policy adopted for packets matching URL protection rules. For detailed parameter descriptions, see <a href="#">Table 5-10</a>.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>Protection algorithms are used together with the SYN Cookie URL function.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• If SYN Cookie URL is enabled, you can only choose from algorithms 2 through 8.</li> <li>• If SYN Cookie URL is disabled, you can only choose from algorithms 0 through 5.</li> </ul>

b. After the parameter configuration is complete, click **OK** to save the settings.

### Modifying a URL Protection Rule

On the URL protection rule list, click  in the **Operation** column of a rule to edit this rule.

### Deleting a URL Protection Rule

On the URL protection rule list, click  in the **Operation** column of a URL protection rule and click **OK** in the confirmation dialog box to delete this rule.

**Step 8** After a URL protection rule is configured, click **Finish** to the lower right of the rule list.

**Step 9** After the preceding configuration, click **Apply** in the upper-right corner of the web page to make the settings take effect.

---End

## 5.1.1.2 Searching for Protection Groups

On the page shown in [Figure 5-1](#), you can type a protection group name or an IP address in the group, and then click **Filter** to search for a protection group.

On the page shown in [Figure 5-1](#), the system automatically lists all existing protection groups (20 per page) in the descending order of the creation time. You can set filtering conditions to list only protection groups meeting the specified conditions.

**Step 1** Set filtering conditions.

- Specify group names or IP addresses. Fuzzy matching is supported.
- Specify a running mode. By default, protection groups of all running modes (**Protect**, **Inactive**, and **Forward**) are listed.

**Step 2** Click **Filter**.

Protection groups meeting the specified conditions are then listed below.

---End

### 5.1.1.3 Viewing Protection Groups


On the protection group list as shown in [Figure 5-1](#), click the name of a protection group to view details.

After viewing group details, click **Back** to return to the **Protection Groups** page.


### 5.1.1.4 Editing a Protection Group

You can edit the IP address range, policies, and URL protection rules of a protection group. Note that the protection group name cannot be changed.


- Edit the running mode of a protection group
 

On the protection group list, click  in the **Running Mode** column to reset the running mode of a protection group.


After editing the running mode, click **OK** to save the setting. Click **Next** to edit the IP list.
- Edit an IP address range of a protection group.
 

On the protection group list, click  in the **IP List** column to reset the IP address range of a protection group.


After editing the IP address range, click **OK** to save the settings. Click **Next** to edit policies.
- Edit protection policies for a protection group.
 

On the protection group list, click  in the **Protection Policy** column to reset protection policies applied to a protection group.

After editing protection policies, you can click **Cancel** to undo the changes and return to the protection group list. Alternatively, you can click **Next** to edit URL protection rules applied to a protection group and then click **Finish** to save settings.
- Edit the access policy for a protection group.
 

On the protection group list, click  in the **Access Policy** column to reset the blacklist policy for a protection group.


Click **Edit** to edit the blacklist. For details, see section [5.2.9 Blacklist](#). Edit URL protection rules for a protection group.

On the protection group list, click  in the **URL Rule** column of a protection group to reset URL protection rules of a protection group.

After editing URL protection rules, click **Finish** to save settings to return to the protection group list.

### 5.1.1.5 Deleting a Protection Group

You can delete protection groups one by one or in bulk on ADS.

- Method 1: On the protection group list shown in [Figure 5-1](#), click  in the **Delete** column of a group and click **OK** in the confirmation dialog box to delete it.
- Method 2: On the protection group list shown in [Figure 5-1](#), select several protection groups (or select check boxes in the **Select All** column), click **Delete** to the lower right of the list, and then click **OK** in the confirmation dialog box to delete them.



If a protection group is deleted, all its settings, including policies, will be deleted and the customer's machines included in this group are instead protected by policies for the default group **default\_protection\_group**.

### 5.1.1.6 Configuring Policy Auto-Learning

ADS supports policy auto-learning. This means ADS can collect and analyze statistics on normal SYN, ACK, UDP, and ICMP packets, generate protection policies based on built-in algorithms, and then dispatch such policies manually or automatically to protection groups, depending on the configured policy application mode.

Choose **Policies > Anti-DDoS > Protection Groups**.


Figure 5-11 Protection Groups page

<input type="checkbox"/> Select All	Group Name	Running Mode	IP List	Protection Policy	Access Policy	URL Rule	Auto-learning	Description	Delete
	default_protection_group	Protect			Blacklist		-	all_users	
<input type="checkbox"/>	test_cmjx	Protect			Blacklist		Not started	1	
<input type="checkbox"/>	BC02E0A8B4@915AEED89	Protect			Blacklist		Not started	12345	
<input type="checkbox"/>	tha	Protect			Blacklist		Not started	tha	
<input type="checkbox"/>	thb	Protect			Blacklist		Not started	thb	
<input type="checkbox"/>	test_cmjxxx	Protect			Blacklist		Not started	123	

On this page, you can set auto-learning parameters, enable/disable the auto-learning function, view the auto-learning status, and view auto-learning details.

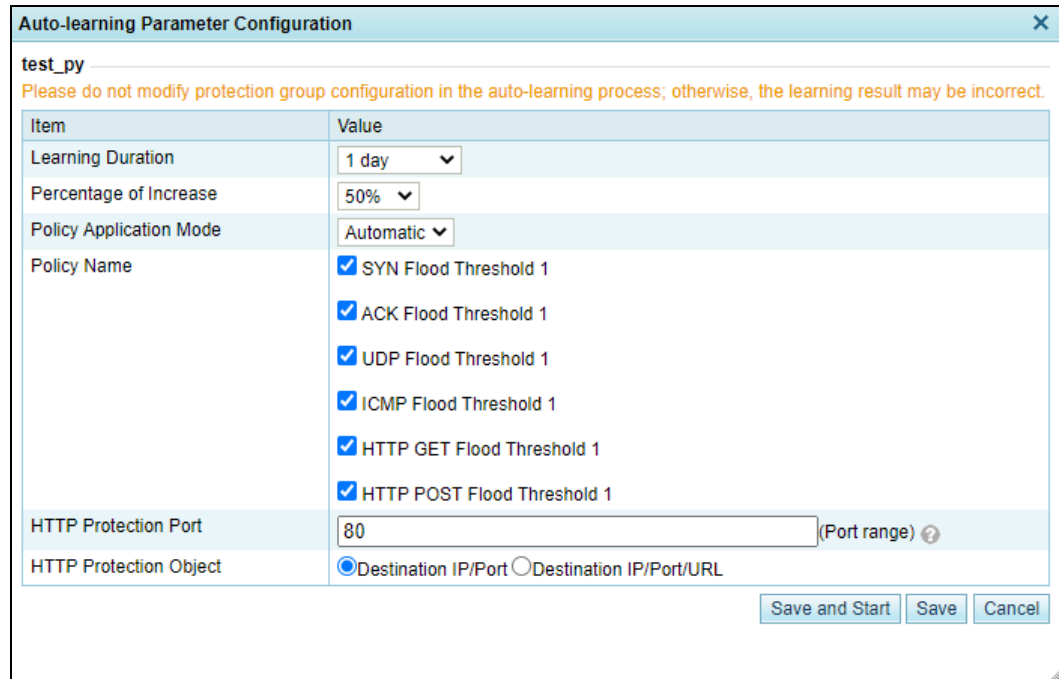
### Setting Auto-learning Parameters

Newly created protection groups have no auto-learning function enabled. Their auto-learning status is displayed as "Not started". You can manually enable this function and set related parameters for a specific protection group. The procedure is as follows:

**Step 1** On the page shown in Figure 5-11, click  in the **Auto-learning Operation** column of a protection group.

The **Auto-learning Parameter Configuration** dialog box appears, as shown in Figure 5-12.

Figure 5-12 Configuring auto-learning parameters




Item	Value
Learning Duration	1 day
Percentage of Increase	50%
Policy Application Mode	Automatic
Policy Name	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> SYN Flood Threshold 1 <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> ACK Flood Threshold 1 <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> UDP Flood Threshold 1 <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> ICMP Flood Threshold 1 <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> HTTP GET Flood Threshold 1 <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> HTTP POST Flood Threshold 1
HTTP Protection Port	80 (Port range) ?
HTTP Protection Object	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Destination IP/Port <input type="radio"/> Destination IP/Port/URL

**Step 2** Configure parameters.

Table 5-4 Parameters for configuring an auto-learning policy

Parameter	Description
Learning Duration	Specifies the auto-learning duration. When this duration expires, ADS automatically stops such learning. Options include <b>30 minutes</b> , <b>1 hour</b> , <b>1 day</b> , and <b>1 week</b> .
Percentage of Increase	Specifies the percentage of increase in thresholds. Auto-learning results are updated in sync with the fluctuating traffic and thresholds dispatched are calculated by using this formula: Maximum value of historical learning results x (1 + Percentage of increase).
Policy Application Mode	Specifies a policy application mode, which can be either of the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Manual:</b> After auto-learning is complete, you can view the result, select thresholds, change their values, and click <b>Update Thresholds</b> to dispatch new thresholds to the related protection group.</li> <li><b>Automatic:</b> When auto-learning is complete, the auto-learning policy is automatically executed to dispatch updated thresholds to the related protection group.</li> </ul>
Policy Name	Specifies policies whose thresholds will be adapted to auto-learning results.
HTTP Protection Port	Specifies ports under HTTP protection within the range of 0–65535. You can type a maximum of 5 ports or port ranges separated by the comma like

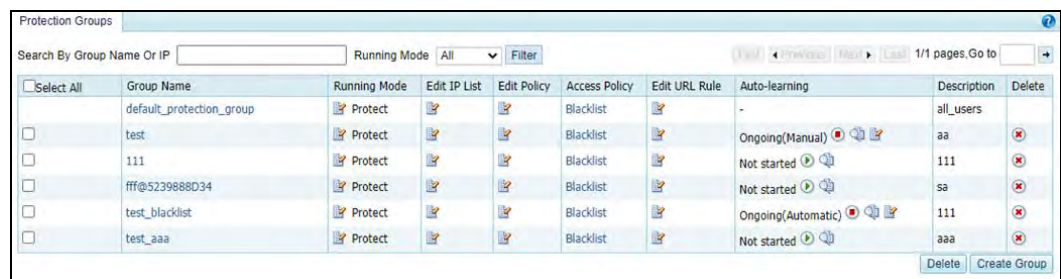


Parameter	Description
	"80,90-92".  <b>Note</b> Ports specified here cannot overlap with those specified for HTTPS protection.
HTTP Protection Object	Specifies the object of HTTP protection, which can be either of the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Destination IP/Port/URL:</b> The IP address, port, and URL should all be matched.</li> <li>• <b>Destination IP/Port:</b> Only the IP address and port should be matched.</li> </ul>

**Step 3** Click **Save** to commit the settings.

If you click **Save and Start**, the system will collect traffic flowing over the network. In this case, the auto-learning status of the protection group changes to **Ongoing(Manual)**, as shown in [Figure 5-13](#).

Figure 5-13 Auto-learning configured and started



Select All	Group Name	Running Mode	Edit IP List	Edit Policy	Access Policy	Edit URL Rule	Auto-learning	Description	Delete
<input type="checkbox"/>	default_protection_group	Protect			Blacklist		-	all_users	
<input type="checkbox"/>	test	Protect			Blacklist		Ongoing(Manual)	aa	
<input type="checkbox"/>	111	Protect			Blacklist		Not started	111	
<input type="checkbox"/>	fff@5239888D34	Protect			Blacklist		Not started	sa	
<input type="checkbox"/>	test_blacklist	Protect			Blacklist		Ongoing(Automatic)	111	
<input type="checkbox"/>	test_aaa	Protect			Blacklist		Not started	aaa	

When the specified auto-learning duration expires, auto-learning automatically stops.

You can also click  to manually stop the auto-learning process.


For ongoing auto-learning, you can click  in the **Auto-learning Operation** column of a protection group to edit related parameters, including the percentage of increase in thresholds and policy application mode, as shown in [Figure 5-14](#).

Figure 5-14 Editing auto-learning parameters

Item	Value
Learning Duration	1 day
Percentage of Increase	50%
Policy Application Mode	Automatic
Policy Name	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> SYN Flood Threshold 1 <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> ACK Flood Threshold 1 <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> UDP Flood Threshold 1 <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> ICMP Flood Threshold 1 <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> HTTP GET Flood Threshold 1 <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> HTTP POST Flood Threshold 1
HTTP Protection Port	80 (Port range) ?
HTTP Protection Object	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Destination IP/Port <input type="radio"/> Destination IP/Port/URL

----End

## Viewing the Auto-learning Status

On the page shown in [Figure 5-11](#), the **Auto-learning Status** column shows the auto-learning status of protection groups. The auto-learning status of a protection group can be any of the following:

- **Not started:** The auto-learning function is not enabled.
- **Ongoing:** Auto-learning is enabled and in progress.
- **Complete:** Auto-learning is complete.
- **Abnormal:** Auto-learning failed because of some external factors, such as a device restart during auto-learning.

## Viewing Auto-learning Details


On the page shown in [Figure 5-11](#), you can click  in the **Auto-learning Operation** column of a protection group to view auto-learning details of the group.

Figure 5-15 Auto-learning details



When the policy application mode is **Manual** and the learning status is **Complete**, you can edit dispatched thresholds.

After the edit is complete, click **Update Thresholds** to dispatch the new thresholds to the related protection group.

## 5.1.2 Policy Configuration for Protection Groups

ADS provides the following anti-DDoS policies and rules:

- DDoS protection policies
- Anomalous packet filtering rules
- Reflection protection policy
- HTTP keyword checking policy
- HTTPS protection policy
- DNS keyword checking policy
- DNS protection policy
- TCP control parameters protection policy
- TCP regular expression protection policy
- IP behavior control policy
- SIP protection policy
- UDP payload check policy
- UDP regular expression protection policy
- UDP protection policy
- ICMP protection policy
- Watermark protection policy
- Protocol ID check policy

### 5.1.2.1 DDoS Protection Policy

An DDoS protection policy is a policy for protection against DDoS attacks.

Figure 5-16 shows parameters of the default DDoS protection policy.

Figure 5-16 DDoS protection policy area

DDoS -- [default_protection_group]				
Attack Type	Threshold 1	Threshold 2	Protection Enabled	Protection Algorithm
SYN Flood	1111 (pps)	1111 (pps)	Yes	1-SafeConnect
ACK Flood	2222(pps)		No	
UDP Flood	3333 (pps)		Yes	
ICMP Flood	4444 (pps)		Yes	
Connection Exhaustion			Yes	
Traffic Control by Dst IP		1000(kbps)	No	
Group Cleaning Capacity Control		1000(kbps)	No	

Table 5-5 describes parameters of the DDoS protection policy.

Table 5-5 Parameters of the default anti-DDoS policy

Parameter	Description
Attack Type	Types of DDoS attacks that can be blocked.
Threshold 1	The value varies with DDoS attack types. See the following descriptions.
Threshold 2	The value varies with DDoS attack types. See the following descriptions.
Protection Enabled	Controls whether to enable the protection. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Yes:</b> enables this type of protection.</li> <li>• <b>No:</b> disables this type of protection.</li> </ul>
Protection Algorithm	Different algorithms are adopted to defend against different types of DDoS attacks. See the following descriptions.

### SYN Flood

- **Threshold 1:** specifies the SYN traffic rate above which SYN flood protection is triggered. If the rate (pps) of SYN traffic to a destination exceeds the specified value, SYN flood protection is triggered. The value ranges from 0 to 48000000.
- **Threshold 2:** specifies the rate above which ADS sends reverse detection packets in response to SYN packets, after SYN flood protection is triggered. The value ranges from 1 to 240000000. A greater value means a better protection effect but a higher load on the ADS device.



- Reverse detection indicates that the ADS device detects whether a client is launching attacks by sending detection packets to the client.
- A greater **Threshold 2** value may cause higher CPU usage. You are advised to limit the CPU usage below 55%.

- **Protection Enabled:** By default, SYN flood protection is enabled and cannot be disabled.

- **Protection Algorithm**

- **0-SynCheck** applies to symmetrical networks only.
- **1-SafeConnect, 2-DynaCheck, and 3-SeqCheck** apply to both symmetrical and asymmetrical networks. When ADS is deployed in out-of-path mode, you can only select one of the three algorithms.

### ACK Flood

**Threshold 1:** specifies the ACK traffic rate above which ACK flood protection is triggered. If the rate (pps) of ACK traffic to a destination exceeds the specified value, ACK flood protection is triggered. The value ranges from 1 to 240000000.

This policy is enabled by default.

### UDP Flood

**Threshold 1:** specifies the UDP traffic rate above which UDP flood protection is triggered. If the rate (pps) of UDP traffic to a destination exceeds the specified value, UDP flood protection is triggered. The value ranges from 0 to 48000000.

This policy is enabled by default.

### ICMP Flood

**Threshold 1:** specifies the ICMP traffic rate above which ICMP flood protection is triggered. If the rate (pps) of ICMP traffic to a destination exceeds the specified value, ICMP flood protection is triggered. The value ranges from 0 to 48000000.

This policy is enabled by default.

### Connection Exhaustion

Connection exhaustion protection can work only when connection exhaustion rules are configured. You can only select **Yes** or **No** for it. (For how to configure connection exhaustion rules, see section [5.2.7 Connection Exhaustion Protection Rules](#).)

### Group-Specific Cleaning Capacity Control

**Threshold 2:** specifies the maximum traffic allowed to arrive at the protection group, above which the excess traffic is dropped. The value ranges from 0 to 48000000.

This policy is enabled by default.



- Generally, the system adopts default DDoS protection settings. If you want to edit settings of threshold 1 or 2, contact NSFOCUS technical support.
- You should apply protection algorithms to the DDoS protection policies according to the actual network environment and the deployment mode. Otherwise, network interruption may occur.

### 5.1.2.2 Anomalous Packet Filtering Rules

Anomalous packet filtering rules include rules for filtering SYN packets, UDP packets destined for port 80, LAND packets, and HTTP packets. ADS can handle traffic according to these rules only when they are enabled.

Figure 5-17 shows the area for configuration of anomalous packet filtering rules. You can perform the following operations on the rules:

- **Enable:** enable a rule. ADS filters traffic once anomalous packets with certain signatures are detected.
- **Disable:** disable a rule.
- **Enable only in protection state:** ADS filters out anomalous packets with certain signatures only when in the protection state.

Figure 5-17 Anomalous packet filtering rules

Anomalous Packet Filtering Rules [test_cmjx]	
Invalid SYN Packet Filtering	Enable ▼
UDP Port 80 Filtering	Enable ▼
LAND Filtering	Enable ▼
HTTP Filtering	Disable ▼

### 5.1.2.3 Reflection Protection Policy

If you have configured reflection protection rules, you can enable the reflection protection policy for a protection group and reference the created reflection protection rules. For details on reflection protection rules, see section [5.2.2 Reflection Protection Rules](#).

Figure 5-18 shows the reflection protection policy configuration of a protection group.


 Note	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• When multiple rules are referenced, the reflection protection policy matches attack packets with these rules in a top-down manner. In principle, the matching stops once a rule is hit. An administrator may need to adjust the rule sequence as required.</li> <li>• When multiple rules are matched, ADS performs protection based on the first rule.</li> </ul>
---	---

Figure 5-18 Reflection protection policy of a protection group

Reflection Protection Policy [default_protection_group]											
Enable	Add rule										
<input checked="" type="radio"/> Yes <input type="radio"/> No	Move <input type="text"/>	Behind <input type="text"/>									
Rule List	<table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>ID</th> <th>Name</th> <th>Operation</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>1</td> <td>acc--</td> <td> </td> </tr> <tr> <td>2</td> <td>ARMS--</td> <td> </td> </tr> </tbody> </table>		ID	Name	Operation	1	acc--		2	ARMS--	
ID	Name	Operation									
1	acc--										
2	ARMS--										

You can perform the following operations on the reflection protection policy:

- **Enable:** Select **Yes** or **No** to enable or disable the policy.
- **Rearrange rules:** Click or to move a rule one place up or down. You can also type the rule IDs in the **Move** and **Behind** text boxes. For example, **Move 1 Behind 3** indicates that the first rule will be put below the third rule. Click to commit the change.
- **Add rule:** Click to open the rule configuration page shown in [Figure 5-19](#). Select one or more rules and then click **OK**.  
For the creation of a reflection protection rule, see section [5.2.2.1 Creating a Reflection Protection Rule](#).
- **Delete a rule:** Click to delete a rule.

Figure 5-19 Adding reflection protection rules

	Name	Description
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	acc	
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	ARMS	
<input type="checkbox"/>	CharGen	
<input type="checkbox"/>	CLDAP	
<input type="checkbox"/>	COAP	
<input type="checkbox"/>	DNS	
<input type="checkbox"/>	Jenkins	
<input type="checkbox"/>	Memcache	
<input type="checkbox"/>	MsSql	
<input type="checkbox"/>	NTP	
<input type="checkbox"/>	SNMP	
<input type="checkbox"/>	SSDP	
<input type="checkbox"/>	WSDD	

### 5.1.2.4 HTTP Keyword Checking Policy

HTTP keyword checking is a process by which ADS checks specific fields in HTTP attack traffic against keywords and then takes the specified action against those packets that match a rule.

[Figure 5-20](#) shows the current HTTP keyword checking rules.


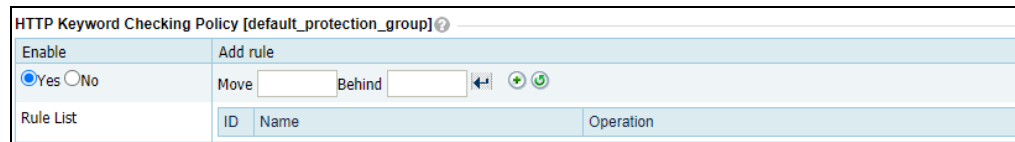




 <b>Note</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>When multiple rules are referenced, the HTTP keyword checking policy matches attack packets with these rules in a top-down manner. In principle, the matching stops once a rule is hit. The administrator may need to adjust the rule sequence as required.</li> <li>When multiple rules are hit, ADS performs protection based on the first rule.</li> </ul>
--	--

Figure 5-20 HTTP Keyword Checking Policy area

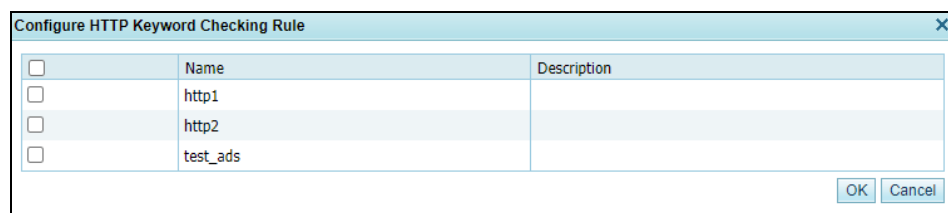


On this page, you can edit the HTTP keyword checking policy as follows:

- **Enable:** Select **Yes** or **No** to enable or disable the policy.
- Adjust rule sequence: Click  or  in the **Operation** column to move a rule one place up or down. You can also type the rule IDs in the **Move** and **Behind** text boxes. For example, **Move 1 Behind 3** indicates that the first rule will be put under the third rule. Click  to commit the change.
- **Add rule:** Click  to open the rule configuration page. Select one or more rules and then click **OK**.

For the creation of an HTTP keyword checking rule, see section [5.2.6 HTTP Keyword Checking](#).



Figure 5-21 Configuring HTTP keyword checking rules



### 5.1.2.5 Port Check Policy

The port check policy indicates that after the port check function is enabled, the system checks the data arriving at the specified port according to the configured policy but handles the data to other ports based on the group algorithm.

[Figure 5-34](#) shows the port check policy settings. [Table 5-6](#) describes of a port check policy.

- ADS detects traffic by matching port check rules in a top-down manner. If a hit is found, ADS performs access control for the port according to the matching rule and stop matching other rules.
- Rearrange rules: You can click  or  to move a rule one level up or down.





- Add a rule: You can click  to add a rule.
- Delete a rule: You can click  to delete a rule.

Figure 5-22 Port check policy of a protection group

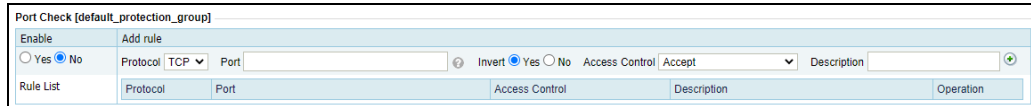


Table 5-6 Parameters of a port check policy

Parameter	Description
Enable	Controls whether to enable this policy. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Yes</b>: indicates that the policy is enabled.</li> <li>• <b>No</b>: indicates that the policy is disabled.</li> </ul>
Protocol	Specifies the protocol, which can be <b>TCP</b> or <b>UDP</b> .
Port	Specifies the number of port to be checked. You can add a maximum of 10 rules, each of which can include 48 ports. Ports must be separated by the comma.
Invert	Controls whether to invert the port setting. <b>Yes</b> : indicates that other ports than the ones specified will be matched and <b>No</b> indicates the opposite. For example, if <b>Port</b> is set to <b>80</b> and <b>Invert</b> is set <b>Yes</b> , ADS checks ports other than port 80.
Access Control	Specifies how to handle packets matching the rule. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Accept</b>: allows packets from the specified port to pass through ADS.</li> <li>• <b>Drop</b>: drops such packets.</li> <li>• <b>Drop and add to blacklist</b>: drops such packets and adds them to the blacklist.</li> </ul>
Description	Brief description of the policy, which can contain a maximum of 15 characters.

### 5.1.2.6 HTTPS Protection Policy

HTTPS protection policies are classified into two types:

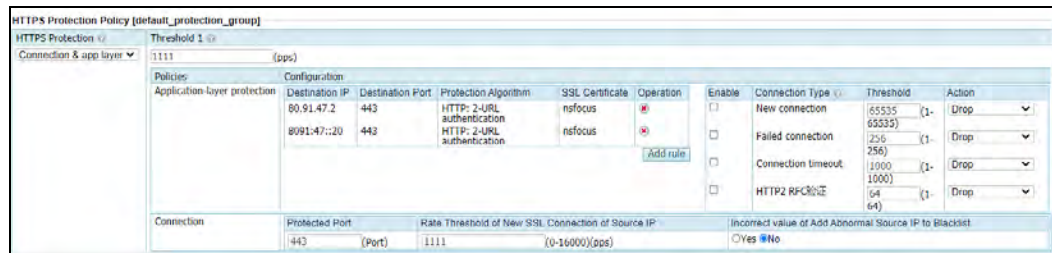
- **Connection protection**: With the HTTPS connection protection policy, the system checks HTTPS packets from clients. When **Add Abnormal IP to Blacklist** is set to **Yes**, the system adds source IP addresses that match the HTTPS protection algorithm to the blacklist.
- **Application-layer protection**: The system configures an SSL certificate for specified destination IP addresses and ports and then authenticates clients with HTTPS protection algorithms and controls SSL connections. Packets that fail the check will be dropped or their source IP addresses will be added to the blacklist.



The HTTPS application-layer protection policy is available only to ADS NX3-800E/2020E, NX5-4020E/6025E, NX5-8000, NX5-10000, NX5-12000, NX3-HD2500, NX5-HD4500, NX5-HD6500, and NX5-HD8500.

Figure 5-23 shows HTTPS protection policies.

Figure 5-23 HTTPS protection policies of a protection group



In the upper-left corner of the area shown in Figure 5-23, select an HTTPS protection mode, which can be one of the following:

- **None:** disables HTTPS protection policies.
- **Connection only:** enables connection protection only.
- **App layer only:** enables application-layer protection only.
- **Connection & app layer:** enables both connection protection and application-layer protection.

If both types of HTTPS protection are enabled, only the destination IP address and port put under application-layer protection are checked against the application-layer protection policy, while other ports are checked against the connection protection policy.

For HTTPS connection protection, you can select **Connection only** for **HTTPS Protection**. Table 5-7 describes parameters of an HTTPS connection protection policy.

Table 5-7 Parameters of an HTTPS connection protection policy

Parameter	Description
HTTPS Protection	Controls whether to enable HTTPS protection.
Threshold 1	Specifies the HTTPS traffic rate, above which HTTPS protection is triggered. If the rate (pps) of HTTPS traffic to a destination exceeds the specified value, HTTPS protection is triggered. The value ranges from 0 to 48000000.
Port	Specifies the port to be protected. The value ranges from 0 to 65535, with <b>443</b> as the default. HTTPS protection is triggered only when the destination port number of attack packets matches the specified port. The port configured for the HTTP protection policy must be different from that for the HTTPS protection policy.
Rate Threshold of New SSL Connection of Source IP	Specifies the rate of new SSL connections of source IP addresses, above which HTTPS protection is triggered. The value range is 0–16000.

Parameter	Description
Add Abnormal IP to Blacklist	Controls whether to add abnormal IP addresses to the blacklist. The value <b>Yes</b> indicates that, when the IP address of a client fails the check with the HTTPS protection algorithm, the system will add this IP address to the blacklist.

To configure an application-layer protection policy, perform the following steps:

**Step 1** Create an application-layer protection rule.

Click **Add Rule** and set parameters in the dialog box that appears.

Figure 5-24 Creating an application-layer protection rule

[Table 5-8](#) lists parameters for creating an application-layer protection rule.

Table 5-8 Parameters of an application-layer protection rule

Parameter	Description
Destination IP	Destination IP address to protect. Such an IP address should be within the IP address range covered by the protection group.
Destination Port	Port of the destination IP address to protect. The value range is 0–65535.
Protection Algorithm	Protection algorithm used in this rule.
SSL Certificate	SSL certificate used in this rule. The default certificate is <b>nsfocus</b> . You can also import others as required. For how to import an SSL certificate, see <a href="#">section 5.1.6 SSL Certificate Management</a> .

**Step 2** After the configuration is complete, click **OK** to return to the HTTPS protection policy page.

**Step 3** Configure control items.

Table 5-9 Control items of an application-layer protection rule

Parameter	Description
Enable	Controls whether to check the number of new connections, failed connections, and timeout connections to the destination port to protect.
Control Item	Connection control items. Such items only work for destination IP addresses and

Parameter	Description
	<p>ports under application-layer protection.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>New connection:</b> limits the number of new HTTPS connections initiated by a source IP address to the specified destination port.</li> <li>• <b>Failed connection:</b> limits the number of new HTTPS connections a source IP address fails to initiate to the specified destination port. Failed connections include failures in SSL/TLS handshake, renegotiation, and HTTPS packet parsing.</li> <li>• <b>Timeout connection:</b> limits the number of new HTTPS connections a source IP address initiates to the specified destination port. A timeout connection means either an incomplete SSL/TLS handshake or no HTTPS packet interaction after the SSL/TLS handshake is complete.</li> <li>• <b>HTTP2 RFC authentication:</b> performs RFC authentication on HTTP2 packets from source IP addresses.</li> </ul>
Threshold	<p>Threshold of each control item. The threshold range is different for the three types of connections:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• New connection: 1–65535</li> <li>• Failed connection: 1–256</li> <li>• Timeout connection: 1–1000</li> <li>• HTTP2 RFC authentication: 1–64</li> </ul>
Action	<p>Action taken on packets from clients or IP addresses of clients, which can be either of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Drop:</b> If a client fails to be authenticated by an HTTPS protection algorithm, the system drops packets sent by (or from) this client if they contain the specified signature.</li> <li>• <b>Add to blacklist:</b> If a client fails to be authenticated by an HTTPS protection algorithm, the system identifies its IP address as an abnormal one and adds it to the blacklist to block it. You need to enable the blacklist function before setting this action. For details on the blacklist, see section <a href="#">5.2.9 Blacklist</a>.</li> </ul>

---End

### 5.1.2.7 HTTP Protection Policy

The HTTP protection policy for a protection group covers the following items:

- **HTTP GET flood protection:** This protection mechanism is triggered if the number of HTTP GET packets transmitted to a destination IP address per second (unit: pps) exceeds the specified value.
- **HTTP POST flood protection:** This protection mechanism is triggered if the number of HTTP POST packets transmitted to a destination IP address per second (unit: pps) exceeds the specified value.
- **Low-and-slow attack protection:** This protection mechanism is triggered if the number of HTTP packets to a destination IP address exceeds threshold 1 and the payload size of such packets is smaller than threshold 2.
- **SYN cookie URL protection:** If SYN Cookie URL is enabled, this protection mechanism also applies to new connections.

[Figure 5-25](#) shows the HTTPS protection policy configuration for a protection group.



Figure 5-25 HTTP protection policy



HTTP Protection Policy(default_protection_group)				
HTTP Protection	SYN Cookie URL	Protection Target	Protection Port	
Not protect	Disable	Destination IP/Port Destination IP/Port/URL	80,81 (Port range) @	
	Policy	Threshold 1	Threshold 2	Protection Algorithm
	HTTP Get Flood	1111 (pps)		Proxy Protection Disable Custom Field (Proxy fields "X-Forwarded-For" and "Cdn-Src-IP" are supported.) Unified protection 5-Dynamic script protection Template Name
	HTTP Post Flood	1111 (pps)		Status Disable
	Slow Attack Protection	1000 (pps)	500 (Bytes)	Status Disable

Table 5-10 describes parameters for configuring the HTTP protection policy.

Table 5-10 Parameters for configuring the HTTP protection policy

Parameter	Description	
<b>HTTP Protection</b>	<p>Specifies the HTTP protection mode, which can be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Full protection:</b> Both group protection and URL rule protection are provided.</li> <li><b>Only on the rules of URL protection:</b> The protection group is protected only by URL rules. In this case, SYN Cookie URL cannot be enabled.</li> <li><b>Not protect</b></li> </ul>	
<b>SYN Cookie URL</b>	<p>Controls whether to enable or disable SYN Cookie URL.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Enable:</b> SYN Cookie URL protection can be enabled only when the following conditions are met: 1. <b>Full protection</b> is selected for <b>HTTP Protection</b>. 2. <b>Status</b> is set to <b>Enable</b> for HTTP POST flood protection. After SYN Cookie URL is enabled, proxy protection will be disabled automatically.</li> <li><b>Disable:</b> To disable SYN Cookie URL for a protection group, you must disable SYN Cookie URL for all URL rules of the protection group in advance. Setting <b>HTTP Protection</b> to <b>Only on the rules of URL protection</b> automatically disables SYN Cookie URL.</li> </ul>	
<b>Protection Target</b>	<p>Specifies the protection target, which can be either of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Destination IP/Port:</b> indicates that ADS determines whether to enter the protection state based on the destination IP address and port.</li> <li><b>Destination IP/Port/URL:</b> indicates that ADS determines whether to enter the protection state based on the destination IP address, port, and URL.</li> </ul>	
<b>Protection Port</b>	<p>Specifies the port number corresponding to the destination IP address of HTTP packets. A maximum of five ports or port ranges are allowed, which must be separated by the comma, like 80,90-92. The value range is 0–65535. Also, HTTPS port numbers must be excluded.</p>	
<b>HTTP Get Flood</b>	<b>Threshold 1</b>	<p>Specifies the HTTP GET traffic rate (pps), above which HTTP GET flood protection is triggered. If the rate of HTTP GET traffic to a destination IP address exceeds the specified value, HTTP GET flood protection is triggered. The value range is 0–48000000.</p>
	<b>Proxy Protection</b>	<p>Controls whether to enable proxy protection. After HTTP GET flood protection is enabled, you can enable proxy protection. You are advised to enable this function if a proxy server exists in your network.</p>


Parameter	Description
	 <p><b>Note</b></p> <p>Enabling proxy protection automatically disables SYN Cookie URL.</p>
<b>Custom Field</b>	After proxy protection is enabled, you can configure this parameter to allow ADS to accurately identify the actual proxied IP address.
Protection mode	<p>Specifies the HTTP GET protection mode, which can be either of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Unified protection:</b> ADS provides HTTP GET protection in a unified way, without distinguishing between traffic from PCs and mobile applications.</li> <li>• <b>Precision protection:</b> ADS applies different protection policies for traffic from PCs and mobile applications based on the setting of the user-agent field. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➢ For PC protection, you can choose whether to enable precision protection and configure an HTTP GET protection algorithm.</li> <li>➢ For mobile application protection, you can choose whether to enable precision protection, reference user-agent rules for mobile devices, and configure an HTTP GET protection algorithm.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
Protection algorithm	<p>Specifies the protection algorithm, which can be one of the following, with <b>2_URL authentication</b> as the default:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>0_TAG authentication</b> and <b>1_HTTPCOOKIES authentication</b> verify the destination IP address by adding authentication information into HTTP packets.</li> <li>• <b>2_URL authentication</b> verifies the destination IP address by adding information similar to cookies into URL requests.</li> <li>• <b>3_ASCII image authentication</b> and <b>4_BMP image authentication</b> verify the destination IP address by adding an image.</li> <li>• <b>5_Dynamic script protection</b> verifies the destination IP address by executing dynamic scripts on the client.</li> <li>• <b>6_Legend game authentication</b> and <b>7_FCS</b> verify the destination IP address by checking the packets of the "Legend" game and the flash server.</li> <li>• <b>8_Pattern matching check</b> verify the destination IP address by matching a signature string that is defined under <b>Advanced &gt; Pattern Matching</b> (see section <a href="#">8.2 Pattern Matching Rules</a> for the configuration of pattern matching).</li> </ul>  <p><b>Note</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>6_Legend authentication</b>, <b>7_FCS check</b> and <b>8_Pattern matching check</b> are specific to protection groups and available only when SYN Cookie URL is enabled.</li> <li>• Enabling SYN Cookie URL disables the <b>0_TAG authentication</b> and <b>1_HTTPCOOKIES authentication</b> algorithms.</li> </ul>
<b>Template Name</b>	Specifies the template name. This parameter is required only when <b>4_BMP image authentication</b> is selected for <b>Protection Algorithm</b> . It is used to select the response page that contains a CAPTCHA code image. The default value is --. For response page settings, see section <a href="#">5.1.5 Response Page Settings</a> .

Parameter		Description
	<b>User-Agent Rule</b>	<p>Indicates user-agent rules. These rules are required only for precision protection. Packets that match a user-agent rule referenced here are deemed traffic of a mobile device, or regarded as traffic of a PC.</p> <p>You can click  and select one or more existing user-agent rules. At least one rule should be selected and at most five can be configured. For details about user-agent rules for mobile devices, see section <a href="#">5.1.7 Mobile User-Agent Rules</a>.</p>
<b>HTTP Post Flood</b>	<b>Threshold 1</b>	Specifies the HTTP POST traffic rate (pps) above which HTTP POST flood protection is triggered. If the rate of HTTP POST traffic to a destination IP address exceeds the specified value, HTTP POST flood protection is triggered. The value range is 0–48000000.
	<b>Status</b>	<p>Controls whether to enable or disable HTTP POST flood protection.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>HTTP POST flood</b> protection can be enabled only when <b>HTTP Protection</b> is set to <b>Full protection</b> or <b>Only on the rules of URL protection</b>.</li> <li>• If <b>HTTP Protection</b> is set to <b>Not protect</b>, the setting of <b>Status</b> changes to <b>Disable</b> automatically.</li> </ul>
<b>Slow Attack Protection</b>	<b>Threshold 1</b>	Specifies the number of HTTP packets arriving at the destination IP address per second, above which low-and-slow protection is triggered.
	<b>Threshold 2</b>	Specifies length of HTTP packets arriving at the destination IP address, below which low-and-slow protection is triggered.
	<b>Status</b>	<p>Controls whether to enable low-and-slow attack protection. This type of protection can be enabled only when HTTP protection is enabled and <b>Full protection</b> is selected for <b>HTTP Protection</b>. Low-and-slow attack protection is triggered if the number of HTTP packets to a destination IP address per second exceeds threshold 1 and the payload size of such packets is smaller than threshold 2.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>Setting <b>HTTP Protection</b> to <b>Not protect</b> or <b>Only on the rules of URL protection</b> automatically disables low-and-slow attack protection.</p>

### 5.1.2.8 DNS Keyword Checking Policy

DNS keyword checking is a process by which ADS checks specific fields in DNS attack traffic against keywords and then takes the specified action against those packets that match a rule.

[Figure 5-26](#) shows the current DNS keyword checking rules.

 <b>Note</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Under a default policy, at most 10 DNS keyword checking rules can be referenced.</li> <li>• When multiple rules are referenced, the DNS keyword checking policy matches attack packets with these rules in a top-down manner. In principle, the matching stops once a rule is hit. An administrator may need to adjust the rule sequence as required.</li> </ul>
--	---

- When multiple rules are matched, ADS performs protection based on the first rule.

Figure 5-26 DNS Keyword Checking Policy area

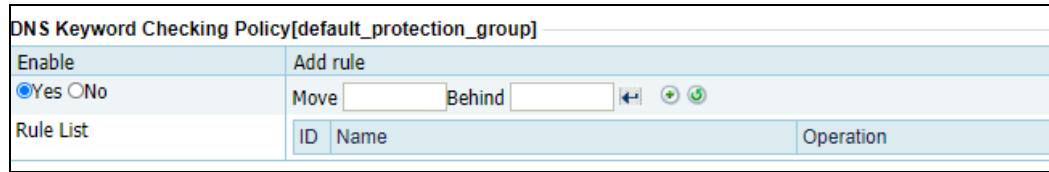


Table 5-11 describes parameters of the DNS keyword checking policy.

Table 5-11 Parameters of the default DNS keyword checking policy

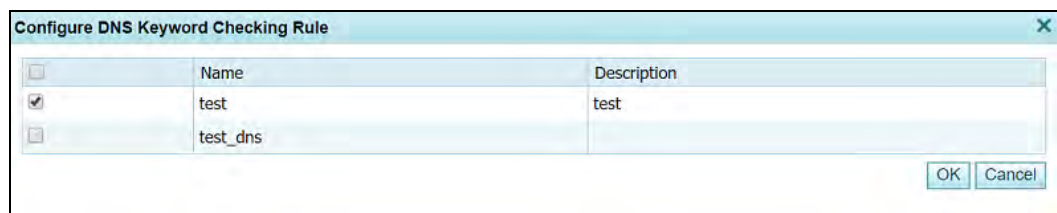
Parameter	Description
Enable	Controls whether to enable the default DNS keyword checking policy.
Rule	Name of each rule included in the policy.
Description	Brief description of each rule.
Source IP	Specifies the source IP address from which traffic will be checked against the default DNS keyword checking policy.
Action	Specifies the action that ADS will take against the source IP address (host). For details, see section 5.2.5 DNS Keyword Checking.

On this page, you can edit the DNS keyword checking policy as follows:

- **Enable:** Select **Yes** or **No** to enable or disable the policy.
- **Adjust rule sequence:** Click or to move a rule one place up or down. You can also type the rule IDs in the **Move** and **Behind** text boxes. For example, **Move 1 Behind 3** indicates that the first rule will be put under the third rule. Click to commit the change.
- **Add rule:** Click to open the policy configuration page. Select one or more rules and then click **OK**.

For the creation of a DNS keyword checking rule, see section 5.2.5 DNS Keyword Checking.

Figure 5-27 Configuring DNS keyword checking rules





### 5.1.2.9 DNS Protection Policy

DNS protection is a policy against DNS attacks and spoofing targeting DNS servers. [Figure 5-28](#) shows the current DNS protection policy.

The DNS retransmission algorithm for DNS response protection applies to common servers (such as web servers), instead of recursive DNS servers and authoritative DNS servers.

Figure 5-28 DNS Protection Policy area

DNS Protection Policy[test_cmjx]		
Protection Type	Enable	Parameter Configuration
DNS Query Protection	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Yes <input type="radio"/> No	Protection Algorithm: 2-TCP_BIT Reverse Detection Rate: 32000 (pps)
DNS Response Protection	<input type="radio"/> Yes <input checked="" type="radio"/> No	Protection Algorithm: 2-DNS retransmission Action: Accept+trust

[Table 5-12](#) describes parameters of the DNS protection policy.

Table 5-12 Parameters of the DNS protection policy

Parameter		Description
DNS Query Protection	Enable	Controls whether to enable DNS query protection. <b>Yes</b> indicates that ADS provides DNS query protection.
	Protection Algorithm	Specifies an algorithm for DNS query protection. Options include <b>1-Default</b> , <b>2-TCP_BIT</b> , <b>3-DNS_CNAME</b> , and <b>4-DNS retransmission</b> .
	Reverse Detection Rate	Specifies the maximum rate of reverse detection packets. The value ranges from 1 to 240000000.
DNS Response Protection	Enable	Controls whether to enable DNS response protection. <b>Yes</b> indicates that ADS provides DNS response protection.
	Protection Algorithm	Specifies an algorithm for DNS query protection. Options include <b>1-Default</b> and <b>2-DNS retransmission</b> .
	Action	Specifies how to handle DNS responses: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Accept</b>: passes through DNS responses authenticated by the protection algorithm</li> <li><b>Accept+trust</b>: passes through DNS responses authenticated by the protection algorithm and adds the source IP address of these responses to the trust list.</li> </ul>



Note

DNS protection is triggered when the number of UDP packets transmitted per second exceeds the specified threshold. For the setting of UDP flood thresholds, see section [5.1.2.1 DDoS Protection Policy](#).

The default DNS protection settings are effective for general usage. To change the protection algorithm, contact technical support engineers of NSFOCUS.

### 5.1.2.10 TCP Control Parameters Protection Policy

Figure 5-29 shows parameters of the TCP control parameters protection policy.

Figure 5-29 TCP Control Parameters Protection Policy area

TCP Control Parameters [test_cmjx]	
Targeting	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Destination IP/Port <input type="radio"/> Destination IP
SYN Control	SYN Time Sequence Check <input checked="" type="radio"/> Yes <input type="radio"/> No
	Retransmission Interval <input type="text" value="22"/> (2750ms) ~ <input type="text" value="28"/> (3500ms)
	SYN Source Bandwidth Limit <input type="text" value="Disable"/> SYN Source IP Rate Limit <input type="text" value="0"/> (pps)
SYN-ACK Control	Learning Mode <input type="radio"/> Yes <input checked="" type="radio"/> No
	Protection Algorithm <input type="text" value="Drop"/>
	Reverse Detection Rate <input type="radio"/> Yes <input checked="" type="radio"/> No <input type="text" value="32000"/> (pps)
ACK Control	ACK Learning Mode <input type="radio"/> Yes <input checked="" type="radio"/> No
	ACK Protection Algorithm <input type="text" value="Drop"/>
	Reverse Detection Rate <input type="radio"/> Yes <input checked="" type="radio"/> No <input type="text" value="32000"/> (pps)
	Retransmission Interval <input type="text" value="8"/> (1000ms) ~ <input type="text" value="24"/> (3000ms)
Other	RST Tx Rate <input type="text" value="100000"/> (pps)
	TCP Fragment Control <input type="text" value="Drop"/>

Table 5-13 describes parameters of the TCP control policy.

Table 5-13 Parameters of the TCP control policy

Control Item	Parameter	Description
SYN Control	Targeting	Specifies how to identify a target server to be protected. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Destination IP/Port:</b> indicates that the server to be protected is identified by the destination IP address and port.</li> <li><b>Destination IP:</b> indicates that the server to be protected is identified by only the destination IP address.</li> </ul>
	SYN Time Sequence Check	Controls whether to check the SYN time sequence.
	SYN Source Bandwidth Limit	Works with <b>SYN Source IP Rate Limit</b> to limit the bandwidth used by the source host to send SYN packets. It has the following values: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Disable:</b> disables this function.</li> <li><b>Drop and add to blacklist:</b> adds the IP address of the source host to the blacklist when the SYN packet forwarding rate of the source host exceeds the specified value.</li> <li><b>Drop:</b> drops subsequent packets when the SYN packet forwarding rate of the source host exceeds the specified value.</li> </ul>
	SYN Source IP Rate Limit	Works with <b>SYN Source Bandwidth Limit</b> to specify the maximum packet forwarding rate (pps) for the source host of SYN packets. The value ranges from 1 to 2000000.
SYN-ACK Control	Learning Mode	Controls whether to enable the SYN-ACK learning mode. This learning mode works only in non-protection state. After the ACK learning mode is enabled, the system learns the packets sent by the client and adds the source IP addresses meeting the specified conditions to the trust list.

Control Item	Parameter	Description
		The learning mode works only when neither SYN protection nor ACK protection is available.
	Protection Algorithm	<p>Specifies the SYN-ACK protection algorithm. Options include <b>Drop</b>, <b>Close</b>, <b>Source authentication</b>, <b>Session check</b>, and <b>Combined ACK protection</b>.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Drop</b>: drops SYN-ACK packets.</li> <li>• <b>Close</b>: allows SYN-ACK packets to pass through the authentication by the algorithm and checks them in subsequent protection processes.</li> <li>• <b>Source authentication</b>: checks resent SYN-ACK packets and passes them through if requirements for authentication by this algorithm are met; otherwise, these packets are dropped.</li> <li>• <b>Session check</b>: This check is done on SYN-ACK packets that pass through source authentication. If session check requirements are met, packets are allowed to pass through, or will be dropped.</li> <li>• <b>Combined ACK protection</b>: This check is done on SYN-ACK packets that pass through source authentication. The check must be coupled with the ACK protection algorithm. Packets that meet check requirements are allowed to pass through, or will be dropped.</li> </ul>
	Reverse Detection Rate	Specifies the maximum rate at which ADS sends SYN-ACK packets for reverse detection. The value range is 1–240000000.
ACK Control	ACK Learning Mode	<p>Controls whether to enable the ACK learning mode. This learning mode works only in non-protection state. After the ACK learning mode is enabled, the system learns the packets sent by the client and adds the source IP addresses meeting the specified conditions to the trust list.</p> <p>The learning mode works only when neither ACK protection is available.</p>
	ACK Protection Algorithm	<p>When ACK flood protection is enabled, you can configure the ACK protection algorithm, which can be <b>Disable</b>, <b>Time Sequence Check</b>, or <b>ACK Check</b>, with <b>Disable</b> as the default value.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Drop</b>: drops ACK packets.</li> <li>• <b>ACK Check</b>: indicates that packets from source IP addresses that meet check requirements are allowed to pass through, or will be dropped.</li> <li>• <b>Time Sequence Check</b>: For two identical ACK packets, if their sending interval is between <b>Min Check Count of ACK</b> and <b>Max Check Count of ACK</b>, they will be allowed through. Otherwise, they will be dropped.</li> </ul>
	Reverse Detection Rate	Specifies the maximum rate at which ADS sends ACK packets for reverse detection. The value range is 1–240000000.
	Retransmission Interval	Specifies how many milliseconds will elapse between when the ACK packet is discarded for the first time and when it is resent.

Control Item	Parameter	Description
Other	RST TX Rate	Maximum TX rate of RST packets. The value ranges from 0 to 4000000, with <b>100000</b> as the default. The value <b>0</b> indicates that no RST packets are sent.
	TCP Fragment Control	Controls whether to drop TCP fragments. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Accept:</b> allows TCP fragments in IPv4 or IPv6 packets to pass through.</li> <li>• <b>Drop:</b> drops TCP fragments in IPv4 or IPv6 packets.</li> <li>• <b>Rate-limiting:</b> restricts the transmission rate of TCP fragments.</li> </ul>

### 5.1.2.11 TCP Regular Expression Protection Policy

After configuring regular expression rules, you can enable the TCP regular expression protection and reference created regular expression rules. For details on regular expression rules, see section [5.2.4 Regular Expression Rules](#).

[Figure 5-30](#) shows the page for configuring the TCP regular expression protection policy.






 <b>Note</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• When multiple rules are referenced, the TCP regular expression protection policy matches attack packets with these rules in a top-down manner. In principle, the matching stops once a rule is hit. An administrator may need to adjust the rule sequence as required.</li> <li>• When multiple rules are matched, ADS performs protection based on the first rule.</li> </ul>
--	---

Figure 5-30 TCP regular expression protection policy

TCP Regular Expression Protection Policy[default_protection_group]		
Enable	Add rule	
<input type="radio"/> Yes <input checked="" type="radio"/> No	Move	Behind
Rule List	ID	Name
	1	regex1--
	2	regex2--
		Operation
		 
		 

You can perform the following operations on the TCP regular expression protection policy:






- **Enable:** Select **Yes** or **No** to enable or disable the policy.
- **Rearrange rules:** Click  or  to move a rule one place up or down. You can also type the rule IDs in the **Move** and **Behind** text boxes. For example, **Move 1 Behind 3** indicates that the first rule will be put below the third rule. Click  to commit the change.
- **Add rule:** Click  to open the rule addition dialog box shown in [Figure 5-31](#). Select one or more rules and then click **OK**.  
For how to create a regular expression rule, see section [5.2.4 Regular Expression Rules](#).
- **Delete a rule:** Click  to delete a rule.

Figure 5-31 Adding regular expression rules

Configure Regular Expression Rule	
<input type="checkbox"/>	Description
<input type="checkbox"/>	regex1
<input type="checkbox"/>	regex2

OK Cancel

### 5.1.2.12 IP Behavior Control Policy

The system regards source IP addresses of packets that have been authenticated with the DDoS protection policy as trusted IP addresses. However, to protect against DDoS attacks from trusted IP addresses, the system needs to further process packets from trusted IP addresses. This process is called "IP behavior control". By limiting the TX rate of source IP addresses whose packet forwarding rate exceeds the threshold or adding such IP addresses to the blacklist, the system can effectively defend against botnet attacks. Figure 5-32 shows IP behavior control parameters.

Figure 5-32 IP Behavior Control Policy area

IP Behavior Control Policy [test_cmjx]				
Rule Name	Enable	Access Control	Statistical Period	Threshold
SYN Packets	<input type="radio"/> Yes <input checked="" type="radio"/> No	Rate-limiting	4 (s)	400 <input checked="" type="radio"/> Packets <input type="radio"/> Bytes
ACK Packets	<input type="radio"/> Yes <input checked="" type="radio"/> No	Rate-limiting	4 (s)	400 <input checked="" type="radio"/> Packets <input type="radio"/> Bytes
GET Packets	<input type="radio"/> Yes <input checked="" type="radio"/> No	Rate-limiting	4 (s)	200 <input checked="" type="radio"/> Packets <input type="radio"/> Bytes
Other Packets	<input type="radio"/> Yes <input checked="" type="radio"/> No	Rate-limiting	4 (s)	400 <input checked="" type="radio"/> Packets <input type="radio"/> Bytes
Empty Connection Check		Disable		

Table 5-14 describes IP behavior control parameters.

Table 5-14 IP behavior control parameters

Parameter	Description
Enable	Controls whether to enable packet rate control.
Access Control	<p>Specifies the action the system takes to exert access control for trusted IP addresses whose packet forwarding rate (pps or bps) exceeds the threshold. It has the following values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Rate-limiting:</b> limits the traffic rate.</li> <li><b>Drop and add to blacklist:</b> adds an IP address to the blacklist and blocks packets from this IP address when its traffic exceeds the specified value. To select this value, you must enable the blacklist function first. For details, see section 5.2.9 Blacklist.</li> </ul> <p><b>Empty Connection Check</b> checks whether empty connections exist. It has the following values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Disable:</b> disables the empty connection check function.</li> <li><b>Drop and add to blacklist:</b> adds the IP address of the source host to the blacklist when the SYN or TCP packets are destined for an empty connection.</li> <li><b>Drop:</b> drops the current SYN or TCP packets that are destined for an</li> </ul>

Parameter	Description
	empty connection.
Statistical Period	Specifies the statistical period for calculating the percentage of packets that match the rule.
Threshold	Specifies the maximum number of the packets that a trusted IP address can send within the statistical period. More packets than allowed will be dropped and an attack event will be logged.  Either <b>Packets</b> or <b>Bytes</b> can be selected as the unit of the rate threshold.

### 5.1.2.13 SIP Protection Policy

With the SIP protection policy, the system provides protection against packets using the Session Initiation Protocol (SIP). [Figure 5-33](#) shows parameters of the SIP protection policy.

Figure 5-33 SIP Protection Policy area

SIP Protection Policy[default_protection_group]		
SIP Protection	Port	Protection Algorithm
<input checked="" type="radio"/> Yes <input type="radio"/> No	<input type="text" value="5061"/>	Protection mode ▼

[Table 5-15](#) describes parameters of the SIP protection policy.

Table 5-15 Parameters of the SIP protection policy

Parameter	Description
SIP Protection	Controls whether to enable the SIP protection policy.
Port	Port corresponding to the destination IP address. The value ranges from 0 to 65535, with <b>5060</b> as the default. SIP protection is triggered only when the destination port number of attack packets matches the specified port.
Protection Algorithm	Protection algorithm. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>If this parameter is set to <b>Protection mode</b>, the system performs protection against register attacks and invite attacks, and identifies attack packets via interaction with register and invite packets.</li> <li>If this parameter is set to <b>Learning mode</b>, the system performs protection against invite attacks. When a client sends an invite packet without any register packet, the system drops the invite packet.</li> </ul>

### 5.1.2.14 UDP Payload Check Policy

With the UDP payload check policy, the system inspects the payload of UDP packets from clients and drops packets that do not meet specified conditions. [Figure 5-34](#) shows UDP payload check policy.

Figure 5-34 UDP Payload Check Policy area

UDP Payload Check Policy[default_protection_group]		
Payload Check Discard UDP packets with payload length of 0	Mode Check Enable	Packet Length Threshold 81

Table 5-16 describes parameters of the UDP payload check policy.

Table 5-16 Parameters of the UDP payload check policy

Parameter	Description
Payload Check	Specifies whether to check the UDP payload and post-check actions. It has the following values: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Disable:</b> disables UDP payload inspection.</li> <li>• <b>Discard UDP packets with payload length of 0:</b> drops packets whose payload length is 0.</li> <li>• <b>Discard UDP packets with payload length of 0 for attacked target:</b> drops packets whose payload length is 0 only when the target is being attacked.</li> </ul>
Mode Check	Controls whether to enable mode checks.
Packet Length Threshold	Maximum packet length. Based on this parameter value, ADS randomly selects several checkpoints where packets containing certain signatures are blocked.

### 5.1.2.15 UDP Regular Expression Protection Policy

After configuring regular expression rules, you can enable the UDP regular expression protection policy and reference created regular expression rules. For details on regular expression rules, see section [5.2.4 Regular Expression Rules](#).

Figure 5-35 shows the page for configuring the UDP regular expression protection policy.


 <b>Note</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• When multiple rules are referenced, the UDP regular expression protection policy matches attack packets with these rules in a top-down manner. In principle, the matching stops once a rule is hit. An administrator may need to adjust the rule sequence as required.</li> <li>• When multiple rules are matched, ADS performs protection based on the first rule.</li> </ul>
--	---

Figure 5-35 UDP regular expression protection policy

UDP Regular Expression Protection Policy[default_protection_group]								
Enable <input type="radio"/> Yes <input checked="" type="radio"/> No	Add Rule Move <input type="text"/> Behind <input type="text"/>							
Rule List	<input type="button" value="←"/> <input type="button" value="→"/> <input type="button" value="+"/> <input type="button" value="⊗"/>							
	<table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>ID</th> <th>Name</th> <th>Operation</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td> </td> <td> </td> <td> </td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	ID	Name	Operation				
ID	Name	Operation						

You can perform the following operations on the UDP regular expression protection policy:






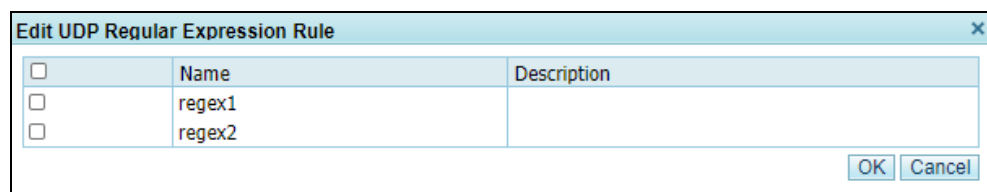
- **Enable:** Select **Yes** or **No** to enable or disable the policy.
- Rearrange rules: Click  or  to move a rule one place up or down. You can also type the rule IDs in the **Move** and **Behind** text boxes. For example, **Move 1 Behind 3** indicates that the first rule will be put below the third rule. Click  to commit the change.
- **Add rule:** Click  to open the rule configuration dialog box shown in [Figure 5-36](#). Select one or more rules and then click **OK**.  
For how to create a regular expression rule, see section [5.2.4 Regular Expression Rules](#).
- Delete a rule: Click  to delete a rule.

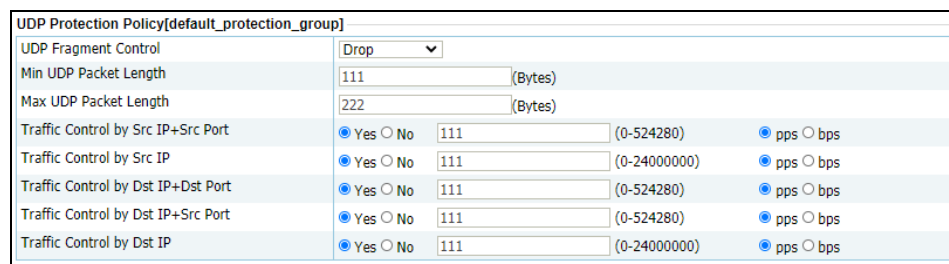
Figure 5-36 Adding UDP regular expression rules



### 5.1.2.16 UDP Protection Policy

With the UDP protection policy, the system checks UDP requests from clients, and drops requests that do not meet specified conditions. [Figure 5-37](#) shows parameters of the UDP protection policy.

Figure 5-37 UDP Protection Policy area



[Table 5-17](#) describes parameters of the UDP protection policy.

Table 5-17 Parameters of the UDP protection policy

Parameter	Description
UDP Fragment Control	Controls whether to drop detected UDP fragments in IPv4 or IPv6 packets. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Accept:</b> allows UDP fragments to pass through.</li> <li>• <b>Drop:</b> drops UDP fragments.</li> <li>• <b>Limit rate:</b> limits the packet transmission rate to a specified threshold when UDP fragments are detected.</li> </ul>



Parameter	Description
Min UDP Packet Length	Specifies the minimum packet length in bytes. The system drops the packets that are below the defined minimum length. The value range is 0–65535, with <b>0</b> as the default value.
Max UDP Packet Length	Specifies the maximum packet length in bytes. The system drops the packets that are beyond the defined maximum length. The default value is <b>65535</b> .
Traffic Control by Src IP+Src Port	Specifies the maximum number of UDP fragments that are allowed to pass through per second with the same source IP address and source port. Excess UDP fragments will be dropped.  This parameter is disabled by default. The value range is 1–524280, with <b>65535</b> as the default value.
Traffic Control by Src IP	Specifies the maximum number of UDP fragments that are allowed to pass through per second with the same source IP address. Excess UDP fragments will be dropped.  This parameter is enabled by default. The value range is 0–24000000, with <b>3000000</b> as the default value.
Traffic Control by Dst IP+Dst Port	Specifies the maximum number of UDP fragments that are allowed to pass through per second with the same destination IP address and destination port. Excess UDP fragments will be dropped.  This parameter is disabled by default. The value range is 0–524280, with <b>65535</b> as the default value.
Traffic Control by Dst IP+Src Port	Specifies the maximum number of UDP fragments that are allowed to pass through per second with the same destination IP address and source port. Excess UDP fragments will be dropped.  This parameter is disabled by default. The value range is 0–524280, with <b>65535</b> as the default value.
Traffic Control by Dst IP	Specifies the maximum number of UDP fragments that are allowed to pass through per second with the same destination IP address. Excess UDP fragments will be dropped.  This parameter is disabled by default. The value range is 0–24000000, with <b>3000000</b> as the default value.

### 5.1.2.17 ICMP Protection Policy

With the ICMP protection policy, the system checks ICMP connection requests from clients, and drops requests that do not meet specified conditions. [Figure 5-38](#) shows parameters of the ICMP protection policy.

Figure 5-38 ICMP Protection Policy area

ICMP Protection Policy [default_protection_group]	
ICMP Fragment Control	Drop ▼
Traffic Control by Src IP	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Yes <input type="radio"/> No 111 (1-24000000)(pps)
Traffic Control by Dst IP	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Yes <input type="radio"/> No 111 (1-24000000)(pps)

[Table 5-18](#) describes parameters of the ICMP protection policy.

Table 5-18 Parameters of the ICMP protection policy

Parameter	Description
ICMP Fragment Control	Controls whether to drop the detected ICMP fragments. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Accept:</b> allows ICMP fragments to pass through.</li> <li>• <b>Drop:</b> drops ICMP fragments.</li> <li>• <b>Limit rate:</b> limits the packet transmission rate to a specified threshold when ICMP fragments are detected.</li> </ul>
Traffic Control by Src IP	Specifies the maximum number of ICMP fragments that are allowed to pass through per second from each source IP address. Excess ICMP fragments will be dropped.  By default, it is disabled. The value range is 1–2400000, with <b>3000000</b> as the default value.
Traffic Control by Dst IP	Specifies the maximum number of ICMP fragments that are allowed to pass through per second to each destination IP address. Excess ICMP fragments will be dropped.  By default, it is disabled. The value range is 1–2400000, with <b>3000000</b> as the default value.

### 5.1.2.18 Watermark Protection Policy

If you add watermarks to your legitimate traffic, you can configure watermark rules on ADS and enable the watermark protection policy so that ADS can differentiate between normal packets and attack packets according to the configured watermark rules.

Figure 5-39 shows the watermark protection policy.

Figure 5-39 Watermark protection policy

Watermark Protection Policy [default_protection_group]						
Enable						
<input type="radio"/> Yes <input checked="" type="radio"/> No						
Add rule						
Protocol		TCP	Port range	80	offset	2
				hashKey	334	
Rule List						
ID	Protocol	Port range	offset	Hash Key	Operation	
1	tcp	80	2	334		

You can perform the following operations on the watermark protection policy:

- **Enable:** Select **Yes** or **No** to enable or disable the policy.
- **Add rule:** Set **Protocol** (UDP or TCP), **Port Range**, **Offset** (0–1480), and **Hash Key** (must be a decimal integer), and click to add a watermark protection rule. **Port Range** can be a single port, port range, or multiple ports. Multiple ports must be separated by the comma.
- **Delete a rule:** Click to delete a rule.

After the watermark protection policy is enabled, ADS will allow packets that match this rule to pass through and drop mismatching ones.

A maximum of eight watermark rules can be created for a protection group.

### 5.1.2.19 Protocol ID Check Policy

The protocol ID check policy allows users to define different protection actions for other protocols than TCP, UDP, ICMP, and ICMPv6. [Figure 5-40](#) shows protocol ID check parameters. The check rule with **Protocol ID** set to **OTHER** is predefined and cannot be deleted. For this rule, the default access control action is **Traffic Control by Dst IP** (the threshold is 4000 pps), which can also be set to **Accept**, **Drop**, or **Drop and add to blacklist**.

Figure 5-40 Protocol ID check policy

[Table 5-19](#) describes parameters of a protocol ID check policy.

Table 5-19 Parameters of a protocol ID check policy

Parameter		Description
Enable		Controls whether to enable this policy. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Yes</b>: enables this policy</li> <li>• <b>No</b>: disables this policy.</li> </ul>
Add rule	Protocol ID	Specifies the protocol ID which ranges from 0 to 255, excluding 1, 6, 17, and 58.
	Access Control	Specifies the access control action applied to detected packets of this protocol ID, which can be one of the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Accept</b>: allows packets of this protocol ID to pass through.</li> <li>• <b>Drop</b>: drops packets of this protocol ID.</li> <li>• <b>Drop and add to blacklist</b>: drops packets of this protocol ID and adds the source IP address of the packets to the blacklist.</li> </ul> If <b>Protocol ID</b> is <b>OTHER</b> , <b>Access Control</b> can also be <b>Traffic Control by Dst IP</b> in addition to the preceding actions. <b>Threshold</b> specifies the maximum number of packets that are allowed to pass through per second with the same destination IP address. Excess packets will be dropped. The value range is 0–6000000, with <b>4000</b> as the default value.
	Description	Brief information of this protocol ID checking rule. It cannot exceed 15 characters.

## 5.1.3 Protection Group Policy Templates

You can create and configure a protection group policy template and apply it to a newly created protection group.

### 5.1.3.1 Creating a Protection Group Policy Template

To create a protection group policy template, perform the following steps:

**Step 1** Choose **Policies > Anti-DDoS > Group Policy Templates** to open the built-in protection group policy template list of the system.

Figure 5-41 Protection group policy templates

Select All	Name	Description	Time of Creation	Operation
<input type="checkbox"/>	_default	Builtin template for General Server.	2021-03-12 15:25:23	[Icons]
<input type="checkbox"/>	_dns_auth_server	Builtin template for DNS Auth Server.	2021-03-12 15:25:23	[Icons]
<input type="checkbox"/>	_dns_cache_server	Builtin template for DNS Cache Server.	2021-03-12 15:25:23	[Icons]
<input type="checkbox"/>	_web_server	Builtin template for Web Server.	2021-03-12 15:25:23	[Icons]
<input type="checkbox"/>	apitest3	111	2021-08-19 11:31:28	[Icons]
<input type="checkbox"/>	test	fsdfs	2021-08-19 11:37:03	[Icons]
<input type="checkbox"/>	test1	fsdfs	2021-08-19 17:41:49	[Icons]

**Step 2** Configure basic information of a protection group policy template.

To the lower right of the list, click **Add** to create a protection group policy template, as shown in [Figure 5-42](#).

Figure 5-42 Basic information of a protection group policy template

[Table 5-20](#) describes parameters for creating a protection group policy template.

Table 5-20 Parameters for creating a protection group policy template

Parameter	Description
Name	Name of the new protection group policy template. The name must be unique and must be a string of no more than 32 characters that can only be letters, digits, or underscores. For a custom template, the name cannot begin with an underscore (_).
Description	Description of a protection group policy template. It supports a maximum of 64 characters and cannot contain carriage returns or line breaks.
Template	Existing template out of which this new template is created. Either a default template or a custom one can be selected here.

**Step 3** Configure various protection policies for the protection group policy template.

Click **Next** to configure protection policies for this template.

For details about protection policies, see section [5.1.2 Policy Configuration for Protection Groups](#).

Figure 5-43 Configuring protection policies for a protection group policy template

The screenshot shows the 'Group Policy Templates' configuration window. The 'Description' field contains '111'. The 'DDOS [apitest3]' section includes a table for protection policies:

Anti-DDoS	Threshold 1	Threshold 2	Protection Enabled	Protection Algorithm
SYN Flood	2000 (pps)	32000 (pps)	Yes	1-SafeConnect
ACK Flood	8000 (pps)		Yes	
UDP Flood	3000 (pps)		Yes	
ICMP Flood	4000 (pps)		Yes	
Connection Exhaustion			No	
Traffic Control by Dst IP		1000 (kbps)	No	
Group Cleaning Capacity Control		1000 (kbps)	No	

Below this table are sections for 'Anomalous Packet Filtering Rules [apitest3]', 'Reflection Protection Policy [apitest3]', 'HTTP Keyword Checking Policy [apitest3]', and 'Port Check [apitest3]', each with 'Enable' options and 'Add rule' buttons.

**Step 4** Click Next to configure the blacklist.

You need to specify whether to enable the blacklist, block period, and whether to enable proxy monitoring. For details about the blacklist function, see section 5.2.9 Blacklist.

**Step 5** Click **Complete** to complete the configuration.

**Step 6** After the configuration, click **Apply** at the upper-right corner to commit the settings.

----End


### 5.1.3.2 Viewing a Protection Group Policy Template

On the protection group policy template list shown in Figure 5-41, click the name of a template to view its details.

After viewing template details, click **Back** to return to the **Group Policy Templates** page.

### 5.1.3.3 Editing a Protection Group Policy Template


You can edit the description and protection policies of a protection group policy template.

On the protection group policy template list shown in Figure 5-41, click  in the **Operation** column to reset protection policies and the blacklist of a protection group.

Edit protection policies on the new page, and click **Complete** to save the settings.

### 5.1.3.4 Deleting a Protection Group Policy Template

You can delete protection group policy templates one by one or in bulk on ADS.

- Method 1: On the protection group policy template list shown in Figure 5-41, click  in the **Operation** column of a template and click **OK** in the confirmation dialog box to delete it.

- Method 2: On the protection group policy template list shown in [Figure 5-41](#), select several templates (or select check boxes in the **Select All** column), click **Delete** to the lower right of the list, and then click **OK** in the confirmation dialog box to delete them.

## 5.1.4 Advanced Global Parameters

You can configure trust control parameters.

The procedure is as follows:

- Step 1** Choose **Policies > Anti-DDoS > Advanced Global Parameters**.
- Step 2** Click **Edit** and configure the length of time an IP address is trusted based on the protection algorithm on the page shown in [Figure 5-44](#).

Figure 5-44 Advanced Global Parameters page

Item	Value
Advanced Trust Time (min)	15
Normal Trust Time (min)	30

[Table 5-21](#) describes advanced global parameters.

Table 5-21 Advanced global parameters

Parameter	Description
Advanced Trust Time (min)	Specifies the time during which a source IP address authenticated with the advanced algorithm stays in the trust list. The value ranges from 1 to 3600, with <b>5</b> as the default.
Normal Trust Time (min)	Specifies the time during which a source IP address authenticated with the common algorithm stays in the trust list. The value ranges from 1 to 3600, with <b>30</b> as the default.

- Step 3** After the parameter configuration is complete, click **OK** to save the settings.

----End

## 5.1.5 Response Page Settings

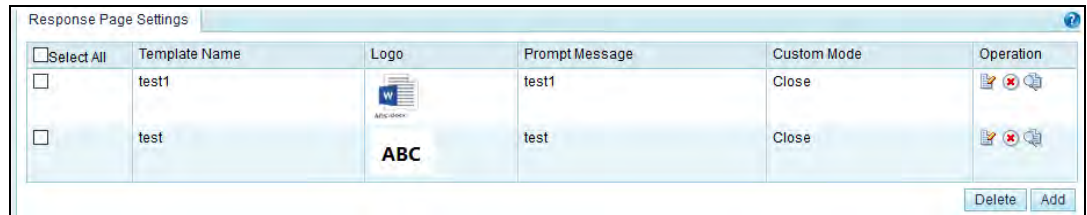
If **4-BMP image authentication** is specified as the algorithm for the HTTP protection policy and a template is specified, a client attempting to access a server through ADS needs to input a code for authentication in the automatically displayed response page. The client can access the server only after it is successfully authenticated. This section describes how to add, edit, delete, and preview response pages.

### 5.1.5.1 Creating a Response Page

To create a response page, perform the following steps:

- Step 1** Choose **Policies > Anti-DDoS > Response Page Settings**.

Figure 5-45 Response Page Settings tab page



**Step 2** Click **Add**.

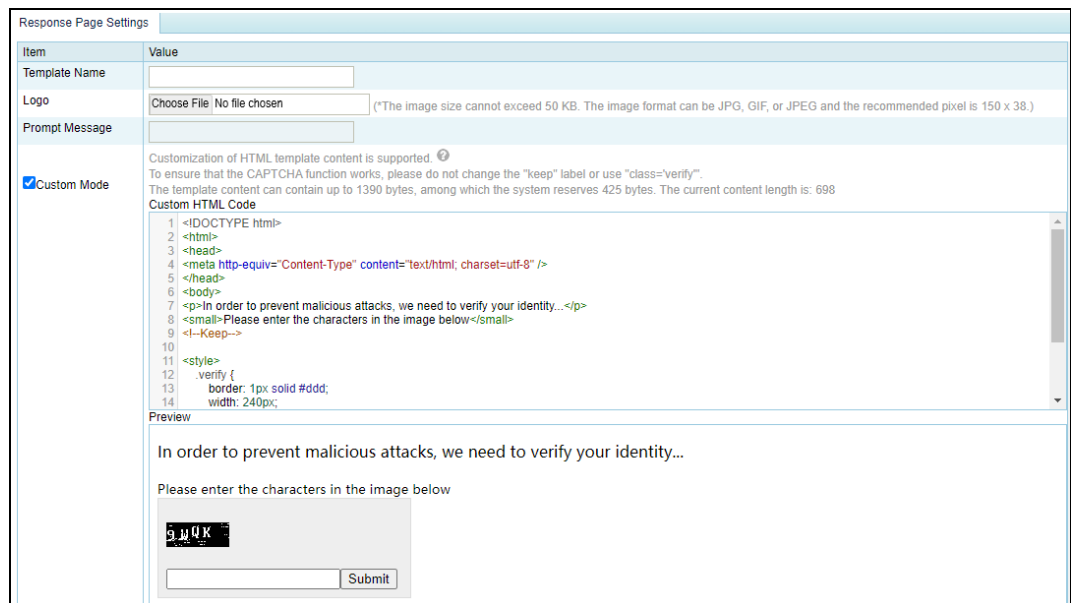
The **Response Page Settings** page appears, as shown in [Figure 5-46](#).

The response page can be displayed in either of the following modes:

- Common mode: By default, the response page is displayed in common mode.
- Custom mode: The response page is displayed in custom mode only after **Custom Mode** is selected.

Response page templates in different modes can coexist.

Figure 5-46 Response Page Settings page



[Table 5-22](#) describes parameters for creating a response page.

Table 5-22 Parameters for creating a response page


Parameter	Description
Template Name	Specifies the name of a response page.
Logo	Specifies the logo of a response page. The image can be in jpg, png, gif, or jpeg format and must be within 50 KB. A pixel size of 150*38 (unit: P) is recommended.

Parameter	Description
Prompt Message	Specifies the prompt message displayed under the logo.
Custom Mode	Allows users to modify the response page template by directly modifying the HTML code.

**Step 3** Click **Choose File** and select an image.

**Step 4** Configure parameters, and then click **OK**.

----End

 <b>Note</b>	A maximum of 64 response page templates can be added.
--	---

### 5.1.5.2 Editing a Response Page

You can edit an existing response page by performing the following steps:


**Step 1** On the page shown in [Figure 5-45](#), click  in the row of a response page.

**Step 2** Configure parameters of the response page, and then click **OK** to save settings and return to the response page list.

----End

### 5.1.5.3 Deleting Response Pages

You can delete one response page (using method 1) or multiple response pages (using method 2) in batches.

- Method 1: On the tab page shown in [Figure 5-45](#), click  in the **Operation** column of a response page and then click **OK** in the confirmation dialog box to delete the response page.
- Method 2: On the tab page shown in [Figure 5-45](#), select one or more response pages (or select the **Select All** check box to select all response pages), click **Delete** to the lower right of the list, and then click **OK** in the confirmation dialog box to delete the selected response pages.

### 5.1.5.4 Previewing a Response Page

After a response page is configured, you can perform the following steps to preview it:

**Step 1** On the page shown in [Figure 5-45](#), click  in the row of a response page.

Information on the previewed page can be viewed but cannot be edited.



Figure 5-47 Response page preview

Response Page Settings

test

Please enter the following verification information

**Step 2** Click **Back** to return to the response pages list.

----End

## 5.1.6 SSL Certificate Management

If the HTTPS application-layer protection policy is configured, an SSL certificate is required for ADS to decrypt HTTPS packets before matching packets with this policy. This section describes how to import and manage SSL certificates uploaded by users.

ADS provides the **nsfocus** certificate upon delivery. This certificate cannot be edited or deleted. You can add other certificates as required.

### 5.1.6.1 Adding an SSL Certificate

To add an SSL certificate, perform the following steps:

**Step 1** Choose **Policies > Anti-DDoS > SSL Certificate Mgmt.**

Figure 5-48 SSL certificate management

<input type="checkbox"/>	Certificate Name	Description	Operation
<input type="checkbox"/>	nsfocus	Default certificate	--

**Step 2** Click **Add**.

Figure 5-49 Adding an SSL certificate

Item	Value
Name	<input type="text"/>
SSL Certificate	<input type="button" value="Choose File"/> No file chosen (A file with the .crt extension in the PEM format)
SSL Private Key	<input type="button" value="Choose File"/> No file chosen (A file with the .key extension in the PEM format)
Key Password	<input type="text"/> (Leave it empty if no password is available.)
Description	<input type="text"/> Length is less than 256 characters.

Table 5-23 describes parameters of an SSL certificate.

Table 5-23 Parameters of an SSL certificate

Parameter	Description
Name	Name of the SSL certificate. The certificate name is at most 15-character long and can only contain digits, uppercase letters, and lowercase letters.
SSL Certificate	Click <b>Choose File</b> to select an SSL certificate file.
SSL Private Key	Click <b>Choose File</b> to select an SSL private key file.
Key Password	If a password is set for the private key of the SSL certificate to be imported, type the correct password; otherwise, leave it empty.
Description	Description of the SSL certificate.

**Step 3** Configure parameters and click **OK** to import the SSL certificate.

After the certificate is successfully imported, you can view it on the **SSL Certificate Mgmt** page.



Note

A certificate can be imported only once. A maximum of 20 different certificates are allowed here.

---End

### 5.1.6.2 Editing an SSL Certificate


To edit an SSL certificate, perform the following steps:

**Step 1** On the SSL certificate list shown in [Figure 5-48](#), click  in the **Operation** column of a certificate.

**Step 2** Edit parameters and click **OK** to save the settings and return to the SSL certificate list.

---End

### 5.1.6.3 Deleting an SSL Certificate

On the SSL certificate list shown in [Figure 5-48](#), click  in the **Operation** column of a certificate and click **OK** in the displayed confirmation dialog box to delete this certificate.

### 5.1.7 Mobile User-Agent Rules

Mobile user-agent rules are used to filter traffic of mobile applications. Packets that match such a user-agent rule are deemed as mobile traffic, or will be regarded as traffic of a PC.


You can create, modify, and delete mobile user-agent rules, but cannot delete rules that are being referenced. A maximum of 32 rules can be created. Two default built-in rules (default\_webapi and default\_webview) cannot be deleted. This section describes how to create a mobile user-agent rule.

To create a mobile user-agent rule, perform the following steps:

**Step 1** Choose **Policies > Anti-DDoS > Mobile Device User-Agent Rules**.

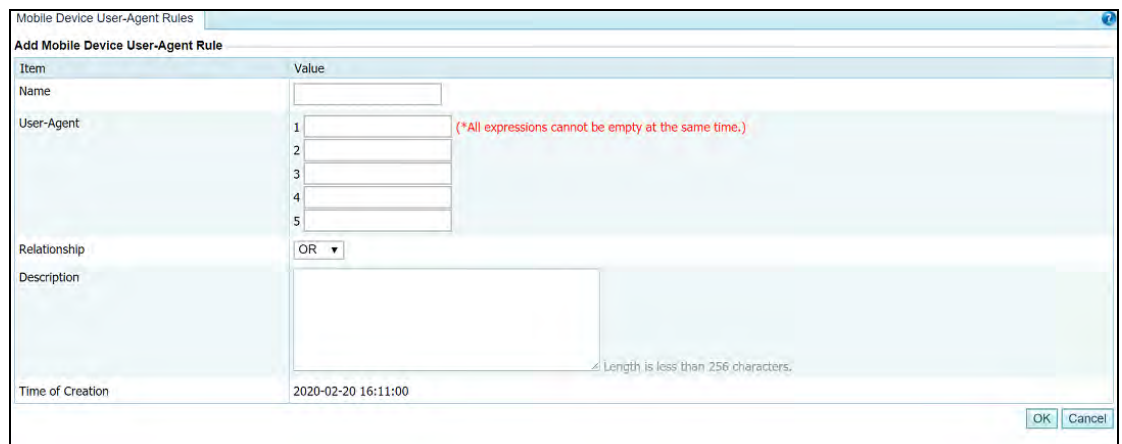
Figure 5-50 Mobile user-agent rules



<input type="checkbox"/>	Name	User-Agent String	Relationship	Description	Time of Creation	Operation
<input type="checkbox"/>	default_webapi	okhttp CFNetwork Dalvik	OR		2019-09-12 16:18:45	 
<input type="checkbox"/>	default_webview	Linux; Android iPhone iPad	OR		2019-09-10 16:44:13	 

**Step 2** Click **Add** to the lower right of the list.

Figure 5-51 Adding a mobile user-agent rule



Mobile Device User-Agent Rules

Add Mobile Device User-Agent Rule

Item	Value
Name	<input type="text"/>
User-Agent	1 <input type="text"/> (*All expressions cannot be empty at the same time.) 2 <input type="text"/> 3 <input type="text"/> 4 <input type="text"/> 5 <input type="text"/>
Relationship	OR
Description	<input type="text"/>
Time of Creation	2020-02-20 16:11:00

Length is less than 256 characters.

OK Cancel

[Table 5-24](#) describes parameters for adding a mobile user-agent rule.

Table 5-24 Parameters for adding a mobile user-agent rule

Parameter	Description
Name	Specifies the name of the mobile user-agent rule. It can contain a maximum of 20 characters.
User-Agent	Specifies one or more user-agent strings that need to be matched against the <b>User-Agent</b> field of packets. Packets that contain the <b>User-Agent</b> field matching a string specified here are regarded as mobile traffic, or will be deemed as traffic of PCs.  For each rule, at least one user-agent string should be configured and at most five can be typed here. Each string can contain a maximum of 100 characters.
Relationship	Specifies the relationship of user-agent strings. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>OR</b>: Packets that contain the <b>User-Agent</b> field matching one string specified here are regarded as mobile traffic.</li> <li>• <b>AND</b>: Packets that contain the <b>User-Agent</b> field matching all strings specified here are regarded as mobile traffic.</li> </ul>
Description	Indicates the description of the new rule. It can contain a maximum of 256 characters.

**Step 3** Configure parameters and click **OK** to complete the configuration.

---End

## 5.2 Access Control Policies

The system provides the access control list (ACL), blacklist, and whitelist functions to make certain specific applications more easily controlled. This section covers the following topics:

- [Access Control Rules](#)
- [Reflection Protection Rules](#)
- [GeoIP Rules](#)
- [Regular Expression Rules](#)
- [DNS Keyword Checking](#)
- [HTTP Keyword Checking](#)
- [Connection Exhaustion Protection Rules](#)
- [URL-ACL Protection Rules](#)
- [Blacklist](#)
- [Whitelist](#)

### 5.2.1 Access Control Rules

Access control rule allows ADS to control the traffic passing through it and determine how (allow, protect, or drop) to handle packets matching this rule via software based on the protocol, source/destination IP address, and source/destination port.

The system sorts all access control rules saved on the device according to the following principles. It matches packets passing through the device with access control rules in

sequence and stops the match once a matched rule is hit. You can also rearrange access control rules to adjust the rule matching sequence.

This section covers the following topics:

- [Creating an Access Control Rule](#)
- [Creating Access Control Rules in Batches](#)
- [Enabling/Disabling Access Control Rules](#)
- [Rearranging Access Control Rules](#)
- [Editing an Access Control Rule](#)
- [Deleting Access Control Rules](#)

### 5.2.1.1 Creating an Access Control Rule

To create an access control rule, perform the following steps:

**Step 1** Choose **Policies > Access Control > Access Control Rules**.

Initially, the rule list is empty.

Figure 5-52 List of access control rules

Destination IP	Dst IP Prefix Length/Netmask	Destination Port	Source IP	Src IP Prefix Length/Netmask	Source Port	Protocol	Access Control	Status	Description	Time of Creation	Operation
80.91.47.2	255.255.255.255		0.0.0.0	0.0.0.0		ALL	Drop	Disabled		2020-02-18 15:49:08	[Enable] [Disable] [Delete] [Add] [Import]

**Step 2** Click **Add**.

Figure 5-53 Creating an access control rule

Item	Value	Invert
Protocol	ALL	
Enable	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Yes <input type="radio"/> No	
Destination IP		
Dst IP Prefix Length/Netmask	255.255.255.255	
Source IP		<input type="radio"/> Yes <input checked="" type="radio"/> No
Src IP Prefix Length/Netmask	255.255.255.255	
Access Policy	Accept	
Description		
Time of Creation	2021-08-25 17:29:29	

Table 5-25 describes parameters for creating an access control rule.

Table 5-25 Parameters for creating an access control rule

Parameter	Description
Protocol	Protocol that a packet uses. Five values are available: <b>TCP</b> , <b>UDP</b> , <b>ICMP</b> , <b>ICMPv6</b> , and <b>All</b> . <b>All</b> means all the four protocols.

Parameter	Description
Enable	Controls whether to enable the access control rule. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Yes</b>: enables the rule.</li> <li>• <b>No</b>: disables the rule.</li> </ul>
Destination IP	IP address of the server to be protected. You can type an IPv4 or IPv6 address according to the actual network deployment. The value <b>0.0.0.0</b> indicates all destination IP addresses.
Dst IP Prefix/Netmask	Prefix length (for the IPv6 protocol) or netmask (for the IPv4 protocol) of the destination IP address.
Destination Port	Server port to be protected. This parameter is available only when <b>Protocol</b> is set to <b>TCP</b> or <b>UDP</b> . You can specify a port ranging from 0 to 65535.
Source IP	Client IP address to be protected. You can type IPv4 or IPv6 addresses according to the actual network deployment.
Src IP Prefix Length/Netmask	Prefix length (for the IPv6 protocol) or netmask (for the IPv4 protocol) of the client IP address.
Source Port	Source port to be protected against. This parameter is available only when <b>Protocol</b> is set to <b>TCP</b> or <b>UDP</b> . You can specify a port ranging from 0 to 65535. If this parameter is not specified, the ADS device enables the access control policy for all connections of the source IP address.
Access Policy	Action performed by the ADS device on packets with specified signatures. It has the following options: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Accept</b>: allows such packets to pass through.</li> <li>• <b>Drop</b>: drops the packets once they are detected.</li> <li>• <b>Filter</b>: enables a protection policy when the packets pass through the device.</li> </ul>
Description	Presents description of the rule, which cannot contain more than 256 characters.
Time of Creation	Time generated by the system on the creation of the rule. It cannot be edited.
Invert	Controls whether to invert the operation. The value <b>Yes</b> indicates the ADS device inverts the parameter setting. For example, if you invert the source IP address 192.168.7.21, all IP addresses except 192.168.7.21 will be protected against.

**Step 3** Set parameters and click **OK** to save the settings.

---End

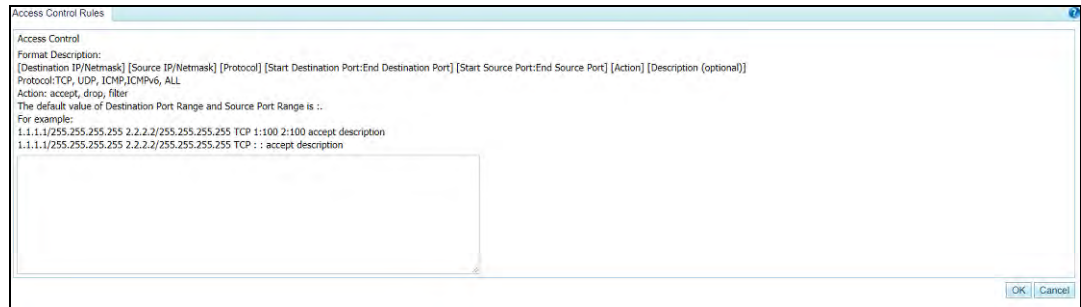
### 5.2.1.2 Creating Access Control Rules in Batches

You can create access control rules in batches on the ADS device by performing the following steps:

**Step 1** Choose **Policies > Access Control > Access Control Rules**.

**Step 2** Click **Import**.

Figure 5-54 Creating access control rules in batches



**Step 3** Type multiple access control rules as prompted.

Pay attention to the following format specifications:

- [destination IP/netmask] [source IP/subnet mask] [protocol] [start of destination port:end of destination port] [start of source port:end of source port] [action]
- Protocol: **TCP, UDP, ICMP, ICMPv6, and All.**
- Action: **Allow, Drop, and Protect.**
- If the value range of **Destination Port** and **Source Port** is not defined, the semicolon (;) is used to replace their values by default.



Note

The ADS device supports the IPv4/IPv6 dual-stack. Therefore, you can configure either IPv4 addresses or IPv6 addresses in access control rules.

**Step 4** After the parameter configuration is complete, click **OK** to save the settings.

----End

### 5.2.1.3 Enabling/Disabling Access Control Rules

The ADS system can control the data passing through the device only based on enabled access control rules. Disabled access control rules are invalid.

The ADS device allows the administrator to enable or disable access control rules in batches, thereby avoiding frequent deletions and additions. If some access control rules are not required currently, you can disable them.

On the **Access Control Rules** page, **Status** is **Enabled** for enabled rules and **Disabled** for disabled rules.

### Enabling Access Control Rules

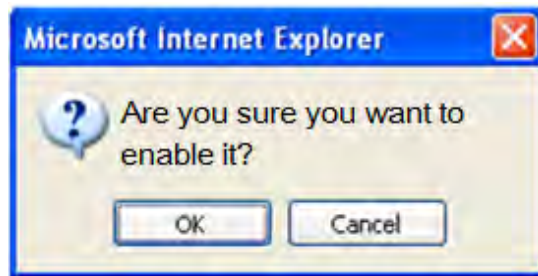
To enable access control rules, perform the following steps:

**Step 1** Choose **Policies > Access Control > Access Control Rules**.

**Step 2** Select one or more disabled access control rules (select the **Select All** check box to select all rules) and click **Enable**.

A dialog box appears, as shown in [Figure 5-55](#).

Figure 5-55 Enabling access control rules



**Step 3** Click **OK** to enable the selected rules.

Then, the ADS device can control the data passing through it based on such rules.

---End

## Disabling Access Control Rules

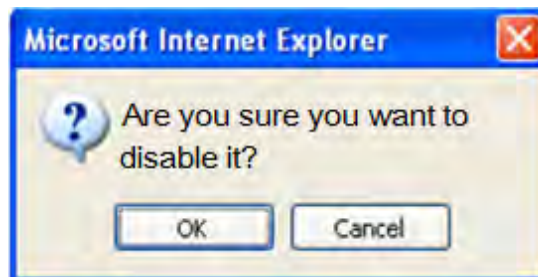
To disable access control rules, perform the following steps:

**Step 1** Choose **Policies > Access Control > Access Control Rules**.

**Step 2** Select one or more enabled access control rules (select the **Select All** check box to select all rules) and click **Disable**.

The following dialog box appears, as shown in [Figure 5-56](#).

Figure 5-56 Confirmation dialog box



**Step 3** Click **OK** to disable the selected rules.

Then, the ADS device allows the data matching the rules to pass through.

---End

### 5.2.1.4 Rearranging Access Control Rules





Access control rules are matched in a top-down manner. If multiple access control rules are available, you can rearrange the rules to change the rule matching sequence. As rules with the following settings have the highest priority, they are always at the top of the rule list and cannot be moved:



- The destination IP address is 0.0.0.0 (indicating that all destination IP addresses) and both the source port and destination port are empty.
- The destination IP address is 0.0.0.0 (indicating that all destination IP addresses) and either the source port or destination port is empty.
- The destination IP address is not 0.0.0.0 and both the source port and destination port are empty.
- The destination IP address is not 0.0.0.0 and either the source port or destination port is empty.

Rules that can be moved have lower priorities than the preceding rules and therefore are after those rules.


You can click buttons in the **Operation** column to move access control rules:

- Click  to move a rule one place up.
- Click  to move a rule one place down.
- Click  to move a rule to the top of the list, i.e. after rules with the highest priority.
- Click  to move a rule to the bottom of the list.

### 5.2.1.5 Editing an Access Control Rule

After configuring access control rules, you can edit rule parameters by performing the following steps:

**Step 1** Choose **Policies > Access Control > Access Control Rules**.


**Step 2** Click  to edit rule parameters.

**Step 3** After editing parameters, click **OK** to save settings and return to the access control rule list.

----End

### 5.2.1.6 Deleting Access Control Rules

You can delete one access control rule or multiple rules in batches on the ADS device by using the following methods:

- Method 1: Choose **Policies > Access Control > Access Control Rules**. Click  in the **Operation** column of a rule and click **OK** in the confirmation dialog box to delete this rule.
- Method 2: Choose **Policies > Access Control > Access Control Rules**. Select one or more access control rules (or select the **Select All** check box to select all rules) to be deleted, click **Delete** to the lower right of the rule list, and then click **OK** in the confirmation dialog box to delete the selected rules.



Frequently adding or deleting access control rules is not advised. If an access control rule is not useful currently, disable it.

## 5.2.2 Reflection Protection Rules

A reflection protection rule is a software means through which ADS protect against reflection attack traffic passing through it. Specifically, ADS matches packets against such a rule based on the protocol, source port, and other signatures and handles (such as dropping, dropping and adding to the black list, or limiting the rate) matching packets as indicated in the rule.

All reflection protection rules saved on the device are automatically sorted. The system matches packets passing through the device with reflection protection rules referenced in the policy in sequence. Once a rule is hit, the system stops the match.

You can create a maximum of 32 reflection protection rules.

This section covers the following topics:

- [Creating a Reflection Protection Rule](#)
- [Editing a Reflection Protection Rule](#)
- [Deleting Reflection Protection Rules](#)

### 5.2.2.1 Creating a Reflection Protection Rule

**Step 1** Choose **Policies > Access Control > Access Control Rules**.

The reflection protection rule list is displayed, as shown in [Figure 5-57](#).

Initially, the list provides six predefined rules: Jenkins, WSDD, COAP, ARMS, CHARGEN, SSDP, NTP, DNS, SNMP, MS SQL, Memcache, and CLDAP.

Figure 5-57 Reflection protection rules

<input type="checkbox"/>	Name	Protocol	Source Port	Action	Description	Time of Creation	Operation
<input type="checkbox"/>	Jenkins	UDP	33848	Drop and add to blacklist		2021-04-15 15:10:19	
<input type="checkbox"/>	SNMP	UDP	161	Drop			
<input type="checkbox"/>	WSDD	UDP	3702	Drop and add to blacklist		2021-04-15 15:10:26	
<input type="checkbox"/>	reflection_filter3	UDP	165	Drop	reflection_filter3	2017-09-23 14:02:29	
<input type="checkbox"/>	SSDP	UDP	1900	Drop			
<input type="checkbox"/>	COAP	UDP	5683	Drop			
<input type="checkbox"/>	DNS	UDP	53	Drop			
<input type="checkbox"/>	MsSql	UDP	1434	Drop			
<input type="checkbox"/>	Memcache	UDP	11211	Drop			
<input type="checkbox"/>	NTP	UDP	123	Drop			
<input type="checkbox"/>	CharGen	UDP	19	Drop			
<input type="checkbox"/>	ARMS	UDP	3283	Drop			
<input type="checkbox"/>	CLDAP	UDP	389	Drop and add to blacklist		2021-04-21 10:05:50	

**Step 2** Click **Add**.

A dialog box for creating a reflection protection rule appears, as shown in [Figure 5-58](#).

Figure 5-58 Creating a reflection protection rule

Table 5-26 describes parameters for creating a reflection protection rule.

Table 5-26 Parameters of a reflection protection rule


Parameter	Description
Name	Name of the reflection protection rule. The name must be unique.
Protocol	Protection type. The only value is <b>UDP</b> .
Source Port	Source port of the client to be protected against. You can click the drop-down box to select a port number.
Action	Action taken on packets passing through ADS: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Drop</b>: drops such packets.</li> <li>• <b>Drop and add to blacklist</b>: drops such packets and adds their source IP addresses to the blacklist. Before selecting this option, you must enable the blacklist. For details on the blacklist, see section <a href="#">5.2.9 Blacklist</a></li> <li>• <b>Limit rate</b>: indicates that the maximum number of packets matching this rule that are allowed to pass through per second should not exceed the threshold specified here. Excess packets will be dropped. The value range is 1–65535 pps, with <b>1000</b> as the default value.</li> </ul>
Description	Presents description of the new rule, which can contain a maximum of 256 characters.
Time of Creation	Indicates the time automatically generated by the system on the creation of the new rule. It cannot be edited.

**Step 3** Configure parameters and click **OK** to save the settings.

----End

### 5.2.2.2 Editing a Reflection Protection Rule

All reflection protection rules can be edited.


**Step 1** On the page shown in [Figure 5-57](#), click  in the **Operation** column of a reflection protection rule to edit parameters of this rule.

**Step 2** Edit parameter settings and click **OK** to save the changes and return to the reflection protection rule list.

----End

### 5.2.2.3 Deleting Reflection Protection Rules

You can delete one reflection protection rule or delete rules in batches.

Method 1: On the page shown in [Figure 5-57](#), click  in the **Operation** column of a reflection protection rule click **OK** in the confirmation dialog box to delete this rule.

Method 2: On the page shown in [Figure 5-57](#), select one or more reflection protection rules (or select the check box in the table header to select all rules), click **Delete** to the lower right of the list, and click **OK** in the confirmation dialog box to delete the selected rules.

## 5.2.3 GeoIP Rules

The GeoIP library provides mappings between IP addresses and countries. After importing a GeoIP library and configuring a GeoIP rule, you enable ADS to control traffic from certain IP addresses based on geographic locations. In addition, you can configure ADS to take an action (allow, protect, or drop) against packets that are found to match the rule based on the destination IP address and source country.

All GeoIP rules saved on the device are automatically sorted. When a packet reaches ADS, the system matches the packet against GeoIP rules in sequence from the first to the last. After the packet triggers a rule, the system takes the action specified in the rule and stops matching it against other GeoIP rules. GeoIP rules are sorted according to the following principles:

- Rules are automatically sorted in descending order of priority.
- When IPv4 addresses are involved, the rule with the destination IP address of 0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0 and rules with the netmask of less than 24 bits are all high-priority rules.
- When IPv6 addresses are involved, rules with the prefix of the destination IP address less than 120 bits are high-priority rules.

You can create a maximum of 128 GeoIP rules.

This section covers the following topics:

- [Creating a GeoIP Rule](#)
- [Configuring a GeoIP Library](#)

### 5.2.3.1 Creating a GeoIP Rule



Initially, the GeoIP rule list is empty. You can create, enable, disable, edit, or delete a GeoIP rule. The procedures are the same as those for access control rules. For details, see related descriptions in section [5.2.1 Access Control Rules](#).

To create a GeoIP rule, perform the following steps:

**Step 1** Choose **Policies > Access Control > GeoIP Rules**.

The **GeoIP Rules** page appears, as shown in [Figure 5-59](#).

Figure 5-59 List of GeoIP rules

GeoIP Rules		GeoIP Library						
<input type="checkbox"/>	Destination IP	Dst IP Prefix Length/Netmask	Source Country/Region	Access Control	Status	Description	Time of Creation	Operation
<input type="checkbox"/>	1.1.1.1	255.255.255.255	Andorra	Allow	Enabled		2019-02-22 16:42:48	 
								<input type="button" value="Enable"/> <input type="button" value="Disable"/> <input type="button" value="Delete"/> <input type="button" value="Add"/>

**Step 2** Click **Add** to the lower right of the list.

Figure 5-60 Creating a GeoIP rule

Item	Value	Invert
Enable	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Yes <input type="radio"/> No	
Destination IP	<input type="text"/>	
Dst IP Prefix Length/Netmask	255.255.255.255	
Source Country/Region	AD, Andorra	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Yes <input type="radio"/> No
Access Policy	Allow	
Description	<input type="text"/>	
Time of Creation	2019-02-22 16:44:11	

**Step 3** On the **Add GeoIP Rule** page, configure parameters.

Table 5-27 Parameters for creating a GeoIP rule

Parameter	Description
Enable	Controls whether to enable the new GeoIP rule. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Yes:</b> enables the new rule.</li> <li><b>No:</b> disables the new rule.</li> </ul>
Destination IP	Specifies the IP address of the server under protection. You can type an IPv4 or IPv6 address as required.
Dst IP Prefix Length/Netmask	Specifies the prefix length (for IPv6 address) or netmask (for IPv4 address) of the destination IP address.
Source Country/Region	Specifies the country or region to which source IP addresses belong.
Access Policy	Specifies the action to be taken against packets that match this rule. It can be any of the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Accept:</b> allows such packets to pass through ADS.</li> <li><b>Drop:</b> drops such packets.</li> <li><b>Filter:</b> does not take any action against such packets at this step, but will still check them against other protection rules.</li> <li><b>Limit rate:</b> specifies the maximum rate allowed for an IP address in the source country or region to transmit traffic to the destination IP address.</li> </ul>
Description	Presents description of the new rule, which cannot contain more than 256 characters.
Time of Creation	Indicates the time automatically generated by the system on the creation of the new rule. It cannot be edited.
Invert	Controls whether to invert the setting. <b>Yes</b> indicates that the setting will be inverted and <b>No</b> indicates the opposite.

**Step 4** Click **OK** to save the settings.

---End

### 5.2.3.2 Configuring a GeoIP Library

You can update the GeoIP library by importing a new one, or type an IP address and check the country to which it belongs.

#### Importing a GeoIP Library

The GeoIP library supports both IPv4 and IPv6 addresses. When importing a GeoIP library, you must select the file type, which must be **.zip**. The file to be imported cannot exceed 20 MB.

To import a GeoIP library, perform the following steps:

**Step 1** Choose **Policies > Access Control > GeoIP Rules > GeoIP Library**.

Figure 5-61 Viewing the GeoIP library

GeoIP Library Information	
Version	version_1.1.1200
Update Time	2019-11-16 11:08:40
GeoIP Library Update	<input type="button" value="Choose File"/> <input type="text" value="No file chosen"/> <input type="button" value="Import"/>
Query of Country/Region of IP	
IP	<input type="text"/> <input type="button" value="Search"/>
Item	Value

**Step 2** Import a GeoIP library.

- a. Select an IP protocol, click **Choose File**, and then select a file to be imported.
- b. Click **Import** to import the GeoIP library.

After the successful import, the version and update information are displayed in the **GeoIP Library Information** area. The new library, after being imported, can take effect immediately. However, if ADS is restarted or powered off, library information is lost. To save it as a permanently effective database, you must click **Save** in the upper-right corner after importing the file.

---End

#### Querying from the GeoIP Library

From the GeoIP library, you can query the country to which an IP address belongs.

On the page shown in [Figure 5-61](#), you can type an IP address (IPv4 or IPv6) in the **IP** text box and then click **Search** to query the country where it is located.

## 5.2.4 Regular Expression Rules

Regular expression rules are available for the ADS device to control, via software, the traffic passing through it. ADS can determine how to process (allow, drop, drop and add to blacklist, drop and disconnect, or limit the rate) packets matching such a rule based on signatures such as the regular expression, offset, depth, and minimum payload length.

A maximum of 32 regular expression rules can be configured. The system matches packets passing through the device with regular expression rules in sequence and stops the match once a matched rule is hit.

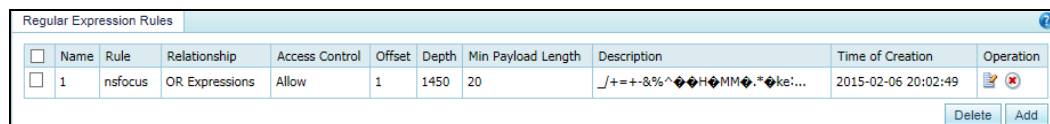
A regular expression rule can be added, edited, and deleted. This document describes only how to add such a rule, as methods for editing and deleting a regular expression rule are the same as those for access control rules.

To create a regular expression rule, perform the following steps:

**Step 1** Choose **Policies > Access Control > Regular Expression Rules**.

Initially, the rule list is empty.

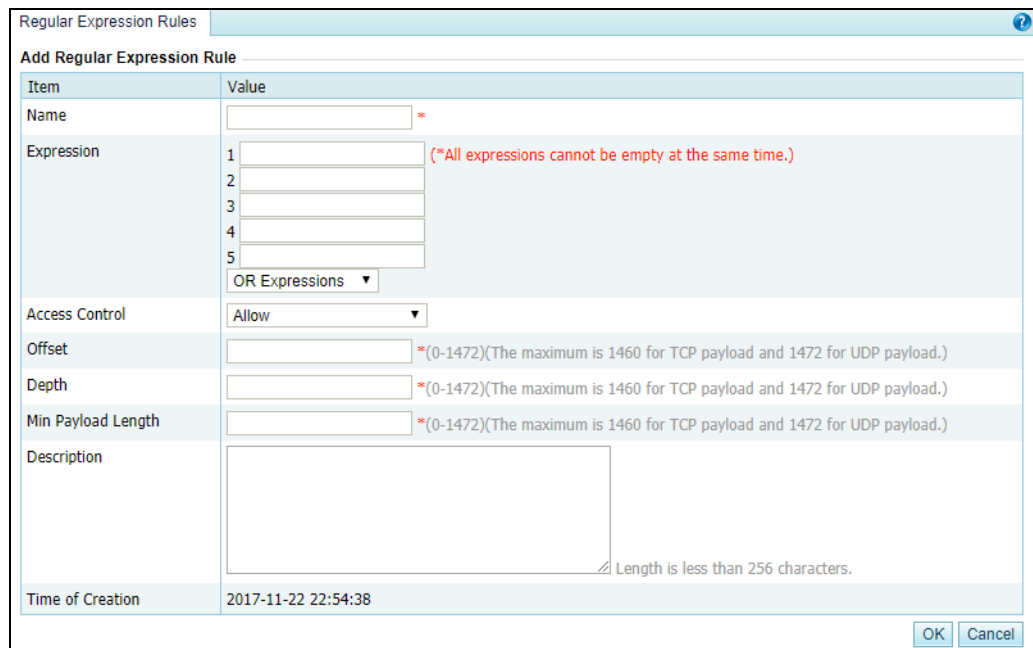
Figure 5-62 List of regular expression rules



<input type="checkbox"/>	Name	Rule	Relationship	Access Control	Offset	Depth	Min Payload Length	Description	Time of Creation	Operation
<input type="checkbox"/>	1	nsfocus	OR Expressions	Allow	1	1450	20	./+++&%^...HMM...*ke:...	2015-02-06 20:02:49	

**Step 2** Click **Add**.

Figure 5-63 Creating a regular expression rule



Regular Expression Rules

**Add Regular Expression Rule**

Item	Value
Name	<input type="text"/> *
Expression	1 <input type="text"/> (*All expressions cannot be empty at the same time.) 2 <input type="text"/> 3 <input type="text"/> 4 <input type="text"/> 5 <input type="text"/> OR Expressions ▾
Access Control	Allow ▾
Offset	<input type="text"/> *(0-1472)(The maximum is 1460 for TCP payload and 1472 for UDP payload.)
Depth	<input type="text"/> *(0-1472)(The maximum is 1460 for TCP payload and 1472 for UDP payload.)
Min Payload Length	<input type="text"/> *(0-1472)(The maximum is 1460 for TCP payload and 1472 for UDP payload.)
Description	<input type="text"/> Length is less than 256 characters.
Time of Creation	2017-11-22 22:54:38

OK Cancel

Table 5-28 describes parameters for creating a regular expression rule.

Table 5-28 Parameters for creating a regular expression rule

Parameter	Description
Name	Unique name of the regular expression rule.
Expression	Expressions for the rule. You can enter a maximum of five expressions and then select <b>OR Expressions</b> or <b>AND Expressions</b> .
Access Control	Specifies the action the ADS device takes for packets with specified signatures. It has the following values: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Accept</b>: allows such packets to pass through.</li> <li>• <b>Drop</b>: drops such packets once they are detected.</li> <li>• <b>Drop and add to blacklist</b>: drops such packets and adds their source IP addresses to the blacklist. Before selecting this option, you must enable the blacklist. For details on the blacklist, see section <a href="#">5.2.9 Blacklist</a>.</li> <li>• <b>Drop and disconnect</b>: drops such packets and disconnects the connection to their destination IP addresses.</li> <li>• <b>Limit rate</b>: indicates that the maximum number of packets matching this rule that are allowed to pass through per second should not exceed the threshold specified here. Excess packets will be dropped. The value range is 1–6000000 pps, with <b>4000</b> as the default value.</li> </ul>
Offset	Payload offset, counted from the first byte in the payload field of a TCP packet.
Depth	Specifies how deep the rule is matched. It is expressed in bytes.
Min Payload Length	Length of the payload below which the packet is not matched with regular expression rules. This does not affect subsequent protection actions.
Description	Presents description of the rule, which cannot contain more than 256 characters.
Time of Creation	Time automatically generated by the system on the creation of the rule. It cannot be edited.

**Step 3** Set parameters and click **OK** to save the settings.

----End

## 5.2.5 DNS Keyword Checking

DNS keyword checking is a process by which ADS controls, via software, DNS traffic flowing through the ADS device. In addition, ADS specifies the method (allow, drop, add to blacklist, add to whitelist, or limit the rate) of processing data packets flowing through the device that match the DNS keyword checking rule based on source IP addresses and specific DNS fields. DNS keyword checking blocks traffic from illegitimate users, but does not indiscriminately block all packets from a source IP address. This reduces the possibility of blocking legitimate IP addresses.

You can configure up to 32 DNS keyword checking rules, which can take effect only after being referenced in a group protection policy. When a packet reaches ADS, the system matches the packet against DNS keyword checking rules in sequence. Once the packet hits a rule, the system takes the action specified in the rule and stops matching the packet against other rules.



A DNS keyword checking rule can be added, edited, and deleted. This document describes only how to add such a rule, as methods for editing and deleting DNS keyword checking rules are the same as those for access control rules.

To create a DNS keyword checking rule, perform the following steps:

**Step 1** Choose **Policies > Access Control > DNS Keyword Checking**.

Initially, the rule list is empty.

Figure 5-64 List of DNS keyword checking rules

<input type="checkbox"/>	Name	Source IP	Netmask	Feature Field	Action	Description	Time of Creation	Operation
<input type="checkbox"/>	test	190.1.1.1	255.255.255.255	DNS Flags:0100	Drop	test	2017-05-26 15:27:08	

**Step 2** Click **Add**.

Figure 5-65 Creating a DNS keyword checking rule

Table 5-29 describes parameters for creating a DNS keyword checking rule.

Table 5-29 Parameters of a DNS keyword checking rule

Parameter	Description
Name	Name of the DNS keyword checking rule, containing 1–20 characters of letters, digits, and/or underscores.
Source IP	Specifies the source IP address. Both IPv4 and IPv6 are supported. The value <b>0.0.0.0</b> or <b>::</b> indicates all source IP addresses.
Netmask	Specifies the netmask of the source IP address.
Keyword Type	Specifies what kind of packets will be checked. Options include <b>Query keyword</b> and <b>Response keyword</b> .
Keyword	Specifies the type of keywords to be checked. You can select one or more.

Parameter	Description
Action	<p>Specifies the action to be taken against a packet that matches a DNS keyword checking rule. It can be any of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Accept:</b> indicates that a packet with the specified signature will be allowed through ADS and, after that, will not be checked against any pattern matching rules.</li> <li>• <b>Drop:</b> indicates that ADS drops a packet with the specified signature.</li> <li>• <b>Drop+Blacklist:</b> indicates that ADS drops a packet with the specified signature and adds its source IP address to the blacklist. To select this option, you must enable the blacklist function in advance. For details about this function, see section <a href="#">5.2.9 Blacklist</a>.</li> <li>• <b>Accept+Whitelist:</b> indicates that ADS allows a packet with the specified signature to pass through and adds its IP address to the whitelist. To select this option, you must enable the whitelist function in advance. For details about this function, see section <a href="#">5.2.10 Whitelist</a>.</li> <li>• <b>Limit rate:</b> indicates that the maximum number of packets matching this rule that are allowed to pass through per second should not exceed the threshold specified here. Excess packets will be dropped. The value range is 1–6000000 pps, with <b>4000</b> as the default value.</li> </ul>
Description	Presents description of the rule, which cannot contain more than 256 characters.
Time of Creation	Time automatically generated by the system on the creation of the rule. It cannot be edited.

**Step 3** Set parameters and click **OK** to save the settings.

----End

## 5.2.6 HTTP Keyword Checking

HTTP keyword checking is a process by which ADS software controls HTTP traffic flowing through the ADS device. In addition, ADS specifies the method (allow, drop, disconnect, add to blacklist, add to whitelist, or limit the rate) of processing data packets flowing through the device that match the HTTP keyword checking rule based on source IP addresses and specific HTTP fields. HTTP keyword checking blocks traffic from illegitimate users, but does not indiscriminately block all packets from a source IP address. This reduces the possibility of blocking legitimate IP addresses.

You can configure up to 32 HTTP keyword checking rules, which can take effect only after being referenced in a group protection policy or default protection policy. When a packet reaches ADS, the system matches the packet against HTTP keyword checking rules in sequence. Once the packet hits a rule, the system takes the action specified in the rule and stops matching the packet against other rules.



An HTTP keyword checking rule can be added, edited, and deleted. This document describes only how to add such a rule, as methods for editing and deleting HTTP keyword checking rules are the same as those for access control rules.

To create an HTTP keyword checking rule, perform the following steps:

**Step 1** Choose **Policies > Access Control > HTTP Keyword Checking**.

Initially, the rule list is empty.

Figure 5-66 List of HTTP keyword checking rules

<input type="checkbox"/>	Name	Source IP	Netmask	Feature Field	Action	Description	Time of Creation	Operation
<input type="checkbox"/>	test	190.1.1.1	255.255.255.255	Method:get	Drop	test	2017-06-05 17:07:37	 

**Step 2 Click Add.**

Figure 5-67 Creating an HTTP keyword checking rule

Item	Value
Name	<input type="text"/>
Source IP	<input type="text"/>
Netmask	<input type="text" value="255.255.255.255"/>
Keyword	<input type="checkbox"/> Method <input type="text" value="Get"/> <input type="checkbox"/> Cookie <input type="text"/> <input type="checkbox"/> Host <input type="text"/> <input type="checkbox"/> Referer <input type="text"/> <input type="checkbox"/> Request Url <input type="text"/> <input type="checkbox"/> Version <input type="text"/> <input type="checkbox"/> User Agent <input type="text"/> <input type="checkbox"/> x-forwarded-for <input type="text"/>
Action	<input type="text" value="Drop"/>
Description	<input type="text"/>
Time of Creation	2021-01-19 15:24:04

Table 5-30 describes parameters for creating an HTTP keyword checking rule.

Table 5-30 Parameters of an HTTP keyword checking rule

Parameter	Description
Name	Name of the HTTP keyword checking rule, containing 1–20 characters of letters, digits, and/or underscores.
Source IP	Specifies the source IP address. Both IPv4 and IPv6 are supported. The value <b>0.0.0.0</b> or <b>::</b> indicates all source IP addresses.
Netmask	Specifies the netmask of the source IP address.
Keyword	Specifies the type of keywords to be checked. You can select one or more.
Action	Specifies the action to be taken against a packet that matches an HTTP keyword checking rule. It can be any of the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Accept:</b> indicates that a packet with the specified signature will be allowed through ADS.</li> <li><b>Drop:</b> indicates that ADS drops a packet with the specified signature.</li> <li><b>Drop+Blacklist:</b> indicates that ADS drops a packet with the specified signature and adds its source IP address to the blacklist. To select this option, you must enable the blacklist function in advance. For details about this function, see</li> </ul>

Parameter	Description
	<p>section <a href="#">5.2.9 Blacklist</a>.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Drop+Disconnect:</b> indicates ADS drops a packet with the specified signature and disconnects the current connection.</li> <li>• <b>Drop+Blacklist+Disconnect:</b> indicates that ADS drops a packet with the specified signature, disconnects the current connection, and adds its source IP address to the blacklist. To select this option, you must enable the blacklist function in advance.</li> <li>• <b>Accept+Whitelist:</b> indicates that ADS allows a packet with the specified signature to pass through and adds its source IP address to the whitelist. To select this option, you must enable the whitelist function in advance. For details about this function, see section <a href="#">5.2.10 Whitelist</a>.</li> <li>• <b>Limit rate:</b> indicates that the maximum number of packets matching this rule that are allowed to pass through per second should not exceed the threshold specified here. Excess packets will be dropped. The value range is 1-6000000 pps, with <b>4000</b> as the default value.</li> </ul>
Description	Presents description of the rule, which cannot contain more than 256 characters.
Time of Creation	Time automatically generated by the system on the creation of the rule. It cannot be edited.

**Step 3** Set parameters and click **OK** to save the settings.

----End

## 5.2.7 Connection Exhaustion Protection Rules

A connection exhaustion protection rule protects against connection exhaustion attacks by restricting the number of IP connections in a specified network segment. You can create a maximum of 128 connection exhaustion protection rules.

This section covers the following topics:

- [Creating a Connection Exhaustion Protection Rule](#)
- [Editing a Connection Exhaustion Rule](#)
- [Deleting Connection Exhaustion Rules](#)



### 5.2.7.1 Creating a Connection Exhaustion Protection Rule

To create a connection exhaustion protection rule, perform the following steps:

**Step 1** Choose **Policies > Access Control > Connection Exhaustion Rules**.

Initially, the rule list is empty.

Figure 5-68 List of connection exhaustion rules

Connection Exhaustion Rules											
<input type="checkbox"/>	Destination IP	Dst IP Prefix Length/Netmask	Destination Port	Source IP	Src IP Prefix Length/Netmask	Concurrent Connections	New Connection Statistical Cycle	New Connections	Description	Time of Creation	Operation
<input type="checkbox"/>	100.1.1.1	255.255.255.255	0	21.1.1.1	255.255.255.255	24	3	12	test	2017-06-05 17:09:08	 

Delete Add

**Step 2** Click Add.

Figure 5-69 Creating a connection exhaustion rule

Item	Value
Destination IP	<input type="text"/>
Dst IP Prefix Length/Netmask	255.255.255.255
Destination Port	<input type="text" value="0"/>
Source IP	<input type="text" value="0.0.0.0"/> Match any source IP when the source IP is 0.0.0.0.
Src IP Prefix Length/Netmask	<input type="text" value="0.0.0.0"/>
Concurrent Connections	<input type="text" value="24"/> (1~65)
New Connection Statistical Cycle	<input type="text" value="3"/> (1~300 second)
New Connections	<input type="text" value="12"/> (1~10000)
Description	<input type="text"/> Length is less than 256 characters.
Time of Creation	2019-02-25 08:48:35

**Note**

A maximum of 128 connection exhaustion rules can be added.

A connection exhaustion rule can take effect only when connection exhaustion is enabled in a protection group policy or default protection policy. Meanwhile, the blacklist function must be enabled for the use of connection exhaustion rules.

Table 5-31 describes parameters for creating a connection exhaustion rule.

Table 5-31 Parameters for creating a connection exhaustion rule

Parameter	Description
Destination IP	IP address of the server to be protected. You can type an IPv4 or IPv6 address according to the actual network deployment.
Dst IP Prefix Length/Netmask	Prefix length (for the IPv6 protocol) or netmask (for the IPv4 protocol) of the IP address of the server to be protected.
Destination Port	Server ports to be protected. The port number ranges from 0 to 65535.
Source IP	Client IP address to be protected. You can type IPv4 or IPv6 addresses according to the actual network deployment. The value <b>0.0.0.0</b> or <b>::</b> indicates that this rule matches packets with any source IP addresses.
Src IP Prefix Length/Netmask	Prefix length (for the IPv6 protocol) or netmask (for the IPv4 protocol) of the client IP address.
Concurrent Connections	Threshold of allowed concurrent connections from a source IP address. If this threshold is exceeded, the system considers the source IP address abnormal and adds it to the blacklist. The value ranges from 1 to 65. <b>65</b> indicates no protection.

Parameter	Description
New Connection Statistical Cycle	Period during which new connections from the source IP address to the destination (IP address and port) are counted. The value ranges from 1 to 300 seconds.
New Connections	Threshold of allowed new connections from a source IP address within the specified statistical cycle. If this threshold is exceeded, the system considers the source IP address abnormal and adds it to the blacklist. The value ranges from 1 to 10000.  Setting the source IP address and netmask to 0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0 indicates all source IP addresses.
Description	Presents description of the rule, which cannot contain more than 256 characters.
Time of Creation	Time automatically generated by the system on the creation of the rule. It cannot be edited.


**Step 3** Set parameters and click **OK** to save the settings.

---End

### 5.2.7.2 Editing a Connection Exhaustion Rule

After configuring connection exhaustion rules, you can edit rule parameters by performing the following steps:

**Step 1** Choose **Policies > Access Control > Connection Exhaustion Rules**.


**Step 2** Click  in the **Operation** column to edit parameters of a rule.

**Step 3** After editing parameters, click **OK** to save settings and return to the connection exhaustion rule list.

---End

### 5.2.7.3 Deleting Connection Exhaustion Rules

You can delete one connection exhaustion rule or multiple rules in batches on the ADS device by adopting either of the following methods:

- Method 1: Choose **Policies > Access Control > Connection Exhaustion Rules**. Click  in the **Operation** column of a rule and then click **OK** in the confirmation dialog box to delete a rule.
- Method 2: Choose **Policies > Access Control > Connection Exhaustion Rules**. Select one or more connection exhaustion rules (or select the **Select All** check box to select all rules) to be deleted, click **Delete** to the lower right of the rule list, and then click **OK** in the confirmation dialog box to delete the selected rules.

## 5.2.8 URL-ACL Protection Rules

A URL-ACL rule controls access to URLs of a server and is usually used together with connection exhaustion rules. This section covers the following topics:

- [Creating a URL-ACL Protection Rule](#)
- [Editing a URL-ACL Protection Rule](#)
- [Deleting a URL-ACL Protection Rule](#)

- [Changing the Priority of a URL-ACL Protection Rule](#)

### 5.2.8.1 Creating a URL-ACL Protection Rule

To create a URL-ACL rule, perform the following steps:

**Step 1** Choose **Policies > Access Control > URL-ACL Protection Rule**.

Initially, the rule list is empty.

Figure 5-70 List of URL-ACL rules

<input type="checkbox"/>	ID	Domain Name	URL (Excluding domain name; supporting htm/html/jsp/php/asp extensions)	Destination IP	Destination Port	URL Protection Mode	Description	Time of Creation	Operation
<input type="checkbox"/>	0	.	.	192.168.1.1	80	Drop	test	2017-06-05 17:09:53	

**Step 2** Click **Add**.

Figure 5-71 Creating a URL-ACL rule

[Table 5-32](#) describes parameters for creating a URL-ACL rule.

Table 5-32 Parameters for creating a URL-ACL rule

Parameter	Description
Domain Name	Domain name of a URL protection object. The symbol "." indicates that this rule is valid for all domain names.
URL	Relative path of a URL protection object, that is, URL excluding the domain name. The symbol "." indicates that this rule is valid for all URLs.
Destination IP	IP address of the server. You can type an IPv4 or IPv6 address according to the actual network deployment.
Destination Port	TCP port of the server.

Parameter	Description
URL Protection Mode	Action to be taken on packets that match this rule. The value can be one of the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Drop</b>: drops packets.</li> <li>• <b>Trust</b>: allows packets to pass.</li> <li>• <b>Block proxy</b>: blocks the proxy if it is possible to use the proxy to transfer packets.</li> <li>• <b>Limit source IP speed</b>: limits the rate above which packets from the source IP address are forwarded.</li> <li>• <b>Monitor+blacklist</b>: counts the total number of HTTP requests of the source IP address matching this rule and adds this address to the blacklist if the value specified with <b>Single Source IP Access</b> is exceeded.</li> </ul>
Threshold	Maximum rate above which packets are forwarded. The value ranges from 1 to 10000, in pps. ADS will drop excess (depending on your choice) packets. This parameter is available only when <b>URL Protection Mode</b> is set to <b>Limit source IP speed</b> .
Overall	Specifies the threshold for the number of packets that hit this rule. If the specified value is exceeded, ADS checks whether traffic of each source IP address exceeds the value specified with <b>Single Source IP Monitor</b> . The value ranges from 1 to 10000.
Single Source IP Monitor	Specifies the threshold for the number of packets from a source IP address that match this rule. If the specified value is exceeded during a statistical period, the percentage of packets matching the rule is calculated. The value ranges from 1 to 10000.
Single Source IP Access	Specifies the threshold for the percentage of packets from a source IP address that match the rule during a statistical period. If the specified value is exceeded, the source IP address will be added to the blacklist.
Statistical Period	Specifies the statistical period for calculating the percentage of packets that match the rule. The value ranges from 1 to 10 minutes.
Proxy Monitoring	If proxy monitoring is enabled, for packets that are sent via a proxy, their real source IP addresses will be parsed for calculations.
Description	Presents description of the rule, which cannot contain more than 256 characters.
Time of Creation	Time automatically generated by the system on the creation of the rule. It cannot be edited.


**Step 3** Set parameters and click **OK** to save the settings.

---End

### 5.2.8.2 Editing a URL-ACL Protection Rule

After configuring URL-ACL rules, you can edit rule parameters by performing the following steps:

**Step 1** Choose **Policies > Access Control > URL-ACL Protection Rule**.

**Step 2** Click  in the **Operation** column to edit parameters of the rule.


**Step 3** After editing parameters, click **OK** to save settings and return to the URL-ACL rule list.



---End

### 5.2.8.3 Deleting a URL-ACL Protection Rule




You can delete one URL-ACL rule or multiple rules in batches on the ADS device by adopting either of the following methods:

- Method 1: Choose **Policies > Access Control > URL-ACL Protection Rule**. Click  in the **Operation** column of a rule and then click **OK** in the confirmation dialog box to delete a rule.
- Method 2: Choose **Policies > Access Control > URL-ACL Protection Rule**. Select one or more URL-ACL rules (or select the **Select All** check box to select all rules) to be deleted, click **Delete** to the lower right of the rule list, and then click **OK** in the confirmation dialog box to delete selected rules.

### 5.2.8.4 Changing the Priority of a URL-ACL Protection Rule

On the **URL-ACL Protection Rule** page, you can change the order of rules. Rules are sorted in the descending order of priority, that is, rule 0 has the highest priority to match packets.

Change the priority of the URL-ACL rules in the following ways:

- Use icons  and  to change the order of URL-ACL rules.
- Type the ID of the target rule to be adjusted below the list, and then click .

## 5.2.9 Blacklist

The blacklist policy is used to filter source IP addresses of packets. Once a source IP address matches an address on the blacklist, the ADS device blocks packets from this IP address without performing further detection. Therefore, this policy improves the detection performance of the ADS device.

Addresses can be added to the blacklist using either of the following methods:

- You can manually add IP addresses to the blacklist or import a blacklist file.
- The algorithm automatically adds IP addresses to the blacklist.

IP addresses can be automatically added to the blacklist in several ways, as listed in [Table 5-33](#).

Table 5-33 Reason for adding a source IP address to the blacklist

Policy	Reason for Adding a Source IP Address to the Blacklist
Pattern matching rule	Once attack packets are filtered out through pattern matching, the source IP address of such packets is automatically added to the blacklist. For description of pattern matching, see section <a href="#">8.2 Pattern Matching Rules</a> .
URL-ACL protection rule	<p>When <b>URL Protection Mode</b> is set to <b>Drop</b> for URL-ACL rules, ADS adds the source IP address to the global blacklist once detecting that an HTTP request amid IP packets matches such a URL-ACL rule.</p> <p>When <b>URL Protection Mode</b> is set to <b>Block proxy</b> for URL-ACL rules, ADS adds the IP address of a proxy server to the global blacklist once detecting that an HTTP request from the proxy server amid packets matches such a URL-ACL rule.</p> <p>When <b>URL Protection Mode</b> is set to <b>Monitor+blacklist</b> for URL-ACL rules, ADS adds source IP addresses to the global blacklist once detecting</p>

Policy	Reason for Adding a Source IP Address to the Blacklist
	that the proportion of matching packets from those IP addresses exceeds the value specified with <b>Single Source IP Access</b> .
Low-and-slow attack protection	Once low-and-slow attack protection is triggered, if the blacklist is enabled for the protection group involving the destination IP address, the system adds source IP addresses of matching packets to the blacklist.
Reflection protection policy	Once the reflection protection policy is triggered, if the blacklist is enabled for the protection group involving the destination IP address and the rule's action is set to <b>Drop and add to blacklist</b> , the system will add source IP addresses of matching packets to the blacklist.
Port check policy	Once the port check policy is triggered, if the blacklist is enabled for the protection group involving the destination IP address and <b>Access Control</b> is set to <b>Drop and add to blacklist</b> , the system will add source IP addresses of matching packets to the blacklist.
UDP regular expression protection policy	Once the UDP regular expression protection policy is triggered, if the blacklist is enabled for the protection group involving the destination IP address, the system will add source IP addresses of matching packets to the blacklist.
Protocol ID check policy	Once the protocol ID check policy is triggered, if the blacklist is enabled for the protection group involving the destination IP address and <b>Access Control</b> is set to <b>Drop and add to blacklist</b> , the system will add source IP addresses of matching packets to the blacklist.
TCP control parameters protection policy	Once the TCP control parameters protection policy is triggered, if the blacklist is enabled for the protection group involving the destination IP address and <b>SYN Source Bandwidth Limit</b> is set to <b>Drop and add to blacklist</b> , the system adds the source IP address of matching packets to the blacklist.
IP behavior control policy	Once the IP behavior control policy is triggered, if the blacklist is enabled for the protection group involving the destination IP address and <b>Access Control</b> or <b>Empty Connection Check</b> is set to <b>Drop and add to blacklist</b> , the system adds the source IP address of matching packets to the blacklist.
HTTPS protection policy	Once an HTTPS protection policy is triggered, if the blacklist is enabled for the protection group involving the destination IP address and <b>Add Abnormal IP to Blacklist</b> is set to <b>Yes</b> , the system adds the source IP address of the client that fails to be authenticated with the HTTPS protection algorithm to the blacklist.
TCP regular expression protection policy	Once the TCP regular expression policy is triggered, if the blacklist is enabled for the protection group involving the destination IP address, the system adds the source IP address that matches such a rule to the blacklist.
HTTP keyword checking rule	Once an HTTP keyword check rule with <b>Action</b> set to <b>Drop+Blacklist</b> is triggered, the system adds source IP addresses that fail the HTTP keyword check to the blacklist.
DNS keyword checking rule	Once a DNS keyword checking rule with <b>Action</b> set to <b>Drop+Blacklist</b> is triggered, the system adds source IP addresses that fail the DNS keyword check to the blacklist.
Connection exhaustion rule	If the number of new connections from a source IP address exceeds the threshold within the new connection statistical cycle of a connection exhaustion rule, ADS deems this IP address abnormal and automatically adds it to the blacklist.

This section describes how to enable or disable a blacklist, add a blacklist entry manually, delete a blacklist entry, and clear a blacklist.



- You can add, delete, or clear blacklist entries only when the blacklist function is enabled.
- The whitelists has a higher priority than the blacklist. Therefore, if the source IP address of packets is included in both the blacklist and whitelist, the ADS device allows such packets to pass through.

You can perform the following operations regarding the blacklist:

- [Enabling and Disabling the Blacklist Function](#)
- [Adding a Blacklist Entry](#)
- [Viewing Blacklist Entries](#)
- [Deleting Blacklist Entries](#)
- [Clearing Blacklist Entries](#)
- [Searching the Blacklist](#)
- [Importing a Blacklist File](#)
- [Viewing the Import Result](#)
- [Exporting a Blacklist File](#)

## 5.2.9.1 Enabling and Disabling the Blacklist Function

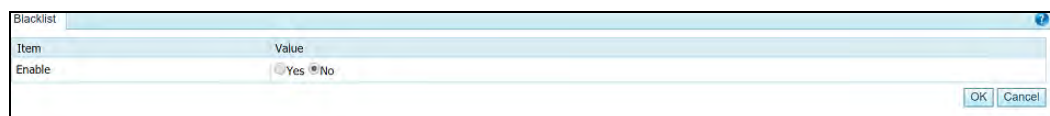
### Enabling the Blacklist Function

To enable the blacklist function, perform the following steps:

**Step 1** Choose **Policies > Access Control > Blacklist**.

Initially, the blacklist function is disabled.

Figure 5-72 Blacklist status



**Step 2** Click **Edit** and then select **Yes** to enable the blacklist function. See [Figure 5-73](#).

Figure 5-73 Enabling the blacklist policy

Item	Value
Enable	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Yes <input type="radio"/> No

Configuration Items	
Item	Value
Auto Block	Block for a period ▼ 120 (minutes)
Proxy Monitoring	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Yes <input type="radio"/> No

OK Cancel

Table 5-34 Blacklist parameters

Parameter	Description
Auto Block	<p>Specifies the duration when a blacklisted IP address is blocked. This parameter has two options:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Temporary:</b> The IP address is blocked and packets from this address are dropped in the specified period.</li> <li><b>Permanent:</b> The IP address is permanently blocked and packets from this address are always dropped.</li> </ul>
Proxy Monitoring	<p>Controls whether to enable or disable the proxy monitoring function. By default, this function is disabled.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>No:</b> disables proxy monitoring. In this case, ADS filters source IP addresses of HTTP packets by matching blacklist entries, without checking the real source IP addresses of those packets.</li> <li><b>Yes:</b> enables proxy monitoring. In this case, ADS first matches source IP addresses of HTTP packets against blacklist entries. If no match is found, ADS will continue to use this blacklist to filter the real source IP addresses extracted from the payloads of those packets. In attack logs generated in this situation, the <b>Source IP</b> field indicates the real source IP address.</li> </ul>

**Step 3** Set parameters and click **OK** to return to the previous page.

As shown in [Figure 5-74](#), the blacklist function is enabled and blacklist configuration items are available.

Figure 5-74 Blacklist function enabled

Item	Value
Enable	Yes

Configuration Items	
Item	Value
Auto Block	Temporary: 8000000(minutes)
Proxy Monitoring	Yes

----End

## Disabling the Blacklist Function

To disable the blacklist function, perform the following steps:

On the page shown in [Figure 5-73](#), select **No**. Then the value of **Enable** turns to **No**, as shown in [Figure 5-72](#).

### 5.2.9.2 Adding a Blacklist Entry

To add a blacklist entry manually, perform the following steps:

**Step 1** On the page shown in [Figure 5-74](#), click **Add** to add a blacklist entry.

Figure 5-75 Adding a blacklist entry

**Step 2** Set parameters.

Table 5-35 Blacklist parameters

Parameter	Description
IP Address	Specifies the source IP address to be blocked. Either an IPv4 or IPv6 address is allowed. Formats are as follows: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>IPv4 address/netmask of 24 to 32 bits, such as 192.168.1.0/24.</li> <li>IPv6 address/prefix length of 64 to 128 bits.</li> </ul>
Auto Block	Specifies the duration when a blacklisted IP address is blocked. Two options are available: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Regular: The IP address is blocked and packets from this address are dropped in the specified period.</li> <li>Permanent: The IP address is permanently blocked and packets from this address are always dropped.</li> </ul>

**Step 3** Click **OK** to complete the configuration.

---End

### 5.2.9.3 Viewing Blacklist Entries

On the page shown in [Figure 5-74](#), click **Blacklist List**. The system displays a maximum of 1000 IP addresses blocked recently, as shown in [Figure 5-76](#). You can click **Refresh** to obtain IP addresses blocked most recently.

Figure 5-76 Viewing blacklist entries

Select	Item	IP Address	Elapsed Block Duration (minutes)	Remaining Block Time (min)	Block Cause	Blocked Packets	Blocked Traffic (byte)	Destination IP
<input type="checkbox"/>	1	10.50.50.1	194 minutes	Permanent	BLOCK_MANUAL	0 (pkts)	0(bytes)	-
<input type="checkbox"/>	2	1.16.65.161	194 minutes	Permanent	BLOCK_MANUAL	0 (pkts)	0(bytes)	-
<input type="checkbox"/>	3	1.16.65.162	194 minutes	Permanent	BLOCK_MANUAL	0 (pkts)	0(bytes)	-
<input type="checkbox"/>	4	1.16.65.163	194 minutes	Permanent	BLOCK_MANUAL	0 (pkts)	0(bytes)	-
<input type="checkbox"/>	5	1.16.65.164	194 minutes	Permanent	BLOCK_MANUAL	0 (pkts)	0(bytes)	-
<input type="checkbox"/>	6	1.16.65.165	194 minutes	Permanent	BLOCK_MANUAL	0 (pkts)	0(bytes)	-
<input type="checkbox"/>	7	1.16.65.166	194 minutes	Permanent	BLOCK_MANUAL	0 (pkts)	0(bytes)	-
<input type="checkbox"/>	8	1.16.65.167	194 minutes	Permanent	BLOCK_MANUAL	0 (pkts)	0(bytes)	-
<input type="checkbox"/>	9	1.16.65.168	194 minutes	Permanent	BLOCK_MANUAL	0 (pkts)	0(bytes)	-
<input type="checkbox"/>	10	1.16.65.169	194 minutes	Permanent	BLOCK_MANUAL	0 (pkts)	0(bytes)	-
<input type="checkbox"/>	11	1.16.65.17	194 minutes	Permanent	BLOCK_MANUAL	0 (pkts)	0(bytes)	-
<input type="checkbox"/>	12	1.16.65.170	194 minutes	Permanent	BLOCK_MANUAL	0 (pkts)	0(bytes)	-
<input type="checkbox"/>	13	1.16.65.171	194 minutes	Permanent	BLOCK_MANUAL	0 (pkts)	0(bytes)	-
<input type="checkbox"/>	14	1.16.65.172	194 minutes	Permanent	BLOCK_MANUAL	0 (pkts)	0(bytes)	-
<input type="checkbox"/>	15	1.16.65.173	194 minutes	Permanent	BLOCK_MANUAL	0 (pkts)	0(bytes)	-
<input type="checkbox"/>	16	1.16.65.174	194 minutes	Permanent	BLOCK_MANUAL	0 (pkts)	0(bytes)	-

For the **Destination IP** column:

- If the source IP address is added to the blacklist automatically, the destination IP address is displayed.
- If the source IP address is added to the blacklist manually, the destination IP address is not displayed. Instead, a hyphen (-) is displayed in this column.

### 5.2.9.4 Deleting Blacklist Entries

To delete a blacklist entry, perform the following steps:

**Step 1** On the page shown in [Figure 5-76](#), select one or more blacklist entries and then click **Delete**.

**Step 2** In the confirmation dialog box, click **OK**.

----End

### 5.2.9.5 Clearing Blacklist Entries

To clear blacklist entries, perform the following steps:

**Step 1** On the page shown in [Figure 5-74](#) or [Figure 5-76](#), click **Clear Blacklist**.

**Step 2** In the confirmation dialog box, click **OK**.

----End

### 5.2.9.6 Searching the Blacklist

To search the blacklist for an IP address, perform the following steps:

**Step 1** On the page shown in [Figure 5-77](#), click **Search**.

Figure 5-77 Searching for an IP address

**Step 2** On the **Search** page shown in [Figure 5-77](#), type an IP address, and click **OK**.

The blacklist search result is displayed, as shown in [Figure 5-78](#).

Figure 5-78 Blacklist search result

Select	Item	IP Address	Elapsed Block Duration (minutes)	Remaining Block Time (min)	Block Cause	Blocked Packets	Blocked Traffic (byte)	Destination IP
<input type="checkbox"/>	All							
<input type="checkbox"/>	1	1.1.0.10	21 minutes	98minutes	BLOCK_MANUAL	0 (pkts)	0 (bytes)	-
<input type="checkbox"/>	2	1.1.0.100	21 minutes	98minutes	BLOCK_MANUAL	0 (pkts)	0 (bytes)	-
<input type="checkbox"/>	3	1.1.0.101	21 minutes	98minutes	BLOCK_MANUAL	0 (pkts)	0 (bytes)	-
<input type="checkbox"/>	4	1.1.0.102	21 minutes	98minutes	BLOCK_MANUAL	0 (pkts)	0 (bytes)	-
<input type="checkbox"/>	5	1.1.0.103	21 minutes	98minutes	BLOCK_MANUAL	0 (pkts)	0 (bytes)	-
<input type="checkbox"/>	6	1.1.0.104	21 minutes	98minutes	BLOCK_MANUAL	0 (pkts)	0 (bytes)	-
<input type="checkbox"/>	7	1.1.0.105	21 minutes	98minutes	BLOCK_MANUAL	0 (pkts)	0 (bytes)	-
<input type="checkbox"/>	8	1.1.0.106	21 minutes	98minutes	BLOCK_MANUAL	0 (pkts)	0 (bytes)	-

----End

## 5.2.9.7 Importing a Blacklist File

To import a blacklist file, perform the following steps:

**Step 1** On the page shown in [Figure 5-74](#), click **Import Blacklist**.

Figure 5-79 Importing a blacklist file



The blacklist file must be a **.txt** or **.csv** file whose filename does not contain Chinese characters; otherwise, the file cannot be imported.

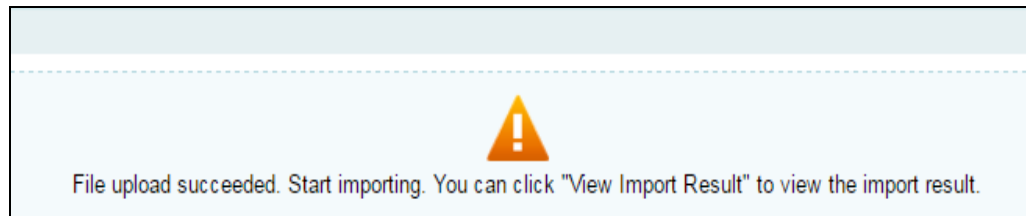
**Step 2** On the page shown in [Figure 5-79](#), click **Choose File**.

**Step 3** Select the blacklist file and click **Open** to return to the blacklist import page.

**Step 4** Click **Upload**.

After the upload is complete, the system prompts that the file is successfully imported, as shown in [Figure 5-80](#).

Figure 5-80 Import success prompt



After the blacklist file is imported, the system automatically switches to the page shown in [Figure 5-79](#).

---End

### 5.2.9.8 Viewing the Import Result


To view the import result, perform the following steps:

**Step 1** On the page shown in [Figure 5-79](#), click **View Import Result**.

Then the number of IP addresses successfully imported and that of IP addresses failing to be imported are displayed, as shown in [Figure 5-81](#).

Figure 5-81 Viewing import results

The image shows a window titled "Blacklist" with a sub-header "Import Result". It contains a table with two columns: "Item" and "Value". The table lists various import statistics, including start and end times, progress (100%), total entries (1000), successful imports (1000), failed imports (0), and incorrectly formatted entries (0). At the bottom right of the table, there are three buttons: "Refresh", "Download", and "Back".

Item	Value
Start Time	2021-09-15 11:04:23
End Time	2021-09-15 11:04:23
Progress	 100%
Total Entries	1000
Successful Imports	1000
Failed Imports	0
Incorrectly Formatted Entries	0

**Step 2** Click **Back** to return to the blacklist configuration page.

---End

### 5.2.9.9 Exporting a Blacklist File

To export a blacklist file, perform the following steps:

**Step 1** On the page shown in [Figure 5-74](#), click **Export Blacklist**.



Figure 5-82 Exporting a blacklist file

Item	Value
Blacklist Type	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Manual <input type="checkbox"/> Auto
Export Type	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Quick (only IP addresses) <input type="radio"/> Detailed (IP addresses, auto block period, and blocked traffic)

OK

View Export Result Back

**Step 2** Set blacklist export parameters.

Table 5-36 Parameters for blacklist export

Parameter	Description
Blacklist Type	Specifies the type of the blacklist for export, which can be Manual or Automatic.
Export Type	Specifies the export type, which can be either of the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Quick export: Only blacklisted IP addresses are included in the exported file.</li> <li>Detailed export: Blacklisted entry details, like the blacklisted IP addresses, auto block period, and blocked traffic are in the exported file.</li> </ul>

**Step 3** Click **OK** to return to the blacklist export result page.

Figure 5-83 Viewing blacklist export results

Item	Value
Start Time	2021-09-15 11:12:04
End Time	2021-09-15 11:12:06
Export Status	Export file generation completed successfully.
Percentage Complete of Generating Export File	100%
Operation	

Refresh Back

**Step 4** Click in the **Operation** row to save to exported blacklist file to a local disk drive.

**Step 5** Click **Back** to return to the blacklist configuration page.

----End

## 5.2.10 Whitelist

After the whitelist function is enabled, ADS checks whether the source IP address of packets matches any address (an IPv4 address or IPv6 address) in the whitelist. If the matched address

is found, the ADS engine allows these packets to pass through, without executing access control rules or protection algorithms, thereby improving the system performance.



Note

The whitelist has a higher priority than the blacklist. Therefore, if the source IP address of packets is included in both the blacklist and whitelist, the ADS device allows such packets to pass through.

You can perform the following operations regarding the whitelist:

- [Enabling and Disabling the Whitelist Function](#)
- [Importing a Whitelist File](#)
- [Viewing the Import Result](#)
- [Querying the Whitelist](#)
- [Clearing the Whitelist](#)
- [Clearing the Configuration](#)
- [Downloading the Configuration](#)
- [Reloading the Whitelist File](#)

### 5.2.10.1 Enabling and Disabling the Whitelist Function

By default, the whitelist function is disabled on the ADS device. you need to enable this function before using it.

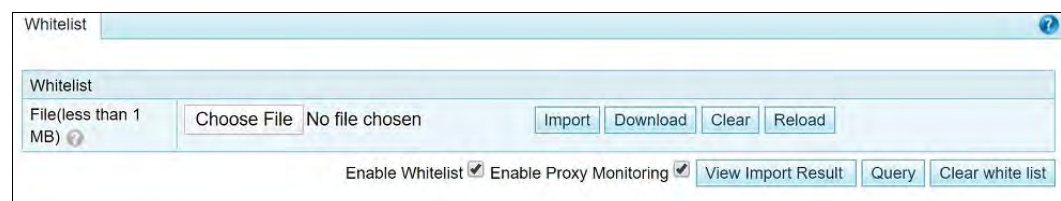
#### Enabling the Whitelist Function

To enable the whitelist function, perform the following steps:

**Step 1** Choose **Policies > Access Control > Whitelist**.

By default, the whitelist function is disabled.

Figure 5-84 Whitelist configuration page



**Step 2** Select the **Enable Whitelist** check box to enable the whitelist.

----End

#### Disabling the Whitelist Function

If the whitelist function is enabled, deselect **Enable Whitelist** to disable the whitelist, as shown in [Figure 5-84](#).

### 5.2.10.2 Enabling Proxy Monitoring

On the page shown in [Figure 5-84](#), you can enable or disable the proxy monitoring function of the whitelist. By default, this function is disabled.


- Deselecting the **Enable Proxy Monitoring** check box disables proxy monitoring. After this function is disabled, ADS filters source IP addresses of HTTP packets by matching the whitelist entries, without checking real source IP addresses of those packets.
- Selecting the **Enable Proxy Monitoring** check box enables proxy monitoring. After this function is enabled, ADS first matches source IP addresses of HTTP packets against whitelist entries. If no match is found, ADS will continue to use this whitelist to filter the real source IP addresses extracted from the payloads of those packets.

### 5.2.10.3 Importing a Whitelist File

You can add trusted IPv4 or IPv6 addresses by importing a whitelist file on the ADS device. After the whitelist file is imported, the ADS device checks the IP address format and then loads the list of trusted IP addresses to its engine. The new whitelist file will overwrite the existing file saved on the device.

The whitelist file is in format of **.txt**, with one IP address per line. The following uses IPv4 addresses as an example to illustrate the format:

- 10.10.10.10
- 172.16.10.10
- 192.168.10.10

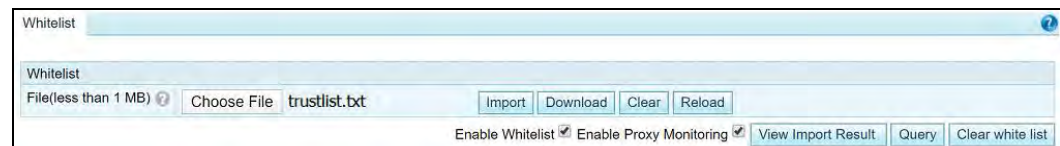
 <b>Note</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Since the ADS device supports the IPv4/IPv6 dual-stack, you can configure IPv4 or IPv6 addresses in the whitelist file according to the actual network deployment.</li> <li>• The whitelist file name supports English letters and digits. The file must be within 1 MB. It is recommended that the file contain a maximum of 50,000 IP addresses.</li> <li>• Select the <b>Enable Whitelist</b> checkbox before you import a whitelist file; otherwise, the imported whitelist cannot take effect.</li> </ul>
--	---

To import a whitelist file, perform the following steps:

**Step 1** Choose **Policies > Access Control > Whitelist** and click **Select File** on the whitelist configuration page.

**Step 2** Select the whitelist file and click **Open**.

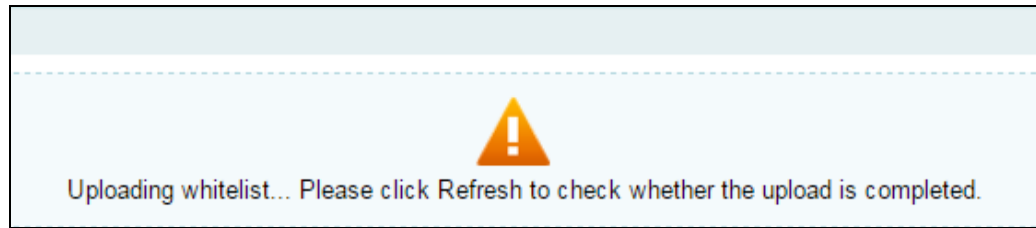
Figure 5-85 Importing the whitelist file



**Step 3** Click **Import**.

A message is displayed, prompting that the import is in progress, as shown in [Figure 5-86](#).

Figure 5-86 Import progress message



After the whitelist file is imported, the system returns to the whitelist configuration page.

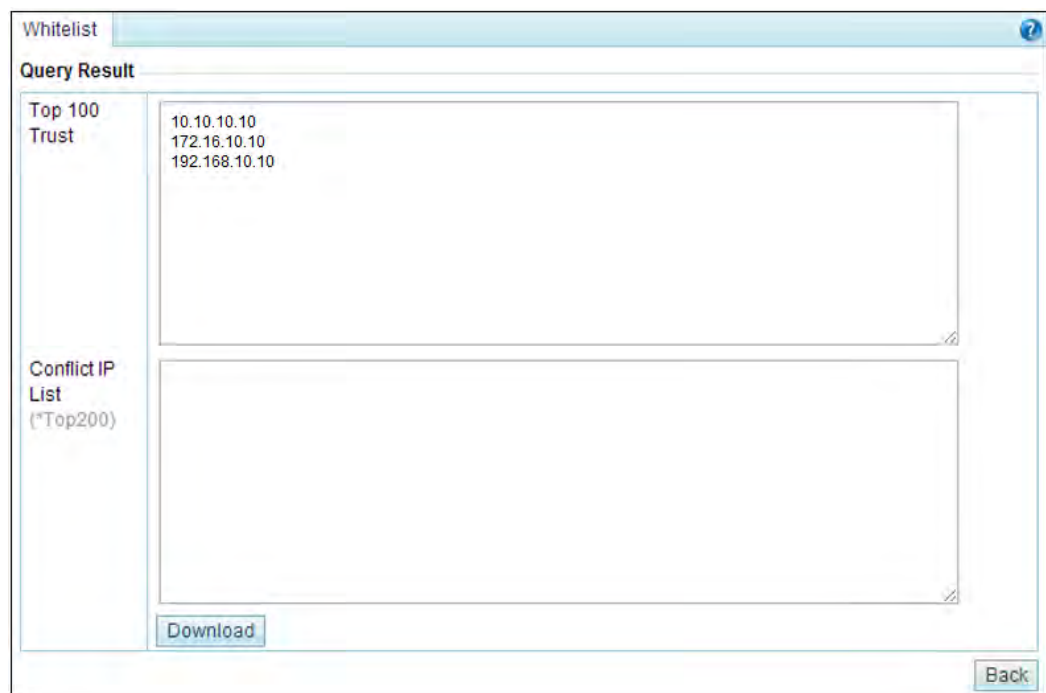
---End

#### 5.2.10.4 Viewing the Import Result

After the list of trusted IP addresses is loaded to the engine, you can view the import result on the web-based manager by performing the following steps:

- Step 1** Click **View Import Result** on the whitelist configuration page shown in [Figure 5-84](#) to view information that is successfully imported to the whitelist. See [Figure 5-87](#).

Figure 5-87 Viewing the import result



**TOP 100 Trust** shows top 100 IP addresses that are saved in the configuration file; **Conflict IP List** shows conflicting IP addresses that fail to be imported.

- Step 2** After viewing the result, click **Back** to return to the whitelist configuration page.

---End

### 5.2.10.5 Querying the Whitelist

Querying the whitelist, you can check whether an IPv4 or IPv6 address is trusted. If the source IP address of packets is trusted, the ADS device allows such packets to pass through, without executing the access control rules or protection algorithms.

To query the whitelist, perform the following steps:

- Step 1** On the whitelist configuration page shown in [Figure 5-84](#), click **Query** to open the **Query Status** page.

Figure 5-88 Querying the whitelist

Item	Value
IP Address	<input type="text"/>

- Step 2** Type the IP address to be queried in the textbox and click **OK** to check whether the IP address is trusted.

Figure 5-89 Whitelist query result

Item	Value
IP Address	10.0.0.0
Is it in the Whitelist	No

- Step 3** After viewing the result, click **Back** to return to the whitelist configuration page.

---End

### 5.2.10.6 Clearing the Whitelist

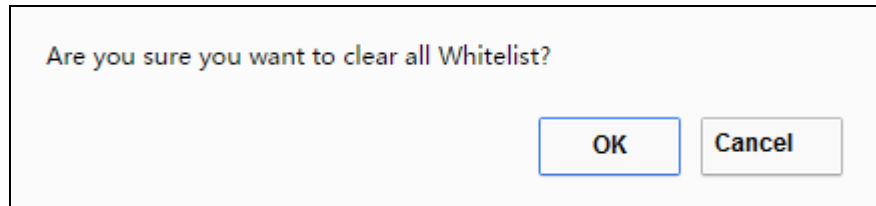
By clearing the whitelist, you can only delete the trust status of all IP addresses listed in the whitelist on the engine, but cannot delete the whitelist file. If IP addresses in this whitelist need to be re-trusted after the whitelist is cleared, you need to reload the whitelist file. For details, see [Reloading the Whitelist File](#).

To clear the whitelist, perform the following steps:

- Step 1** Click **Clear white list** on the whitelist configuration page shown in [Figure 5-84](#).

Then, a dialog box appears, asking you whether to clear the whitelist, as shown in [Figure 5-90](#).

Figure 5-90 Clearing trust relationships



**Step 2** Click **OK** to save the settings.

----End

### 5.2.10.7 Clearing the Configuration

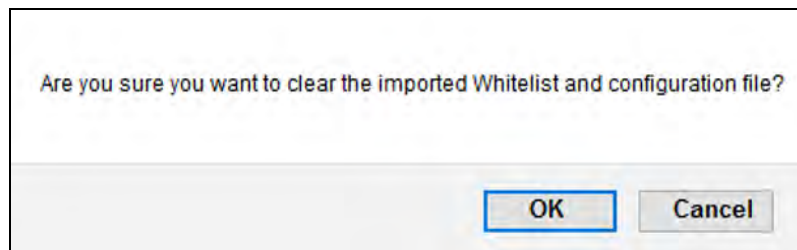
By clearing the configuration, you can delete the whitelist file and trust relationships of IP addresses on the engine. You are advised to back up the whitelist file before clearing the configuration. For details, see [Downloading the Configuration](#).

To clear the configuration, perform the following steps:

**Step 1** Click **Clear** on the whitelist configuration page shown in [Figure 5-84](#).

Then, a dialog box appears, asking you whether to delete the whitelist file and all trusted entries, as shown in [Figure 5-91](#).

Figure 5-91 Clearing the configuration



**Step 2** Click **OK** to save the settings.

----End

### 5.2.10.8 Downloading the Configuration

You can download the whitelist file to a local disk drive for backup.

To download the configuration, perform the following steps:

**Step 1** Click **Download** on the whitelist configuration page shown in [Figure 5-84](#).

**Step 2** Click **Save** and select a file path to save the whitelist file in the related directory.

----End

### 5.2.10.9 Reloading the Whitelist File

Through reloading, the ADS device clears the existing list of trusted IP addresses and loads new trusted IP addresses to the engine.

To reload a whitelist, click **Reload** on the whitelist configuration page shown in [Figure 5-84](#).

# 6 Diversion and Injection

This chapter provides detailed information about traffic diversion and injection.

Section	Description
<a href="#">General Settings</a>	Describes how to configure the system running mode and interface IP addresses.
<a href="#">Diversion Route</a>	Describes how to configure a diversion route.
<a href="#">Traffic Injection</a>	Describes how to configure an injection rule.
<a href="#">Traffic Diversion</a>	Describes how to configure traffic diversion information.
<a href="#">Advanced Route Setting</a>	Describes how to configure an advanced route.
<a href="#">Syslog Diversion Configuration</a>	Describes how to configure syslog-based traffic diversion.

Under **Diversion & Injection**, you can configure routes as well as diversion and injection rules for ADS in out-of-path mode. These rules can be configured only when the current running mode is **Diversion**.



Note

When ADS is in in-path mode, only the **General Settings** menu is available under **Diversion & Injection**, while **Diversion Route**, **Traffic Injection**, **Traffic Diversion**, **Advanced Route Setting**, and **Syslog Diversion Config** are unavailable.

## 6.1 General Settings

This section covers the following topics:

- [Running Mode](#)
- [Port Channel Configuration](#)
- [GRE Tunnel Configuration](#)
- [IP Address Configuration](#)

### 6.1.1 Running Mode

To configure the running mode on ADS, perform the following steps:



**Step 1** Choose **Diversion & Injection > General Settings > Running Mode**.

Figure 6-1 Running mode of the ADS device (diversion mode)

Item	Value
Running Mode	Diversion
Port Mode	Default
Accept Probe Notification	No
Probe IP Address	10.66.242.112
Probe Running Mode	netflow
Delay in Auto Diversion Deletion	5 minutes

**Step 2** Click **Edit**.




Figure 6-2 Editing the running mode (diversion mode)

Item	Value
Running Mode	Diversion
Port Mode	Default
Accept Probe Notification	No
Probe IP Address	10.66.242.112 (Multiple IP addresses are separated by space.)
Probe Running Mode	netflow
Delay in Auto Diversion Deletion	5 (Range: 5-1000, in minutes)

Table 6-1 describes parameters on this page.

Table 6-1 Parameters for setting the running mode

Parameter	Description
Running Mode	<p>Current running mode of the ADS device. It has the following options:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>In-path:</b> indicates that a single ADS detection device is deployed in in-path mode.</li> <li><b>Diversion:</b> indicates that an NSFOCUS detection device and multiple ADS devices are deployed in out-of-path mode.</li> </ul> <p><b>Note</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>ADS NX5-10000 does not support the in-path running mode.</li> <li>The running mode is determined by the system license. To change the running mode, please contact NSFOCUS technical support for a new license.</li> </ul>
Port Mode	Mode of the current port. Only <b>Default</b> is available for ADS devices.
Accept Probe Notification	Controls whether to receive notifications from ADS when an attack event is detected. The value <b>Yes</b> indicates that the NSFOCUS detection device instructs the current ADS device to handle attacks that are detected.


Parameter	Description
	 <p>This parameter is required only when <b>Running Mode</b> is set to <b>Diversion</b>.</p>
Probe IP Address	<p>IP address of an NSFOCUS NTA or ADS M that coordinates with the ADS device. You can type one or more IP addresses separated by spaces.</p>  <p>This parameter is required only when <b>Running Mode</b> is set to <b>Diversion</b>.</p>
Probe Running Mode	<p>Running mode of NSFOCUS ADS detection devices. It has the following values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>netflow</b>: indicates that ADS devices check the traffic output by the router in netflow format for abnormal traffic.</li> <li>• <b>span</b>: indicates that ADS devices check mirrored traffic for abnormal traffic.</li> </ul>  <p>This parameter is required only when <b>Running Mode</b> is set to <b>Diversion</b>.</p>
Delay in Auto Diversion Deletion	<p>After receiving a deletion diversion notification, ADS deletes the diversion after an automatic delay. The value should be in the range of 5–1000 minutes.</p> <p>If ADS receives a diversion deletion notification, and then receives a diversion setup notification before <b>Delay in Auto Diversion Deletion</b> expires, ADS automatically ignores the diversion deletion notification and continues to divert traffic.</p>

**Step 3** Set parameters and click **OK** to save the settings.

---End

## 6.1.2 Port Channel Configuration

The Port channel allows a combination of arbitrary available interfaces on the device. The MAC address of the port channel is that of the interface with the smallest ID. For example, after G1/1 and G1/2 interfaces of ADS NX5-4020E are combined into a port channel, the MAC address of the port channel is that of the G1/1 interface.

	<p>The number of ports varies with ADS series, but the procedure for configuring the port channel is the same. This section uses ADS NX5-4020E as an example to describe how to configure the port channel.</p>
---	---

Choose **Diversion & Injection > General Settings > Port Channel** to open the port channel configuration page. See [Figure 6-3](#).

Figure 6-3 Port Channel page

Port Channel		
Port Channel ID	Physical Port	Operation
1	G4/1,G4/2	

[Add](#)

## Creating a Port Channel

Currently, only ports of the same type can be added to a port channel. For example, 1000M electrical ports and 1000M optical ports cannot be put in one port channel. The same is true for 1000M optical and 10G optical ports. To the lower right of the port channel list shown in [Figure 6-3](#), click **Add**. The **Add Port Channel Interface** page appears, as shown in [Figure 6-4](#).

Figure 6-4 Creating a port channel for the ADS device

Add Port Channel Interface	
Item	Value
Port Channel ID	<input type="text"/>
Physical Port	<input type="checkbox"/> T1/1 <input type="checkbox"/> T1/2 <input type="checkbox"/> G2/1 <input type="checkbox"/> G2/2 <input type="checkbox"/> G2/3 <input type="checkbox"/> G2/4 <input type="checkbox"/> G2/5 <input type="checkbox"/> G2/6 <input type="checkbox"/> G2/7 <input type="checkbox"/> G2/8 <input type="checkbox"/> T3/1 <input type="checkbox"/> T3/2 <input type="checkbox"/> F4/1 <input type="checkbox"/> F4/2 <input type="checkbox"/> F4/3 <input type="checkbox"/> F4/4


[OK](#) [Cancel](#)


[Table 6-2](#) describes parameters for creating a a port channel.

Table 6-2 Parameters for creating a a port channel

Parameter	Description
Port Channel ID	ID of the port channel. The value is an integer ranging from 0 to 31.
Physical Port	Available physical ports on the current ADS device.  <b>Note</b> A port channel can have one or several port IDs, but each port ID can be included in only one port channel.

## Deleting a Port Channel

On the port channel list in [Figure 6-3](#), click  in the **Operation** column to delete a port channel.

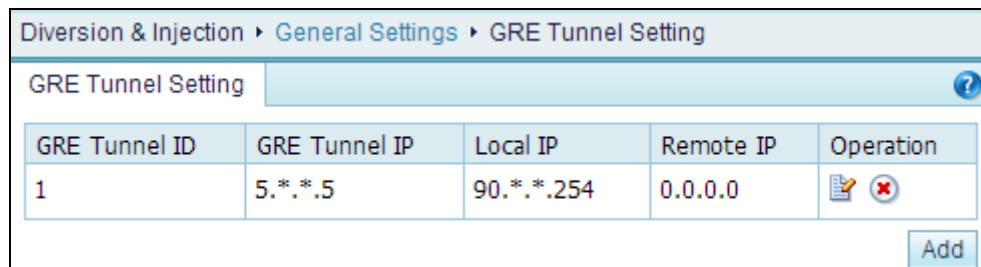
 <b>Note</b>	Port channels in use cannot be deleted.
--	---



## 6.1.3 GRE Tunnel Configuration

GRE tunnel accomplishes data communication between two private networks. When one intranet is reachable for another via a route, the GRE tunnel encapsulates intranet packets (directed towards an intranet IP address in the other network) in IP packets on routes by default and sends them. On arriving at the peer IP address, the packets will be automatically decapsulated and then forwarded to the destination IP address in the intranet.

[Figure 6-5](#) shows the GRE tunnel configuration page.

Figure 6-5 GRE Tunnel Setting page

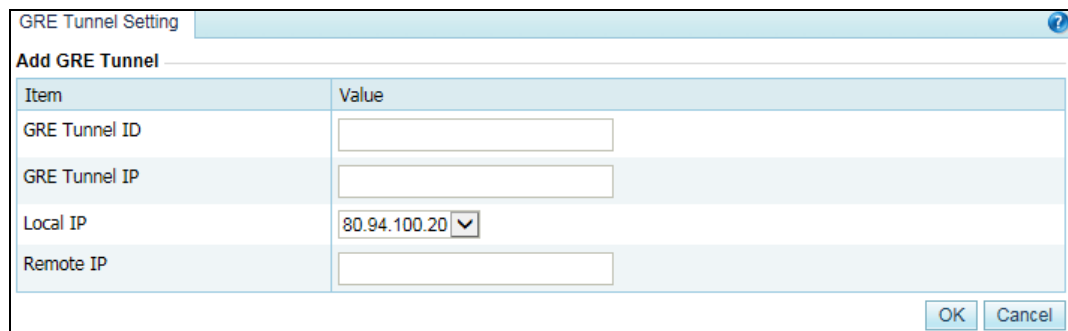


Diversion & Injection ▸ General Settings ▸ GRE Tunnel Setting				
GRE Tunnel Setting <span style="float: right;">?</span>				
GRE Tunnel ID	GRE Tunnel IP	Local IP	Remote IP	Operation
1	5.*.*.5	90.*.*.254	0.0.0.0	 

## Creating a GRE Tunnel

**Step 1** To the lower right of the GRE tunnel list, click **Add**.

Figure 6-6 Creating a GRE tunnel



GRE Tunnel Setting <span style="float: right;">?</span>	
Add GRE Tunnel	
Item	Value
GRE Tunnel ID	<input type="text"/>
GRE Tunnel IP	<input type="text"/>
Local IP	80.94.100.20 ▾
Remote IP	<input type="text"/>

**Step 2** On the **Add GRE Tunnel** page, configure parameters.

[Table 6-3](#) describes parameters for creating a GRE tunnel.


Table 6-3 Parameters for creating a GRE tunnel

Parameter	Description
GRE Tunnel ID	GRE tunnel ID. The value is an integer ranging from 1 to 1023.
GRE Tunnel IP	IP address of the GRE tunnel. Generally, it is an internal IPv4 or IPv6 address.
Local IP	Source IP address of the GRE tunnel. This parameter can be set to an IPv4 address.
Remote IP	Destination IP address of the GRE tunnel. This parameter can be set to an IPv4 address.


**Step 3** Click **OK** to save the settings.

---End

## Modifying a GRE Tunnel

On the page shown in [Figure 6-5](#), click  in the **Operation** column to edit GRE tunnel configuration. The configuration of GRE tunnels in use cannot be edited.





## Deleting a GRE Tunnel

On the page shown in [Figure 6-5](#), click  in the **Operation** column to delete a GRE tunnel. GRE tunnels in use cannot be deleted.

## 6.1.4 IP Address Configuration

For ADS running in diversion mode, you can configure the IP addresses and loopback addresses for two interfaces that are used by ADS on the page shown in [Figure 6-7](#).

Figure 6-7 IP address list in diversion mode

Interface IP List						
IP Address	IP Prefix Length/Netmask	Interface	VLAN ID	Web Access	SSH login	Operation
80.94.100.20	255.255.255.0	G1/1	3000	No	No	 
8094:100::20	64	G1/1	3000	Yes	Yes	 

Loopback Address			
ID	IP Address	IP Prefix Length/Netmask	Operation



The number of interfaces varies with ADS series, but the procedure for configuring interface IP addresses is the same. This section uses ADS NX5-4020E as an example to describe how to configure IP addresses.

## Adding an IP Address

To the lower right of the interface IP list, click **Add** to add an IP address. The **Add interface IP** page appears, as shown in [Figure 6-8](#).


Figure 6-8 Adding an IP address

[Table 6-4](#) describes parameters of an interface.

Table 6-4 Interface parameters

Parameter	Description
IP Address	<p>IP address of a specified interface on the ADS device. You can type an IPv4 or IPv6 address according to the actual network deployment.</p> <p>The IPv4 address cannot be in the same /24 subnet as IP addresses of other interfaces. The IPv6 address based on an IPv4 address is not recommended.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>An interface can have multiple IP addresses.</p>
IP Prefix Length/Netmask	Prefix length (for the IPv6 protocol) or netmask (for the IPv4 protocol) of the specified port.
Interface	Available ports on the current ADS device.
VLAN ID	ID of the VLAN that is connected to the interface.
Web Access	Controls whether the interface allows access via web.
SSH Login	Controls whether the interface allows access via SSH.

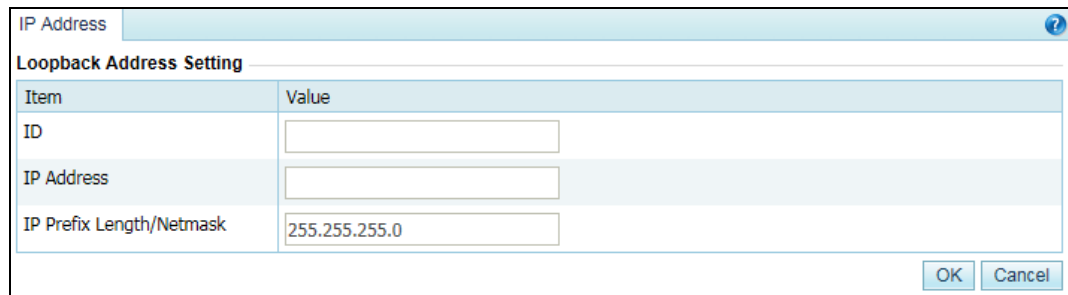
## Deleting an IP Address

On the page shown in [Figure 6-7](#), click  in the **Operation** column to delete an IP address. IP addresses being used cannot be deleted.

## Adding a Loopback Address

Click **Add** to the lower right of the loopback address list to add a loopback address. The **Add Loopback Address Setting** page appears, as shown in [Figure 6-9](#).

Figure 6-9 Adding a loopback address




Item	Value
ID	<input type="text"/>
IP Address	<input type="text"/>
IP Prefix Length/Netmask	255.255.255.0

[Table 6-5](#) describes parameters of a loopback address.

Table 6-5 Parameters of a loopback address

Parameter	Description
ID	Loopback address ID. The value is an integer ranging from 0 to 128.
IP Address	IP address of a loopback route to be added. You can type an IPv4 or IPv6 address according to the actual network deployment.
IP Prefix Length/Netmask	Prefix length (for the IPv6 protocol) or netmask (for the IPv4 protocol) of the IP address.

## Deleting a Loopback Address

In [Figure 6-7](#), click  in the **Operation** column to delete a loopback address. Loopback addresses in use cannot be deleted.

## 6.1.5 Incoming/Outgoing Configuration

This section describes how to configure a pair of incoming and outgoing interfaces for connecting to an external bypass switch.



The incoming/outgoing configuration is available only when ADS is deployed in in-path mode.

You can add, edit, and delete incoming/outgoing interface pairs. For how to add a pair of incoming/outgoing interfaces, perform the following steps:

**Step 1** Choose **Diversion & Injection > General Settings > Incoming/Outgoing Setting**.

Figure 6-10 Incoming/Outgoing Setting page

Channel ID	Incoming Interface ID	Outgoing Interface ID	Operation
Channel1	T1/1	T1/2	

**Step 2** Click **Add**.

Figure 6-11 Adding a pair of incoming/outgoing interfaces

Item	Value
Incoming Interface ID	G2/1
Outgoing Interface ID	G2/1

**Step 3** Specify **Incoming Interface ID** and **Outgoing Interface ID**.

**Step 4** Click **OK** to complete the configuration.

----End

## 6.2 Diversion Route

The ADS device needs a dynamic routing protocol for diversion. To enable the dynamic routing protocol, you need to configure route parameters.

### 6.2.1 BGP Route

Choose **Diversion & Injection > Diversion Route > BGP Route**. As shown in [Figure 6-12](#), only BGP routes are displayed on the **Local Route Parameter** page.

Figure 6-12 Local route parameters

Name	Parameter	Neighbor	Type	Operation
hwipv4	BGPV4 /Bind IP 80.94.244.1 /Local AS 8094 /Local Port 179 /Router ID 80.94.244.1 /Metric 100 /Community 600:650		Diversion	
hwipv6	BGPV4 /Bind IP 8094:244::1 /Local AS 8094 /Local Port 179 /Router ID 127.0.0.1 /Metric 100 /Community 600:650		Diversion	



## Creating a BGP Route


On the page shown in [Figure 6-12](#), click **Add BGP** to the lower right of the route daemon list to configure local BGP parameters. See [Figure 6-13](#).

Figure 6-13 Creating a BGP route

Item	Value
Name	
Type	Diversion
Local AS	
Local Port	179
Keepalive	60
Holdtime	180
Metric	100
Bind IP	191.85.1.1
Router-id	191.85.1.1
Management Port(3000~4000)	
No-advertise	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Yes <input type="radio"/> No
No-export	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Yes <input type="radio"/> No
Community	600:650 (*The default value is 600:650.)

[Table 6-6](#) describes parameters for creating a BGP route.


Table 6-6 Parameters for creating a BGP route


Parameter	Description
Name	Route daemon name.
Local AS	Autonomous system (AS) number of a BGP route daemon.   <b>Note</b>  You are advised to use the AS with number over 65000 and not to use a private domain that is already used by other countries.
Local Port	BGP port of the route daemon. Generally, the default port <b>179</b> is used.
Bind IP	Local IP address of the route daemon. You can type an IPv4 or IPv6 address according to the actual network deployment.
Router-id	Router ID included in the BGP route.
Management Port(3000~4000)	Management port of the route daemon. The port number ranges from 3000 to 4000.
Community	Community of the BGP route. The default value is <b>600:650</b> .




Other parameters including **Keepalive**, **Holdtime**, **Metric**, **No-advertise**, and **No-export** are directly taken from the BGPv4 protocol.

## Editing a BGP Route


On the route daemon list shown in [Figure 6-12](#), click  in the **Operation** column to edit a route.

 <b>Note</b>	Modifying BGP settings during the running of the HA function may cause traffic switchover, and is not recommended.
--	--

## Deleting a BGP Route

On the route daemon list shown in [Figure 6-12](#), click  in the **Operation** column to delete a route.

## Viewing the Route Status

On the route daemon list shown in [Figure 6-12](#), click  in the **Operation** column to view status of the route.

## Adding a BGP Neighbor




A BGP route is the only route that has neighbors. On the route daemon list shown in [Figure 6-12](#), click  in the **Neighbor** column to add a BGP neighbor. See [Figure 6-14](#).

Figure 6-14 Adding a BGP neighbor

BGP Neighbor Parameter Setting							
Neighbor Name	Neighbor IP	Local Daemon	Remote As	Remote Port	Auth	Ebgp-multihop	Last-Hop IP
<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	bgp_ipv4	<input type="text"/>	179	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>
							<input type="button" value="OK"/> <input type="button" value="Cancel"/>

 <b>Note</b>	After a neighbor is added, click  to check whether it is connected.
--	--



[Table 6-7](#) describes parameters of a BGP neighbor.

Table 6-7 Parameters for creating a BGP neighbor





Parameter	Description
Neighbor Name	BGP neighbor name.
Neighbor IP	IP address of the BGP neighbor. Both IPv4 and IPv6 addresses are allowed.

Parameter	Description
Remote As	Autonomous system of the BGP neighbor.
Remote Port	Remote port of the BGP neighbor. The default port number is <b>179</b> .
Auth	Authentication password. This parameter is required only when you encrypt the BGP neighbor.
Ebgp-multihop	Maximum number of hops allowed by the External Border Gateway Protocol (EBGP).
Last-Hop IP	IP address of the router directly connecting to the ADS device. Both IPv4 and IPv6 addresses are allowed.

## Hiding or Displaying a BGP Neighbor


All neighbors are displayed in the list by default. You can click  to hide neighbors of a route or click  to display all of them.

## Other Operations on a BGP Neighbor

After all BGP neighbors are displayed, you can click  to modify information of a neighbor, click  to delete a neighbor, click  to check whether a neighbor can be pinged, or click  to view the connection status of a neighbor.







Note

After you click , if the link works properly, the ping output displays the status of only the first five packets.

## 6.2.2 IP Route Assignment

IP routes enable the current ADS device to receive notifications (configured together with diversion filtering rules) from an NSFOCUS ADS detection device and to decide which route daemon sends notifications. See [Figure 6-15](#).

Figure 6-15 IP route assignment

IP Route Assignment			
IP Route Assignment (only for receiving notifications from probe)			
Protected IP	IP Prefix Length/Netmask	Assigned Route Daemon	Operation
131.4.5.20	255.255.255.255	bgp_v4/	 
1314::520	128	bgp_v6/	 

[Add](#)

## Creating an IP Route

On the page shown in [Figure 6-15](#), click **Add** to the lower right of the **IP Route Assignment** list. On the **Add IP Route Assignment** page, configure parameters and then click **OK**.

Figure 6-16 Creating an IP route

Item	Value
IP Address	<input type="text"/>
IP Prefix Length/Netmask	255.255.255.255
Route Daemon	<input type="checkbox"/> bgp_ipv4 <input type="checkbox"/> bgp_v6

Table 6-8 describes parameters for creating an IP route.

Table 6-8 Parameters for creating an IP route

Parameter	Description
IP Address	IP address to which a route is assigned. You can type an IPv4 or IPv6 address according to the actual network deployment.
IP Prefix Length/Netmask	Prefix length (for the IPv6 protocol) or netmask (for the IPv4 protocol) of the IP address.
Route Daemon	Route daemon that sends a routing notification.

## Editing an IP Route

On the IP route assignment list shown in Figure 6-15, click  in the **Operation** column to edit an IP route.

## Deleting an IP Route

On the IP route assignment list shown in Figure 6-15, click  in the **Operation** column to delete an IP route.



Note

For how to configure diversion filtering rules, see section [6.4.1 Filtering Rules](#).

## 6.3 Traffic Injection

This section covers the following topics:

- [Injection Interfaces](#)
- [Injection Routes](#)
- [MAC Address Table](#)

## 6.3.1 Injection Interfaces



Note

The number of interfaces varies with ADS series, but the procedure for configuring injection interfaces is the same. This section uses ADS NX5-4020E as an example to describe how to configure injection interfaces.

To configure an injection interface, you need to configure parameters about the injection interface including interface IP address and netmask, VLAN ID, and physical port of the interface. The injection interface determines the physical port and packet encapsulation format for traffic re-injection.

This section covers the following topics:

- [Adding an Injection Interface](#)
- [Editing an Injection Interface](#)
- [Deleting Injection Interfaces](#)

### 6.3.1.1 Adding an Injection Interface

To add an injection interface, perform the following steps:

**Step 1** Choose **Diversion & Injection > Traffic Injection > Injection Interfaces**.

Figure 6-17 Injection interface list

Interface	Interface IP	IP Prefix Length/Netmask	VLAN ID	Physical Port	Description	Operation
<input type="checkbox"/>	59.74.2.254	255.255.255.0	0	G4/3		
<input type="checkbox"/>	59:74::254	64	0	G4/3		
<input type="checkbox"/>	80:91:77::1	64	77	G4/5		
<input type="checkbox"/>	80.91.77.1	255.255.255.0	77	G4/5		
<input type="checkbox"/>	83.16.55.254	255.255.255.0	0	PortChannel 1		

**Step 2** Click **Add** to open the page for adding an injection interface.

Figure 6-18 Adding an injection interface

Item	Value
Interface IP	<input type="text"/>
IP Prefix Length/Netmask	255.255.255.0 <small>(Note: An IPv6 address is valid only when its prefix length ranges from 48 to 128.)</small>
VLAN ID	<input type="text"/> <small>(Please type 0 if 802.1Q encapsulation is not performed.)</small>
Physical Port	<input type="checkbox"/> T1/1 <input type="checkbox"/> T1/2 <input type="checkbox"/> T2/1 <input type="checkbox"/> T2/2 <input type="checkbox"/> T3/1 <input type="checkbox"/> T3/2 <input type="checkbox"/> PortChannel 1 <input type="checkbox"/> G4/3 <input type="checkbox"/> G4/4 <input type="checkbox"/> G4/5 <input type="checkbox"/> G4/6 <input type="checkbox"/> G4/7 <input type="checkbox"/> G4/8
Description	<input type="text"/> <small>Length is less than 256 characters.</small>

Table 6-9 describes parameters of an injection interface.

Table 6-9 Parameters of an injection interface

Parameter	Description
Interface IP	IP address of the injection interface. You can type an IPv4 or IPv6 address according to the actual network deployment. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>If <b>Interface IP</b> is set to an IPv4 address, it can be either a network address in the format of *.*.*.0/24 or a broadcast address in the format of *.*.*.255/24.</li> <li>If <b>Interface IP</b> is set to an IPv6 address, the IPv6 prefix length range is 48–128 bits.</li> </ul>
IP Prefix Length/Netmask	Prefix length (for the IPv6 protocol) or netmask (for the IPv4 protocol) of the interface IP address.
VLAN ID	VLAN ID of the injection interface. The value is an integer ranging from 0 to 4094.
Physical Port	Physical port of the injection interface. You can select multiple physical ports.



IP address configured on the injection interface is a source IP address of the ARP query packets, which is mainly used by the ADS device to learn the next-hop MAC address. Other devices cannot communicate with this IP address.


- When VLAN ID is not 0, all packets will be encapsulated with the IEEE 802.1Q protocol and then be forwarded.
- When VLAN ID is 0, all packets will be encapsulated with a common Ethernet protocol. If the injection interface has several physical ports, traffic is forwarded in load balancing mode on these interfaces.

**Step 3** Set parameters and click **OK** to save the settings.

---End

### 6.3.1.2 Editing an Injection Interface


After configuring injection interfaces, you can edit interface parameters by performing the following steps:

- Step 1** On the injection interface list shown in [Figure 6-17](#), click  in the **Operation** column of an interface to edit interface parameters.
- Step 2** After editing interface parameters, click **OK** to save the settings and return to the injection interface list.

---End

### 6.3.1.3 Deleting Injection Interfaces

You can delete one injection interface or multiple interfaces in batches on ADS devices.

- Method 1: On the injection interface list shown in [Figure 6-17](#), click  in the **Operation** column of an interface and then click **OK** in the confirmation dialog box to delete an injection interface.
- Method 2: Select one or more injection interfaces (or select the **Select All** check box to select all injection interfaces) to be deleted, click **Delete** to the lower right of the interface list, and then click **OK** in the confirmation dialog box to delete the selected interfaces.

## 6.3.2 Injection Routes

ADS supports multiple injection routes. If multiple routes have the same priority, ADS injects traffic along all the routes and checks the connectivity of all the routes. Once a route fails, ADS automatically invalidates the route and injects traffic along the other routes subsequently. If multiple injection routes have different priorities, ADS injects traffic along the route with the highest priority, and uses the other routes as standby routes. In this case, ADS checks the connectivity of all the routes. If the route with the highest priority fails, ADS considers it as an invalid one and injects traffic along the route with the highest priority among the standby routes. This master-slave mechanism among routes achieves high availability.

This section covers the following topics:

- [Creating an Injection Route](#)
- [Creating Injection Routes in Batches](#)
- [Viewing Rule Status of Injection Routes](#)
- [Viewing Link Connectivity of Injection Routes](#)
- [Viewing Injection Routes](#)
- [Learning MAC Address](#)
- [Enabling and Disabling Injection Routes](#)
- [Resetting Link Switch Count](#)
- [Editing Injection Routes](#)
- [Deleting Injection Routes](#)
- [Editing Advanced Configurations](#)
- [Searching for Injection Routes](#)

### 6.3.2.1 Creating an Injection Route

To create an injection route, perform the following steps:

- Step 1** Choose **Diversion & Injection > Traffic Injection > Injection Routes** to open the **Injection Routes** page, as shown in [Figure 6-19](#).

Figure 6-19 Injection routes

Protected IP	IP Prefix Length/Netmask	Next-Hop IP	MPLS Label	MPLS Learning Mode	Loopback	VPN Label	VPN Learning Mode	GRE Tunnel ID	GRE Tunnel Learning Mode	Rule Status	Link Connectivity	Link Switch Count	Description	Operation
70.70.24.1	255.255.255.255	135.1.1.2	0	Invalid	0.0.0.0	0	Invalid	0	Invalid	Enable	(Master)	0		[Icons]
70.70.24.2	128	135.1.1.2	0	Invalid	::	0	Invalid	0	Invalid	Disable	(Master)	1		[Icons]
8.17.66.11	128	23.23.23.2	0	Auto-learning	::	0	GPE	0	Invalid	Disable	(Master)	0		[Icons]
8.18.66.11	128	23.23.23.2	0	Auto-learning	::	0	GPE	0	Invalid	Disable	(Master)	0		[Icons]
8.18.66.11	255.255.255.255	23.23.23.1	0	Auto-learning	93.11.22.33	0	Invalid	0	Invalid	Disable	(Master)	0		[Icons]
131.4.5.20	255.255.255.255	23.23.23.1	0	Auto-learning	0.0.0.0	0	Auto-learning	0	Invalid	Disable	(Master)	0	12243354769809-90077...	[Icons]
1314.520	128	23.23.23.2	0	Auto-learning	::	0	Auto-learning	0	Invalid	Disable	(Master)	0	ggf6qdfpvcvfd6666d...	[Icons]
8.18.66.11	120	23.23.23.2	0	Auto-learning	::	0	GPE	0	Invalid	Disable	(Master)	0		[Icons]
71.70.24.0	255.255.255.0	0.0.0.0	0	Invalid	0.0.0.0	0	Invalid	0	Invalid	Disable	(Master)	0		[Icons]
70.70.24.2	255.255.255.255	23.23.23.1	1048575	Manual setting	0.0.0.0	0	Invalid	0	Invalid	Disable	(Master)	0	test1	[Icons]

- Step 2** Click **Add**.

Figure 6-20 Creating an injection route

**Add Injection Route**

Item: \_\_\_\_\_ Value: \_\_\_\_\_

Protected IP: \_\_\_\_\_

IP Prefix Length/Netmask: 255.255.255.255 (\*The IPv4 netmask ranges from 255.255.0.0 to 255.255.255.255. The IPv6 prefix length ranges from 0 to 128.)

Next-Hop IP: 0.0.0.0

MPLS Label: 0 (\*If no MPLS label is configured, fill in 0.)

MPLS Learning Mode: Invalid (\*Auto-learning can be selected only if the injection route label learning function is enabled in running mode.)

Loopback: 0.0.0.0

VPN Label: 0 (\*If no VPN label is configured, fill in 0.)

VPN Learning Mode: Invalid (\*Auto-learning can be selected only if the injection route label learning function is enabled in running mode.)

GRE Tunnel ID: 0 Select a GRE tunnel ID: [Dropdown]

GRE Tunnel Learning Mode: Invalid (\*Auto-learning can be selected only if the injection route label learning function is enabled in running mode.)

Rule Status: Enable

Priority: Master

IP to Check: 0.0.0.0

Gateway of IP to Check: 0.0.0.0


Description: \_\_\_\_\_  
Length is less than 256 characters.

[OK] [Cancel]

Table 6-10 describes parameters for creating an injection route.



Table 6-10 Parameters for creating an injection route

Parameter	Description
Protected IP	<p>IP address or IPv4 segment of a protected host. You can type an IPv4 or IPv6 address according to the actual network deployment.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>Currently, you can add an injection route for IP addresses in the /16 or /24 subnet, but not for those in the /4 subnet.</p>
IP Prefix Length/Netmask	<p>Prefix length (for the IPv6 protocol) or netmask (for the IPv4 protocol) of the IP address to be protected.</p> <p>The netmask of an IPv4 address must range from 255.255.0.0 to 255.255.255.255. The prefix length of an IPv6 address must be in the range of 0 to 128.</p>
Next-Hop IP	<p>Next-hop IP address of the traffic destined for the protected IP address (or IP segment). The next-hop IP address is often bundled with the injection interface of the ADS device.</p> <p>You can type an IPv4 or IPv6 address according to the actual network deployment.</p>
MPLS Label	MPLS label of the packet forwarded by the injection route. Type <b>0</b> if the MPLS label is not configured.
MPLS Learning Mode	<p>Specifies how to learn MPLS labels. It has the following values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Manual setting:</b> indicates that you need to specify the MPLS label manually.</li> <li>• <b>Auto-learning:</b> indicates that the ADS device automatically learns MPLS labels.</li> <li>• <b>Invalid:</b> indicates that no MPLS label is configured.</li> </ul>
Loopback	Specifies the loopback IP address of the border router in the network where the protected server resides.
VPN Label	VPN label. Type <b>0</b> if no VPN label is configured.
VPN Learning Mode	<p>Specifies how to learn the VNP label. It has the following values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Manual setting:</b> indicates that you need to specify the VPN label manually.</li> <li>• <b>Auto-learning:</b> indicates that the ADS device automatically learns VPN labels. In this mode, the loopback interface uses the IP address of the MP-BGP neighbor by default.</li> <li>• <b>Invalid:</b> indicates that no VPN label is configured.</li> <li>• <b>6PE:</b> indicates that the injection route uses the 6PE mode. In this mode, the loopback interface uses the IP address of the MP-BGP neighbor by default.</li> </ul>
GRE Tunnel ID	ID of a GRE tunnel. Leave it at the default value <b>0</b> if no GRE tunnel is configured.
GRE Tunnel Learning Mode	<p>Specifies how to learn the GRE tunnel label. It has the following values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Auto-learning:</b> indicates that the ADS system automatically learns CRE tunnel labels. In this case, <b>Enable Injection MPLS Label Learning</b> must be set to <b>Yes</b> in <b>Running Mode</b>.</li> <li>• <b>Manual setting:</b> indicates that a GRE tunnel label needs to be configured</li> </ul>

Parameter	Description
	manually. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Invalid:</b> indicates that no GRE tunnel label is configured.</li> </ul>
Rule Status	Controls whether to query the injection status. It has the following values: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Enable:</b> indicates that the system queries the injection rule when forwarding packets.</li> <li>• <b>Disable:</b> indicates that the system does not query the injection rule when forwarding packets.</li> </ul>
Priority	Route priority. The default value is <b>Master</b> . <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Master:</b> indicates a higher priority.</li> <li>• <b>Slave:</b> indicates a lower priority.</li> </ul>
IP to Check	IP address to be pinged when the connectivity of the current route is checked. The default value is <b>0.0.0.0</b> , indicating that the next-hop IP address is used as the IP to check.
Gateway of IP to Check	The gateway of the IP address to be pinged when the connectivity of the current route is checked. The default value is <b>0.0.0.0</b> , indicating that no corresponding static route is configured.  If <b>IP to Check</b> and <b>Gateway of IP to Check</b> are set to other values than the default ones, the system automatically adds a static route to <b>IP to Check</b> and with the next hop as <b>Gateway of IP to Check</b> .



When **Next-Hop IP Address** is set to **0.0.0.0**, the ADS device performs layer 2 forwarding. Assume that the protected IP address is 192.168.1.0, the netmask is 255.255.255.0, and the next-hop IP address is 0.0.0.0. Then the next-hop IP address of the traffic destined for 192.168.1.1 is 192.168.1.1, and that of 192.168.1.2 is 192.168.1.2. The rest may be deduced by analogy.

**Step 3** Set parameters and click **OK** to save the settings.

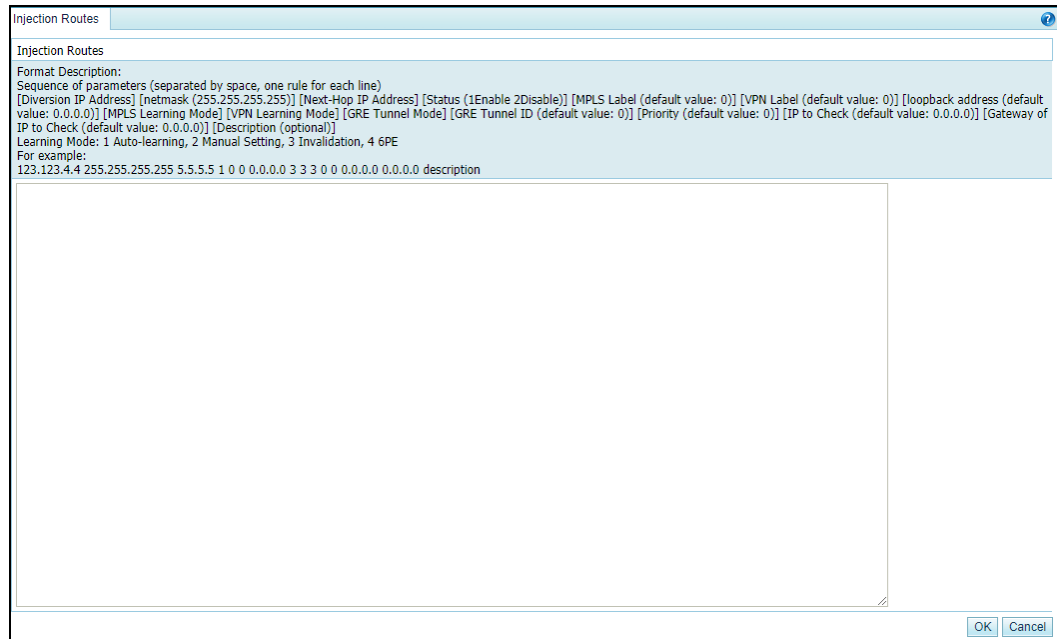
----End

### 6.3.2.2 Creating Injection Routes in Batches

You can create injection routes in batches on the ADS system by performing the following steps:

**Step 1** Click **Import Route** to the lower right of the injection route list.

Figure 6-21 Creating injection routes in batches



**Step 2** Type multiple injection routes as prompted.

Pay attention to the following format specifications:

- An injection route is typed in the following format:[diversion IP address] [netmask (255.255.255.255)] [next-hop IP address] status (1Enable 2Disable) [MPLS label (default value:0)] [VPN label (default value:0)] [loopback address (default value:0.0.0.0)] [MPLS learning mode] [VPN learning mode] [GRE tunnel mode] [GRE tunnel ID (default value:0)] [peer\_lsr\_id (default value:0.0.0.0)]. For two learning modes, the value **1** indicates auto-learning, the value **2** indicates manual setting, the value **3** indicates invalid, and the value **4** indicates 6PE.
- An injection route example is as follows: 123.123.4.4 255.255.255.255 5.5.5.5 1 0 0 0.0.0.0 3 3 3 0 0.0.0.0
- Parameters of each injection route are separated by spaces.
- Each line can contain only one injection route.

**Step 3** After the parameter configuration is complete, click **OK** to save the settings.

----End





### 6.3.2.3 Viewing Rule Status of Injection Routes

After routes are configured and applied, you can view rule status of the routes in the **Rule Status** column in [Figure 6-19](#). The rule status could be one of the following:

- **Enable**: The rule is manually enabled, and the link is connected or not checked.
- **Enable (Block)**: The rule is enabled, but cannot be used because the link is disconnected for the injection route.
- **Disable (Block)**: The rule is disabled by the system because the injection link is disconnected and the number of link switches exceeds the specified number.
- **Disable**: The rule is manually disabled.

### 6.3.2.4 Viewing Link Connectivity of Injection Routes

After routes are configured and applied, you can view link connectivity of the routes in the **Link Connectivity** column in [Figure 6-19](#). The link connectivity could be one of the following:

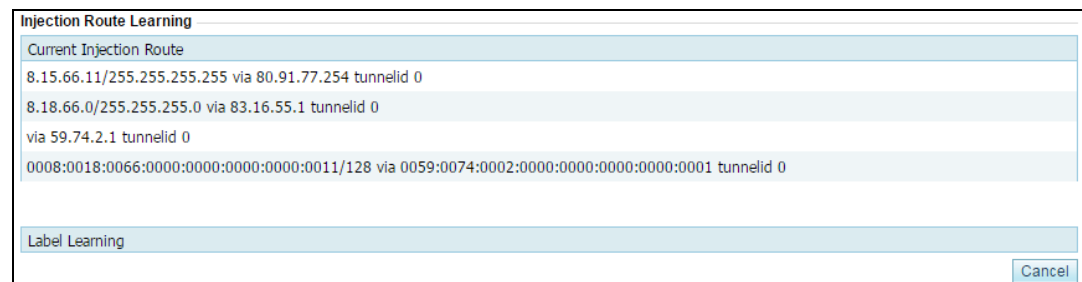
- : The link of this injection route functions properly. That is, ADS can successfully ping the **IP to Check** of the injection route.
- : The link of this injection route is faulty. That is, ADS fails to ping the **IP to Check** of the injection route. In this case, traffic cannot be injected along this route.
- : The link of this injection route is in unstable status. ADS does not check this injection route.
- : The link of this injection route is in unstable status. ADS is checking this injection route.

### 6.3.2.5 Viewing Injection Routes

After injection routes are configured and applied, you can view information about such routes and MPLS labels learned by the device. The detailed procedure is as follows:

- Step 1** Click **View Route** to the lower right of the injection route list to view current injection routes and learned labels.

Figure 6-22 Viewing injection routes and learned labels



- **Current Injection Route** lists current injection routes that are taking effect on the device engine.
- **Label Learning** lists MPLS labels learned by the device. An MPLS label is a local short identifier with a fixed length. It is used to identify the Forwarding Equivalence Class (FEC) to which a group belongs.



Note

Injection routes support encapsulation of two layers of labels.


- **Upper labels:** MPLS labels that are learned via the MPLS protocol. To enable MPLS label learning support on the device, you need to first enable the Label Distribution Protocol (LDP), then configure an MPLS label and the MPLS learning mode for injection routes, and enable injection route label learning.
- **Lower labels:** 6PE labels or VPN labels that are learned via MP-BGP. To enable support of 6PE or VPN labels on the device, you need to first configure MP-BGP and then configure the VPN label and VPN learning mode for injection routes.


- Step 2** After viewing injection routes, click **Cancel** to return to the injection route list.

---End

### 6.3.2.6 Learning MAC Address

The MAC address auto-learning function allows the ADS device to learn the MAC addresses of the protected IP addresses by sending ARP broadcast messages. The mapping between the protected IP addresses and the MAC addresses learned by the ADS device is displayed in the MAC address table. For the mapping details, see section [6.3.3 MAC Address Table](#).

To view MAC addresses learned by the ADS device, click  to the right of an injection route, as shown in [Figure 6-19](#).



 <b>Note</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• If the ADS device takes a long time to learn the MAC address of a protected IPv6 address, you are advised to manually bind the protected IP address and the MAC address.</li> <li>• If the prefix length of the IPv6 address is not 128 bits and the next hop is not a specific IP address, MAC learning will be unavailable.</li> </ul>
--	---

### 6.3.2.7 Enabling and Disabling Injection Routes



On the ADS device, only enabled injection routes are valid, while disabled ones are invalid. The operations of enabling and disabling injection routes free you from redundant deletions and additions. If some injection routes are not required currently, disable them.

You can enable or disable a single injection route or more routes in batches.

#### Enabling Injection Routes


- Method 1: On the injection route list as shown in [Figure 6-19](#), click  in the **Operation** column of a disabled route to enable it. Then, the status icon of this route turns to .
- Method 2: On the injection route list shown in [Figure 6-19](#), select one or more injection routes (or select the **Select All** check box to select all injection routes) to be deleted, click **Enable** to the lower right of the route list, and click **OK** in the confirmation dialog box to enable the selected routes.

#### Disabling Injection Routes

- Method 1: On the injection route list shown in [Figure 6-19](#), click  in the **Operation** column of an enabled route to disable it. Then, the status icon of this route turns to .
- Method 2: On the injection route list shown in [Figure 6-19](#), select one or more injection routes (or select the **Select All** check box to select all injection routes) to be deleted, click **Disable** to the lower right of the route list, and then click **OK** in the confirmation dialog box to disable the selected routes.


### 6.3.2.8 Resetting Link Switch Count

You can view the number of link switches (from valid to invalid) of an injection route in the **Link Switch Count** column in [Figure 6-19](#).

You can click  in the **Operation** column of an injection route to reset the number of link switches to **0**.

### 6.3.2.9 Editing Injection Routes

After configuring injection routes, you can edit route parameters by performing the following steps:


**Step 1** On the injection route list in [Figure 6-19](#), click  in the **Operation** column of a route to edit route parameters.

**Step 2** After editing parameters, click **OK** to save the settings and return to the injection route list.

---End

### 6.3.2.10 Deleting Injection Routes

You can delete one injection route or more routes in batches on the ADS device.

- Method 1: On the injection route list shown in [Figure 6-19](#), click  in the **Operation** column of a route and click **OK** in the confirmation dialog box to delete an injection route.
- Method 2: Select one or more injection routes (or select the **Select All** check box to select all injection routes) to be deleted, click **Delete** to the lower right of the route list, and click **OK** in the confirmation dialog box to delete the selected routes.

### 6.3.2.11 Editing Advanced Configurations

You can edit advanced configurations that apply to all injection routes.

Click **Advanced Config** to the lower right of the injection route list shown in [Figure 6-19](#). The page for editing advanced configurations appears.

- By default, no function is enabled. See [Figure 6-23](#).
- After **Injection Route Redundancy** is set to **Enable**, advanced options are as shown in [Figure 6-24](#).

Figure 6-23 Advanced options

Injection Routes	
<b>Advanced Options</b>	
Item	Value
Enable Injection MPLS Label Learning	Yes
Enable Longest Route Match	Yes
Enable Route Cache	Yes
Diversion-Interface-Preferred Injection	No
VLAN-Preferred Injection	No
<b>Advanced Functions</b>	
Item	Value
Injection Route Redundancy	Disable
Injection Connectivity Check	Enable
LDP Neighbor Status Check	Enable
<b>Advanced Function Parameters</b>	
Item	Value
Detection Period	12
Attempts	7
<input type="button" value="Edit"/> <input type="button" value="Cancel"/>	

Figure 6-24 Advanced options – with the injection route redundancy enabled

Item	Value
Enable Injection MPLS Label Learning	Yes
Enable Longest Route Match	Yes
Enable Route Cache	Yes
Diversion-Interface-Preferred Injection	No
VLAN-Preferred Injection	Yes

Item	Value
Injection Route Redundancy	Disable
Injection Connectivity Check	Enable
LDP Neighbor Status Check	Enable


Item	Value
Detection Period	12
Attempts	7




Edit Cancel

**Step 2** After configuring parameters, click **OK**.

Table 6-11 describes advanced options of injection routes.

Table 6-11 Parameters for advanced options of injection routers

Parameter		Description
Advanced Options	Enable Injection MPLS Label Learning	Controls whether to enable MPLS label learning for injection routes. The default value is <b>No</b> . This needs to be enabled only when MPLS injection is enabled.   <b>Note</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>If MPLS label learning is enabled while MPLS injection is disabled, injection routes of other types will be unable to be dispatched.</li> <li>MPLS label learning for injection routes cannot be enabled simultaneously with the injection route redundancy function.</li> </ul>
	Enable Longest Route Match	Controls whether to enable longest route match. The default value is <b>No</b> . After longest route match is enabled, among routes destined for the same IP address, the system selects one based on their netmask values. The route with the largest netmask value will be selected.
	Enable Route Cache	Controls whether to enable route cache. The default value is <b>No</b> . The route cache needs to be enabled only when longest route match is enabled. The route cache is like a fast forwarding table. With this enabled, the system does not need to check the entire injection routing table every time.
	Diversion-Interface-Preferred Injection	Controls whether to enable diversion-interface-preferred injection. The default value is <b>No</b> . After this is enabled, traffic will be preferentially injected over the diversion interface, ensuring that traffic is diverted and injected over the same interface.

Parameter		Description
		 <p><b>Note</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To enable diversion-interface-preferred injection, you should first enable longest route match.</li> <li>Diversion-interface-preferred injection and injection route redundancy cannot be enabled simultaneously. To enable diversion-interface-preferred injection, you should ensure that the injection route over the diversion interface has the highest priority or all injection routes have the same priority.</li> </ul>
	VLA-Preferred Injection	Control whether to inject traffic preferentially from VLAN. The default value is <b>No</b> . If this function is enabled, the traffic will be preferentially injected from VLAN.
Advanced Functions	Injection Route Redundancy	Controls whether to enable the injection route redundancy function. <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>After injection route redundancy is enabled, neither diversion-interface-preferred injection nor injection MPLS label learning can be enabled.</p>
	Injection Connectivity Check	Controls whether to enable injection connectivity checking. After this is enabled, ADS periodically checks whether the link is available, that is, whether <b>IP to Check</b> specified in the injection route rule is reachable. If not, the injection route will be unable to take effect. When <b>IP to Check</b> is <b>0.0.0.0</b> (default), the system checks whether the next-hop IP address is reachable.
	LDP Neighbor Status Check	Controls whether to enable the LDP neighbor status check. After this is enabled, ADS periodically checks whether its LDP neighbor is reachable if MPLS label learning is also enabled for injection routes. If not, all MPLS-related injection routes will lose effect and traffic diversion for all MPLS-related IP addresses will stop.
Advanced Function Parameters	Detection Period	Specifies the interval between two link availability checks. The value ranges from 1 to 600, in seconds. The default value is <b>60</b> .
	Attempts	Specifies the allowed number of attempts to check injection link availability. The value ranges from 1 to 10, and the default value is <b>3</b> . If a link remains unavailable after the specified number of check attempts, the link is considered invalid and a link switch is triggered.
	Link Switch Limit	Specifies the maximum number of link status switches before an injection link is considered invalid. The value ranges from 0 to 10, and the default value is <b>5</b> . The value <b>0</b> indicates no limit on the number of link status switches. <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>A link status switch is counted when the status of a link changes from up to down, but not when the status changes from down to up. After the number of link</p>



Parameter	Description
	status switches exceeds the specified maximum number, the system automatically adjusts the priority of the injection link.

### 6.3.2.12 Searching for Injection Routes

The injection route table shown in [Figure 6-19](#) lists all existing injection routes in the ascending order of creation time by default. By default, each page lists 10 entries. You can also change the number to **20**, **50**, or **100**.

You can set filtering conditions in the upper part of the page to list only injection routes meeting the specified conditions. The procedure is as follows:

**Step 1** Set filtering conditions.

For the description of parameters, see [Table 6-10](#).

**Step 2** Click **Search**.

Then only injection routes meeting the conditions are listed below, as shown in [Figure 6-25](#).

Figure 6-25 Searching for injection routes

Protected IP	IP Prefix Length/Netmask	Next-Hop IP	MPLS Label	MPLS Learning Mode	Loopback	VPN Label	VPN Learning Mode	GRE Tunnel ID	GRE Tunnel Learning Mode	Rule Status	Link Connectivity	Link Switch Count	Description	Operation	
<input type="checkbox"/>	1.1.1.1	255.255.255.255	0.0.0.0	0	Invalid	0.0.0.0	0	Invalid	0	Invalid	Enable	(Master)	0	test	

---End

## 6.3.3 MAC Address Table

The MAC address table specifies the mapping between IP addresses and MAC addresses on the ADS device for fast data forwarding. The MAC address table can be added manually or learned by the ADS device dynamically. For details on dynamic learning of MAC addresses, see section [6.3.2.6 Learning MAC Address](#). This section covers the following topics:

- [Adding a MAC Address Entry](#)
- [Editing a MAC Address Entry](#)
- [Deleting a MAC Address Entry](#)
- [Querying MAC Addresses](#)
- [Configuring Invalid MAC Addresses](#)

### 6.3.3.1 Adding a MAC Address Entry

To add a MAC address entry, perform the following steps:

**Step 1** Choose **Diversion & Injection > Traffic Injection > MAC Address Table** to open the configuration page for the MAC address table.

Figure 6-26 MAC address table

IP Address	MAC Address	Operation
8091:0047:0000:0000:0000:0000:0000:0002	00:0c:29:9b:b9:08	
8091:0047:0000:0000:0000:0000:0000:00ff	24:9e:ab:b7:69:ed	
80.91.47.254	24:9e:ab:b7:69:ed	

**Step 2** Click **Add** to the lower right of the MAC address table to open the page for adding the mapping between an IP address and a MAC address.

Figure 6-27 Adding the mapping between an IP address and a MAC address

Item	Value
IP Address	<input type="text"/>
MAC Address	<input type="text"/>

**Step 3** Type the IP address and MAC address and click **OK** to save the settings.



Note

The ADS device supports the IPv4/IPv6 dual-stack. Therefore, you can configure IPv4 or IPv6 addresses in the MAC address table.

---End

### 6.3.3.2 Editing a MAC Address Entry

After configuring MAC address entries, you can edit parameters of this entry by performing the following steps:


**Step 1** On the page shown in [Figure 6-26](#), click in the **Operation** column of a MAC address to edit its parameters.

**Step 2** After editing parameters, click **OK** to save the settings and return to the MAC address table.

---End

### 6.3.3.3 Deleting a MAC Address Entry

You can delete MAC address entries one by one on the ADS device.

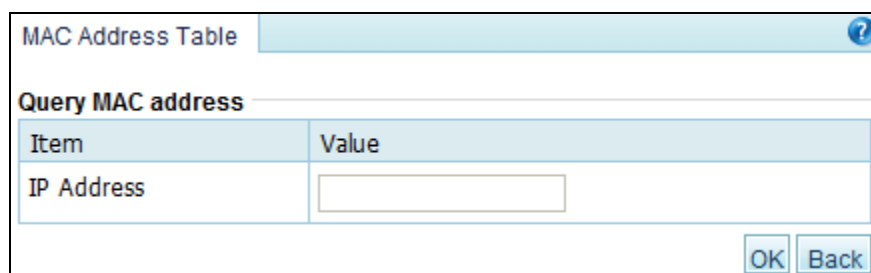
In the MAC address table shown in [Figure 6-26](#), click  in the **Operation** column of a MAC address entry and then click **OK** to delete an entry.

### 6.3.3.4 Querying MAC Addresses

To query the MAC address mapped to an IPv4 or IPv6 address, perform the following steps:

- Step 1** On the page shown in [Figure 6-26](#), click **Query** to the lower right of the MAC address table to open the MAC address query page.

Figure 6-28 Querying the MAC address mapped to an IP address



Item	Value
IP Address	<input type="text"/>

- Step 2** Type the IPv4 or IPv6 address and click **OK**.

Then, the MAC address mapped to this IP address is displayed.

- Step 3** Click **Back** to return to the MAC address table.

----End

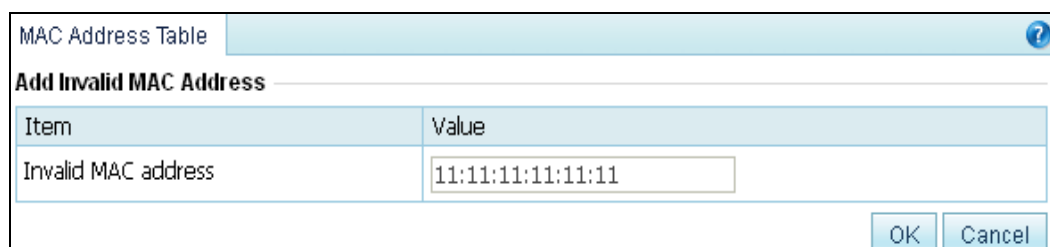
### 6.3.3.5 Configuring Invalid MAC Addresses

If the MAC address of an IP packet is the same as an invalid MAC address configured on the ADS device, the system drops the packet automatically.

To add an invalid MAC address, perform the following steps:

- Step 1** On the page shown in [Figure 6-26](#), click **Invalid MAC Setting** to the lower right of the MAC address table to open the page for configuring invalid MAC addresses. See [Figure 6-29](#).

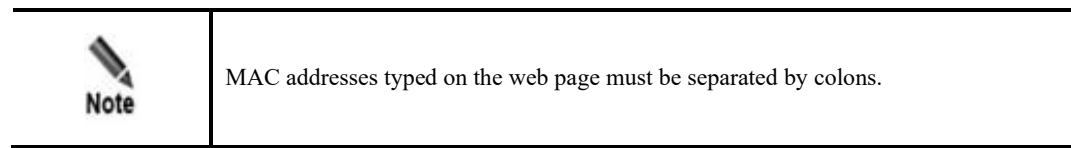
Figure 6-29 Configuring invalid MAC addresses



Item	Value
Invalid MAC address	<input type="text" value="11:11:11:11:11:11"/>

- Step 2** Configure invalid addresses.

The default invalid MAC address is **11:11:11:11:11:11**. You can configure other invalid addresses as required and then click **OK** to save the settings.



----End

## 6.4 Traffic Diversion

This section covers the following topics:

- [Filtering Rules](#)
- [Manual Diversion](#)
- [Group Diversion](#)
- [Diversion Routing Table](#)


### 6.4.1 Filtering Rules

A diversion filtering rule informs the current ADS device whether to advertise route information for automatic traffic diversion when receiving attack information from NSFOCUS's anti-DDoS detection devices.

As shown in [Figure 6-30](#), diversion filtering rules are listed by time of addition. The device matches rules (of **Enable** status) from top to bottom and uses the default rule if no rule is matched.

**Enable by Default** indicates that ADS, by default, diverts the traffic of the protected IP address included in the routing notification from NSFOCUS Probe.

Figure 6-30 Filtering rules

Filtering Rules				
IP Address	IP Prefix Length/Netmask	Diversion-Allowed	Rule Status	Operation
3.3.3.0	255.255.255.255	Yes	Enable	

Enable by Default  [Add](#)

### Creating a Diversion Filtering Rule

On the page shown in [Figure 6-30](#), click **Add** to the lower right of the list. On the **Add Diversion Filtering Rule** page, configure parameters and click **OK**.

Figure 6-31 Creating a diversion filtering rule


Item	Value
IP Address	<input type="text"/>
IP Prefix Length/Netmask	255.255.255.255
Diversion-Allowed	<input type="checkbox"/>
Rule Status	Enable <span>▼</span>

Table 6-12 describes parameters for creating a diversion filtering rule.

Table 6-12 Parameters for creating a diversion filtering rule

Parameter	Description
IP Address	IP address or segment to be protected. You can type an IPv4 or IPv6 address according to the actual network deployment.
IP Prefix Length/Netmask	Prefix length (for the IPv6 protocol) or netmask (for the IPv4 protocol) of the IP address to be protected. This parameter allows you to configure a network segment.
Diversion-Allowed	Controls whether to enable diversion. A check in the checkbox indicates that the ADS device allows diversion. This check box is deselected by default, indicating that the ADS device does not allow diversion.
Rule Status	Controls whether to enable the rule immediately after the rule is added. It has the following values: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Enable:</b> enables a diversion filter rule immediately after it is added.</li> <li><b>Disable:</b> disables the diversion filter rule that can be enabled later manually.</li> </ul>

## Editing a Diversion Filtering Rule

On the diversion filtering rule list shown in Figure 6-30, click  in the **Operation** column to edit a rule.



## Deleting a Diversion Filtering Rule

On the diversion filtering rule list shown in Figure 6-30, click  in the **Operation** column to delete a rule.

## Changing the Status of a Diversion Filtering Rule

On the diversion filtering rule list shown in Figure 6-30, click  in the **Operation** column to change the status **Enable** to **Disable**, and click  to change the status **Disable** to **Enable**.

## Changing the Priority of a Diversion Filtering Rule

On the diversion filtering rule list shown in [Figure 6-30](#), click  and  to change the priority of the rules in the list.

### 6.4.2 Manual Diversion

In a cluster, a manual diversion policy is used to divert traffic of an IP address to different ADS devices. After a manual diversion policy is added or deleted, it will take effect immediately and be displayed on or disappear from the list, without requiring a click on the **Save** button.



Note

In manual diversion mode, each time ADS diverts traffic to only one /24 subnet address to the ADS device. If you want the ADS device to divert traffic to multiple /24 subnet addresses, please configure multiple manual traffic diversion rules.

This section covers the following topics:









- [Creating a Manual Traffic Diversion Rule](#)
- [Creating Manual Diversion Rules in Batches](#)
- [Enabling and Disabling Manual Diversion Rules](#)
- [Filtering Manual Diversion Rules](#)
- [Deleting Manual Diversion Rules](#)
- [Deleting a Specified Route](#)
- [Refreshing Routes Periodically](#)
- [Canceling Injection Route Inspection](#)
- [Restarting the Scheduling Service](#)

#### 6.4.2.1 Creating a Manual Traffic Diversion Rule

To create a traffic diversion rule, perform the following steps:

- Step 1** Choose **Diversion & Injection > TrafficDiversion > Manual Diversion** to open the diversion rule configuration page.

Figure 6-32 Traffic diversion rules

IP Address/Prefix Length (Netmask)	Extend	Diversion Destination IP	Route Daemon	Rule Status	Description	Operation
<input type="checkbox"/> 41:85:41::2/128	Enable	::1	IPv6_2500/	Disable		 
<input type="checkbox"/> 41:85:41::1/128	Enable	::1	IPv6_2500/	Enable		 
<input type="checkbox"/> 41.85.41.222/255.255.255.255	Enable	127.0.0.1	BGP_250/	Disable		 
<input type="checkbox"/> 41.85.41.1/255.255.255.255	Enable	127.0.0.1	BGP_250/	Enable		 

Restart Scheduling Service | Cancel injection route inspection  | Periodical Refresh  | Delete Specified | Enable | Disable | Delete | Add | Add Multiple


- Step 2** Click **Add**.

Figure 6-33 Creating a traffic diversion rule

Item	Value
IP Address	
IP Prefix Length/Netmask	255.255.255.255 (Note: For traffic diversion for a network segment, please check whether any contained rules cover the gateway. The IPv4 netmask range is 255.255.255.0-255.255.255.255. The range of IPv6 prefix length is 0-128 bits.)
Extend	Enable (Note: The IPv6 prefix length should be in the range of 120-128 bits. Netmask extending is allowed.)
Diversion Destination	127.0.0.1
Route Daemon	<input type="checkbox"/> channel1 <input type="checkbox"/> HW5700_v6 <input type="checkbox"/> x_v4_ads
Rule Status	Enable
Description	

Table 6-13 describes parameters for creating a diversion rule.

Table 6-13 Parameters for creating a diversion rule

Parameter	Description
IP Address	IP address or IP segment to be protected, usually the IP address of the protected server. You can type an IPv4 or IPv6 address according to the actual network deployment.
IP Prefix Length/Netmask	Prefix length (for the IPv6 protocol) or netmask (for the IPv4 protocol) of the IP address to be diverted.   <b>Note</b> The netmask of an IPv4 address to be protected can range from 255.255.255.0 to 255.255.255.255.
Extend	Controls whether diversion rules can be set for specific IP addresses in a subnet. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Enable:</b> indicates that diversion rules can be set for specific IP addresses in a subnet.</li> <li><b>Disable:</b> indicates that diversion rules can only be set to the subnet, instead of specific IP addresses in the subnet.</li> </ul>
Diversion Destination	Next-hop IP address of the route notification sent from the route daemon. It is usually the IP address of the diversion interface of the ADS device or ::1. The default value is <b>127.0.0.1</b> .
Route Daemon	Route daemon that sends a routing notification.
Rule Status	Controls whether to enable the rule immediately after the rule is added. It has the following values: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Enable:</b> enables a diversion filter rule immediately after it is added.</li> <li><b>Disable:</b> disables the diversion filter rule that can be enabled later manually.</li> </ul>

**Step 3** Set parameters and click **OK** to save the settings.



To ensure the injection of the diverted traffic, you must configure the injection route and injection MAC address correctly before manual diversion.

**Step 4** Click **Apply** in the upper-right corner of the web-based manager to make the settings take effect.

---End

## 6.4.2.2 Creating Manual Diversion Rules in Batches

To simplify operations, you can create manual diversion rules in batches on the ADS device by performing the following steps:

**Step 1** Click **Add Multiple** to the lower right of the rule list on the page shown in [Figure 6-32](#).

Figure 6-34 Creating traffic diversion rules in batches

**Step 2** Type multiple manual diversion rules as prompted.

Pay attention to the following format specifications:

- Type a manual diversion rule as follows:[IP address] [netmask] [route daemon], for example, 10.10.10.18 255.255.255.255 nei1. For multiple daemons, a manual diversion rule is added as follows:10.10.10.18 255.255.255.255 nei1/nei2/.
- Three types of daemons are available:bgp, ospf, and rip.
- Parameters of a manual diversion rule are separated by spaces.



- Each line can contain only one manual diversion rule.

**Step 3** After configuring parameters, click **OK** to save the settings.



---End

### 6.4.2.3 Enabling and Disabling Manual Diversion Rules



On the ADS device, only enabled manual diversion rules are valid, while disabled ones are invalid. Enabling and disabling manual diversion rules frees you from redundant deletions and additions. If some manual diversion rules are not required currently, disable them.

You can enable or disable a single manual diversion rule or more rules in batches.

#### Enabling Manual Diversion Rules

- Method 1: On the manual diversion rule list shown in [Figure 6-32](#), click  in the **Operation** column of a disabled rule to enable it. Then, the status icon of this rule turns to .
- Method 2: On the manual diversion rule list shown in [Figure 6-32](#), select one or more rules (or select the **Select All** check box to select all manual diversion rules) to be enabled, click **Enable** to the lower right of the rule list, and click **OK** in the confirmation dialog box to enable the selected rules.

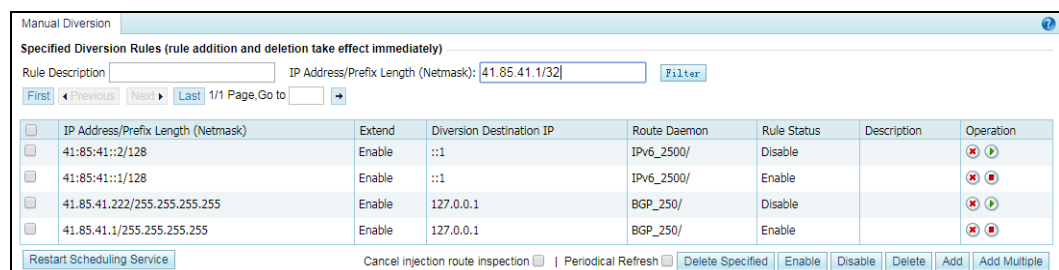
#### Disabling Manual Diversion Rules

- Method 1: On the manual diversion rule list shown in [Figure 6-32](#), click  in the **Operation** column of an enabled rule to disable it. Then, the status icon of this rule turns to .
- Method 2: On the manual diversion rule list shown in [Figure 6-32](#), select one or more rules (or select the **Select All** check box to select all manual diversion rules) to be disabled, click **Disable** to the lower right of the rule list, and click **OK** in the confirmation dialog box to disable the selected rules.

### 6.4.2.4 Filtering Manual Diversion Rules


On the **Manual Diversion** page shown in [Figure 6-32](#), type a keyword in the **Rule Description** text box or type an IP address and subnet in the **IP Address/Prefix Length (Netmask)** text box and click **Filter**. Manual diversion rules meeting the specified conditions will be displayed, as shown in [Figure 6-35](#).

Figure 6-35 Filtering manual diversion rules



## 6.4.2.5 Deleting Manual Diversion Rules

You can delete a single manual diversion rule or more rules in batches on the ADS device. This section describes how to delete unused diversion rules. For details on deleting diversion rules that are being used, see section [6.4.2.6 Deleting a Specified Route](#).

- Method 1: On the manual diversion rule list shown in [Figure 6-32](#), click  in the **Operation** column and click **OK** in the confirmation dialog box to delete a rule.
- Method 2: On the manual diversion rule list shown in [Figure 6-32](#), select one or more rules (or select the **Select All** check box to select all manual diversion rules) to be deleted, click **Delete** to the lower right of the rule list, and then click **OK** in the confirmation dialog box to delete the selected rules.



For details on deleting diversion rules that are being used, see section [6.4.2.6 Deleting a Specified Route](#).

## 6.4.2.6 Deleting a Specified Route

**Delete Specified** is used to delete diversion rules that are being used. The detailed procedure is as follows:

- Step 1** On the manual diversion rule list in [Figure 6-32](#), click **Delete Specified** to open the diversion rule deletion page.

See [Table 6-13](#) for descriptions of parameters in the **Delete Specified Route** dialog box.

Figure 6-36 Deleting a specified diversion rule

Item	Value
IP Address	<input type="text"/>
IP Prefix Length/Netmask	255.255.255.255 (Note: For traffic diversion for a network segment, please check whether any contained rules cover the gateway. The IPv4 netmask range is 255.255.255.0-255.255.255.255.)
Extend	Enable <input type="button" value="v"/>
Diversion Destination	<input type="text" value="127.0.0.1"/>
Route Daemon	<input type="checkbox"/> channel1 <input type="checkbox"/> HW5700_v6 <input type="checkbox"/> lx_v4_ads <input type="checkbox"/> All (It applies only to rules (in which daemon is all) added for the "routerman" account.) <input type="checkbox"/> ospf <input type="checkbox"/> rip <input type="checkbox"/> ospf6

- Step 2** Type the information about a diversion rule to be deleted and click **OK** to make the settings take effect.

----End

## 6.4.2.7 Refreshing Routes Periodically

After **Periodical Refresh** is selected, the route daemon information in manual diversion rules is refreshed every 60 seconds by default.

If the periodical route refresh function is enabled before manual diversion is interrupted, the ADS device refreshes the route daemon information and re-diverts the traffic immediately after detecting a BGP route failure. If the periodical route refresh function is not enabled, the ADS device does not refresh the route daemon information or re-divert the traffic information even it has detected a BGP route failure.

On the manual diversion rule list shown in [Figure 6-32](#), you can select the **Periodical Refresh** check box to enable the periodical route refresh function or deselect it to disable the periodical route refresh function.

### 6.4.2.8 Canceling Injection Route Inspection

If **Cancel injection route inspection** is selected, manually configured diversion rules can be used without injection route inspection. If the **Cancel injection route inspection** check box is not selected, the system will perform injection route inspection for a diversion rule to be enabled. The diversion rule can be successfully enabled only if the IP address of the injection route is valid.

On the page shown in [Figure 6-32](#), you can select the **Cancel injection route inspection** check box to disable injection route inspection, or clear the check box to enable injection route inspection.

### 6.4.2.9 Restarting the Scheduling Service

Restarting the scheduling service is used to reload manual diversion settings and make settings take effect. This prevents the engine restart from interrupting other services.

On the tab page shown in [Figure 6-32](#), you can click **Restart Scheduling Service** and then click **OK** in the confirmation dialog box, to restart the scheduling service.

## 6.4.3 Group Diversion


Group diversion rules are used to divert the traffic destined for a protection group to the diversion interface on the ADS device. This section describes how to add, delete, enable, and disable group diversion rules.

### Creating a Group Diversion Rule

To create a group diversion rule, perform the following steps:

**Step 1** Choose **Diversion & Injection > Traffic Diversion > Group Diversion**.

Figure 6-37 Group diversion rules

Group Diversion				
<input type="checkbox"/> Select All	Group Name	Route Daemon	Status	Operation
<input type="checkbox"/>	123	bgp17/	Enable	

**Step 2** Click **Add**.

Figure 6-38 Creating a group diversion rule

Item	Value
Group Name	Group Select
Route Daemon	<input type="checkbox"/> cisco_V4_TEN <input type="checkbox"/> cisco_V6_TEN <input type="checkbox"/> HW_V4_TEN_E <input type="checkbox"/> HW_V6_TEN_E <input type="checkbox"/> ImpIs
Rule Status	Enable

Table 6-14 describes parameters for creating a group diversion rule.

Table 6-14 Parameters for creating a group diversion rule

Parameter	Description
Group Name	Protection group whose traffic is to be diverted. Fuzzy search is supported.
Route Daemon	Route daemon.
Rule Status	Controls whether to enable the group diversion rule. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Enable</b>: enables the group diversion rule.</li> <li>• <b>Disable</b>: disables the group diversion rule.</li> </ul>

**Step 3** Set parameters and click **OK** to save the settings.

---End

## Deleting Group Diversion Rules



To delete group diversion rules, perform the following steps:

On the group diversion rule list shown in Figure 6-37, select one or more group diversion rules (or select the **Select All** check box to select all rules) to be deleted, click **Delete** to the lower right of the group diversion rule list, and click **OK** in the confirmation dialog box to delete the selected rules.

## Enabling/Disabling Group Diversion Rules

Enabled group diversion rules are valid, while disabled rules are invalid.

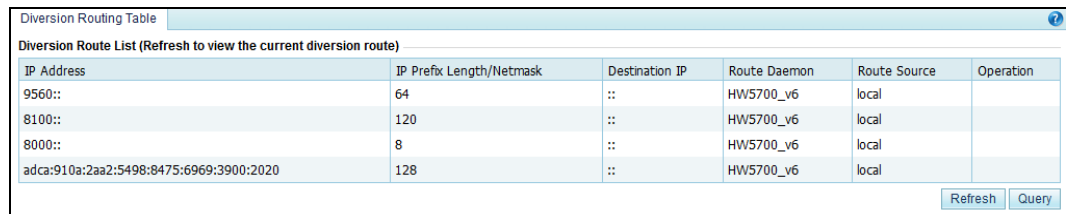
On the group diversion rule list, **Status** is displayed as **Enable** for enabled rules and **Disable** for disabled rules.

- To delete group diversion rules, perform the following steps:
  - On the group diversion rule list shown in Figure 6-37, click  in the **Operation** column of a group diversion rule to delete it.
- To enable a group diversion rule, perform the following steps:
  - On the group diversion rule list shown in Figure 6-37, click  in the **Operation** column of a group diversion rule to enable it.

## 6.4.4 Diversion Routing Table

As shown in [Figure 6-39](#), a diversion routing table stores diversion routes that are being used by the ADS device. It is automatically generated based on traffic diversion policies and diversion notifications from NSFOCUS ADS detection devices. Click **Refresh** to view the latest diversion routes of the system.

Figure 6-39 Diversion routing table



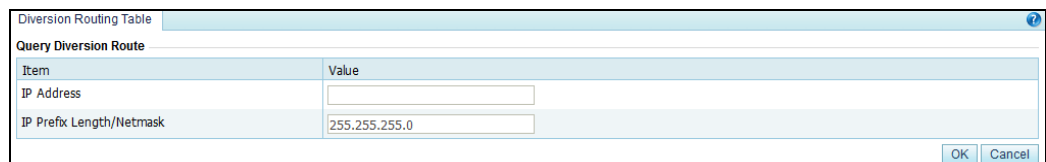
IP Address	IP Prefix Length/Netmask	Destination IP	Route Daemon	Route Source	Operation
9560::	64	::	HW5700_v6	local	
8100::	120	::	HW5700_v6	local	
8000::	8	::	HW5700_v6	local	
adca:910a:2aa2:5498:8475:6969:3900:2020	128	::	HW5700_v6	local	

### Searching for a Diversion Route

**Step 1** On the page shown in [Figure 6-39](#), click **Query** to the lower right of the diversion routing table.

The **Query Diversion Route** page appears, as shown in [Figure 6-40](#).


Figure 6-40 Searching for diversion routes



Item	Value
IP Address	<input type="text"/>
IP Prefix Length/Netmask	<input type="text" value="255.255.255.0"/>

[Table 6-15](#) describes parameters of a diversion route.

Table 6-15 Parameters of a diversion route

Parameter	Description
IP Address	IP address or IP segment specified by <b>IP Address</b> in the diversion routing table. You can type an IPv4 or IPv6 address according to the actual network deployment.
IP Prefix Length/Netmask	Prefix length (for the IPv6 protocol) or netmask (for the IPv4 protocol) of the IP address to be searched for.   <b>Note</b> The netmask of an IPv4 address to be searched for must be 255.255.255.255.

**Step 2** After parameters are configured, click **OK** to query the results.

**Step 3** After querying the results, click **Back** to return to the diversion route list.

---End

## 6.5 Advanced Route Setting

This section covers the following topics:

- [MPLS Route](#)
- [Other Routes](#)

### 6.5.1 MPLS Route

On the page shown in [Figure 6-41](#), you can configure MPLS routes to accomplish layer 2 label learning between VPNs.

Figure 6-41 List of MPLS routes

Route Daemon Setting					
Route Daemon					
	Name	Parameter	Neighbor	Type	Operation
+	aa	MP-BGPV4 /Bind IP 12. *. *. 12 /Local AS 36 /Local Port 179 /Keepalive 60 /Holdtime 180 /Metric 200	+	Learning	

[Add MP-BGP](#)

### Creating an MPLS Route

On the page shown in [Figure 6-41](#), click **Add MP-BGP** to the lower right of the route daemon list. On the **MP-BGP Local Parameter Setting** page, configure parameters and then click **OK**.

Figure 6-42 Creating an MPLS route

Item	Value
Name	<input type="text"/>
Type	Learning ▾
Local AS	<input type="text"/>
Local Port	179
Keepalive	60
Holdtime	180
Bind IP	▾
Management Port(5000~6000)	<input type="text"/>

[OK](#) [Cancel](#)


[Table 6-16](#) describes parameters for creating an MPLS route.

Table 6-16 Parameters for creating an MPLS route


Parameter	Description
Name	Route daemon name.
Type	Type of the route. Currently, only <b>Learning</b> is available for selection.
Local AS	AS number of a BGP route daemon.
Local Port	BGP port of the route daemon. Generally, the default port <b>179</b> is used.
Bind IP	Local IPv4 address of a route daemon.
Management Port(5000~6000)	Management port of the route daemon. The port ranges from 5000 to 6000.

Other parameters such as **Keepalive** and **Holdtime** are directly taken from the BGPv4 protocol.


## Editing a Route

In the list of MPLS routes shown in [Figure 6-41](#), click  in the **Operation** column of a route to edit this route.

## Deleting a Route

In the list of MPLS routes shown in [Figure 6-41](#), click  in the **Operation** column of a route to delete this route.

## Viewing Route Status

In the list of MPLS routes shown in [Figure 6-41](#), click  in the **Operation** column of a route to view the status of this route.

## Adding a Neighbor



In the list of local routes shown in [Figure 6-41](#), click  in the **Neighbor** column of a route to add a neighbor for this route. See [Figure 6-43](#).

Figure 6-43 Adding a neighbor for MPLS route


MP-BGP Neighbor Parameter Setting								
Neighbor Name	Neighbor IP	Local Daemon	Remote As	Remote Port	Auth	Ebgp-multihop	Last-Hop	Interface
<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	aa	<input type="text"/>	179	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	E1 ▾
								OK Cancel





Note

After adding a neighbor, click  to check whether the neighbor is connected.

## Viewing the Neighbor Status

In the list of local routes, click  in the **Operation** column of a route to view the connection status of its MPLS neighbor.

## Hiding a Neighbor

Neighbors of each route are displayed in the MPLS route list initially. Click  of a route to hide its neighbors and click  to display them.

## 6.5.2 Other Routes















In addition to routing protocols described above, ADS supports such advanced routing protocols as OSPF, ISIS, RIP, OSPF6, LDP, and RIPng.

Currently, the web administrator, **admin**, can configure LDP routes or view, enable, or disable OSPF, ISIS, RIP, OSPF6, LDP, and RIPng routes on the web-based manager, while the CLI administrator, **routerman**, can configure OSPF, ISIS, RIP, RIPng, and OSPF6 routes on the CLI.

## Configuring an LDP Route

**Step 1** After logging in to the web-based manager, choose **Diversion & Injection > Advanced Route Setting > Others** to open the list of other routes.

Figure 6-44 List of other routes

Name	Parameter	Type	Operation
ospf	Run at Startup: No	Diversion	  
isis	Run at Startup: No	Learning	  
rip	Run at Startup: No	Diversion	  
ospf6	Run at Startup: No	Diversion	  
ldp	Run at Startup: No	Learning	 

(\*Please log in to the console for advanced route configurations.)


**Step 2** Click  in the **Operation** column to edit LDP route parameters.



Figure 6-45 Editing LDP route parameters

Item	Value
Run Service at Startup	<input type="radio"/> Yes <input checked="" type="radio"/> No
Type	Learning
LSR-ID	80.74.1.1

IP Address	Enable MPLS Setting
80.74.1.1	<input type="checkbox"/>
99.99.99.99	<input type="checkbox"/>
88.88.88.88	<input type="checkbox"/>

Table 6-17 describes LDP route parameters.

Table 6-17 LDP route parameters

Parameter	Description
Run Service at Startup	Controls whether to run LDP upon system startup. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Yes:</b> indicates that the system runs LDP upon system startup.</li> <li><b>No:</b> indicates that the system does not run LDP upon system startup.</li> </ul>
Type	Route type. The default route type is <b>Learning</b> .
LSR-ID	Label switching router ID.
Interface Setting	Interfaces on which MPLS and LDP are enabled.

**Step 3** Set parameters and click **OK** to save the settings.

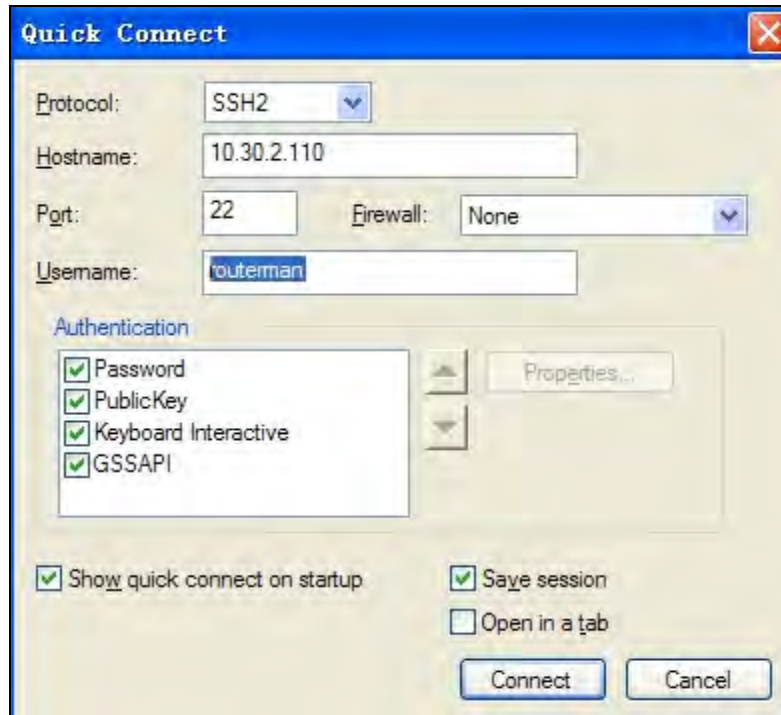
----End

## Configuring OSPF, ISIS, RIP, RIPng, and OSPF6 Routes

Here, the OSPF route is used as an example to describe the route configuration procedure.

**Step 1** Log in to the ADS device in SSH mode as the CLI administrator, **routerman**.

Figure 6-46 ADS login in SSH mode



**Step 2** Enable OSPF on the interface via the CLI.

Figure 6-47 Editing OSPF route parameters

```
COLLAPSAR-4000#router ospf session
Trying 127.0.0.1...
                Connected to 127.0.0.1.
                Escape character is '^]'.


Hello, this is quagga (version 0.99.5).
Copyright 1996-2005 Kunihiro Ishiguro, et al.

User Access Verification
Password:
```



**Step 3** After the parameter configuration is complete, save the settings and exit.


---End

## Viewing Route Status

After logging in to the web-based manager, the administrator **admin** can click  to view the status of a route of a specific protocol in the routing protocol list shown in [Figure 6-44](#).

## Enabling/Disabling the Routing Protocol

After logging in to the web-based manager, the administrator **admin** can click  to enable a route of a specific protocol or click  to disable a route in the routing protocol list shown in [Figure 6-44](#).


 <b>Note</b>	Routes under <b>Others</b> cannot be deleted.
--	---

## 6.6 Syslog Diversion Configuration

ADS can collaborate with abnormal traffic detection devices from other vendors, such as Genie, Arbor, Samurai, and Kuanguang, to jointly protect customers' networks against DDoS attacks.

Third-party devices provide effective abnormal traffic detection. After accurately locating the potential attack source and attack target, such a device handles the event according to the syslog-based diversion settings configured on ADS.

- If the alert level is set to **Auto**, it notifies ADS, which then automatically diverts the abnormal traffic for cleaning. After filtering the traffic, ADS injects the normal traffic back into the network.
- If the alert level is set to **Manual**, it notifies ADS, which, in turn, notifies the O&M personnel, who will then decide whether to divert the traffic.

 <b>Note</b>	For Genie and Arbor devices, the diversion type can be either <b>Auto</b> or <b>Manual</b> . For Samurai and Kuanguang devices, the diversion type can only be <b>Auto</b> .
--	--

### 6.6.1 Diversion Configuration

To configure syslog-based traffic diversion, perform the following steps:

**Step 1** Choose **Diversion & Injection > Syslog Diversion Config > Diversion Config**.

Figure 6-48 Syslog-based diversion rule list

Syslog Diversion			
Name	IP Address	Port	Operation
			<input type="button" value="Add"/>

**Step 2** Click **Add**.

Figure 6-49 Creating a diversion rule

Syslog Diversion	
<b>Add rule</b>	
Item	Value
Name	Arbor
Rule Status	<input type="radio"/> Enable <input checked="" type="radio"/> Disable
IP Address	<input type="text"/>
Port	<input type="text"/>
Alert Level	Type
Level 1	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Auto <input type="radio"/> Manual
Level 2	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Auto <input type="radio"/> Manual
Level 3	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Auto <input type="radio"/> Manual
Level 4	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Auto <input type="radio"/> Manual
Level 5	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Auto <input type="radio"/> Manual
<input type="button" value="OK"/> <input type="button" value="Cancel"/>	

Table 6-18 describes parameters for creating a syslog-based diversion rule.

Table 6-18 Parameters for creating a syslog-based diversion rule

Parameter	Description
Name	Specifies the type of the device to collaborate with ADS for syslog-based traffic diversion. It can be <b>Genie</b> , <b>Arbor</b> , <b>Samurai</b> , or <b>Kuanguang</b> .
Rule Status	Status of the rule. The rule takes effect only after it is enabled.
IP Address	IP address of the third-party device.
Port	Port for communicating with the third-party device.
Alert Level	<p>Specifies the alert level that will trigger traffic diversion. This parameter is available only for Genie and Arbor devices.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>On a Genie ATM device, alert levels for abnormal traffic are classified into critical and warning. <b>Auto</b> indicates that the Genie ATM device, after detecting abnormal traffic of the corresponding alert level, notifies ADS, which then automatically diverts such traffic for cleaning. <b>Manual</b> indicates that the Genie ATM device, after detecting abnormal traffic, notifies ADS, which, in turn, notifies the O&amp;M personnel, who will then determine whether to divert the traffic.</li> <li>On an Arbor device, alert levels for abnormal traffic are classified into five levels (level 1 to level 5). <b>Auto</b> indicates that the Arbor device, after detecting abnormal traffic of the corresponding alert level, notifies ADS, which then automatically diverts such traffic for cleaning. <b>Manual</b> indicates that the Arbor device, after detecting abnormal traffic, notifies ADS, which, in turn, notifies the O&amp;M personnel, who will then determine whether to divert the traffic.</li> </ul>

**Step 3** After configuring parameters, click **OK** to save the settings.

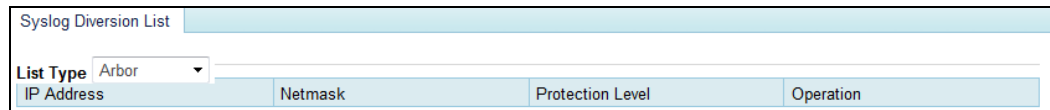
----End

## 6.6.2 Diversion Rule List

After syslog-based traffic diversion is configured, information about traffic diversion associated with this device is automatically displayed in the **Syslog Diversion List**. This list displays information about third-party devices that initiate abnormal traffic diversion, including the IP address/netmask, alert level, and operation type.

Diversion information can be displayed here only after manual diversion is configured and abnormal traffic has been diverted.

Figure 6-50 Syslog diversion list



Syslog Diversion List			
List Type	Arbor		
IP Address	Netmask	Protection Level	Operation

# 7 Logs

---

This chapter dwells upon current system logs, containing the following sections:

Section	Description
<a href="#">Attack Logs</a>	Provides details about attack logs.
<a href="#">System Logs</a>	Provides various logs about system operation.
<a href="#">Log Analysis</a>	Provides details about log processing.
<a href="#">Protection Logs</a>	Describes how to view attack logs from the perspective of protection policies.

## 7.1 Attack Logs

All attack logs are displayed in two ways for easier viewing: statistical graph and data table.

### 7.1.1 Attack Details

You can view attack logs of the last 15 days. By default, attack logs of the current day are listed, as shown in [Figure 7-1](#).



You can select a dimension from the **Search by Category** drop-down box to search for logs by attack type, source IP address, destination IP address, source port, destination port, and policy. If you select **All** from this drop-down box, all logs are searched.

Figure 7-1 Attack logs

Time	Attack Type	Source IP	Destination IP	Source Port	Destination Port	Policies
2021-01-21 10:00:23	ACK Flood	fcfb:50b6:389b:f153:9a11:f199:b068:75f0	8:18:66::11	57945	80	ACK_Protection
2021-01-21 10:00:23	ACK Flood	9f36:500f:2def:3b54:d916:7cca:4ea:f230	8:18:66::11	50763	80	ACK_Protection
2021-01-21 10:00:23	ACK Flood	9f06:b11fa76d:b4b8:644e:66c0:de22:2b7d	8:18:66::11	22042	80	ACK_Protection
2021-01-21 09:59:53	ACK Flood	563a:ff31:82c2:d970:e835:487e:337b:3fa6	8:18:66::11	51240	80	ACK_Protection
2021-01-21 09:59:53	ACK Flood	2b52:71ef:154a:cab2:ec4f:e90a:d0f0:b94	8:18:66::11	2160	80	ACK_Protection
2021-01-21 09:59:53	ACK Flood	4bd5:2251:c22:649a:7b74:281b:7628:1ba9	8:18:66::11	14483	80	ACK_Protection
2021-01-21 09:59:22	ACK Flood	563a:ff31:82c2:d970:e835:487e:337b:3fa6	8:18:66::11	51240	80	ACK_Protection
2021-01-21 09:59:22	ACK Flood	2b52:71ef:154a:cab2:ec4f:e90a:d0f0:b94	8:18:66::11	2160	80	ACK_Protection
2021-01-21 09:59:22	ACK Flood	4bd5:2251:c22:649a:7b74:281b:7628:1ba9	8:18:66::11	14483	80	ACK_Protection
2021-01-21 09:58:51	ACK Flood	e84d:af1c:d350:5cbd:3b89:aaea:73e9:52a1	8:18:66::11	12476	80	ACK_Protection
2021-01-21 09:58:51	ACK Flood	3d9b:2c26:faf7:310:9654:1476:ff0b:a667	8:18:66::11	33093	80	ACK_Protection
2021-01-21 09:58:51	ACK Flood	748:71ca:ffb5:646b:fea7:e89e:aec5:a72d	8:18:66::11	33133	80	ACK_Protection
2021-01-21 09:58:20	ACK Flood	9cdb:7054:ef70:bb5c:2558:2d99:9733:d0ce	8:18:66::11	48618	80	ACK_Protection
2021-01-21 09:58:20	ACK Flood	8f2f:41d9:21c6:b430:7048:4b0a:3b40:7428	8:18:66::11	12269	80	ACK_Protection
2021-01-21 09:58:20	ACK Flood	78b6:d23e:15c:2db4:2eeb:fa85:735a:95b8	8:18:66::11	23151	80	ACK_Protection
2021-01-21 09:57:49	ACK Flood	fd11:c5b0:8e79:618c:1ba5:a788:b9f8:626f	8:18:66::11	18001	80	ACK_Protection
2021-01-21 09:57:49	ACK Flood	7c7b:eb87:2e24:c318:3740:e2cd:39bf:56b	8:18:66::11	6590	80	ACK_Protection
2021-01-21 09:57:49	ACK Flood	e02d:cccc:88d7:9065:2405:3a81:38b1:f2bc	8:18:66::11	10347	80	ACK_Protection

Table 7-1 describes attack log parameters.

Table 7-1 Attack log parameters

Parameter	Description
Time	Time when the attack occurs.
Attack Type	Type of the attack.
Source IP/Port	Source IP address and port of the attack.   <p><b>Note</b></p> <p><b>Source IP</b> is displayed as the real source IP address in the following logs:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Attack message logged for ADS's dropping packets according to the HTTP proxy protection policy.</li> <li>Attack message logged for rate limiting against real source IP addresses according to an HTTP GET packet filtering rule in the IP behavior control policy configured for a group.</li> </ul>
Destination IP/Port	Destination IP address and port of the attack.
Policies	Protection policy triggered for the attack.  For details about protection policies, you can click  in the upper-right corner of the page and choose <b>Logs &gt; Attack Logs &gt; Attack Details</b> to view the description.

To the upper right of the log table, you can operate on attack logs as follows:

- Restart the log service.  
Click **Restart** to restart the log service program.
- Send logs.  
Click **Send** to send current attack logs to a specific email address.

- Download logs.  
Click **Download Current** to download logs of a specific day or click **Download All** to download all logs. This makes it easier for you to search for and handle logs.
- Clear logs.  
Click **Clear** to clear all the attack information on the current day.

## 7.1.2 Statistical Graph

At the bottom of the **Statistical Graph** page, you can click **Pie Chart** to view the proportion of each type of attacks or click **Bar Chart** to view the number of attacks of each type on the current day. See [Figure 7-2](#) and [Figure 7-3](#).

Figure 7-2 Attack proportion

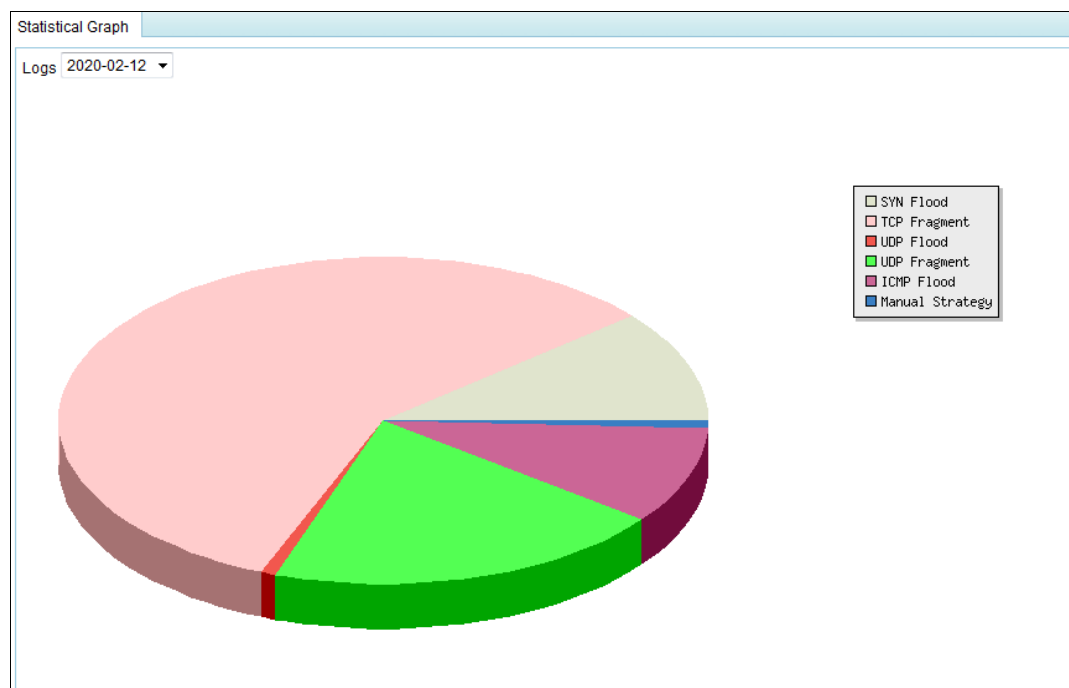
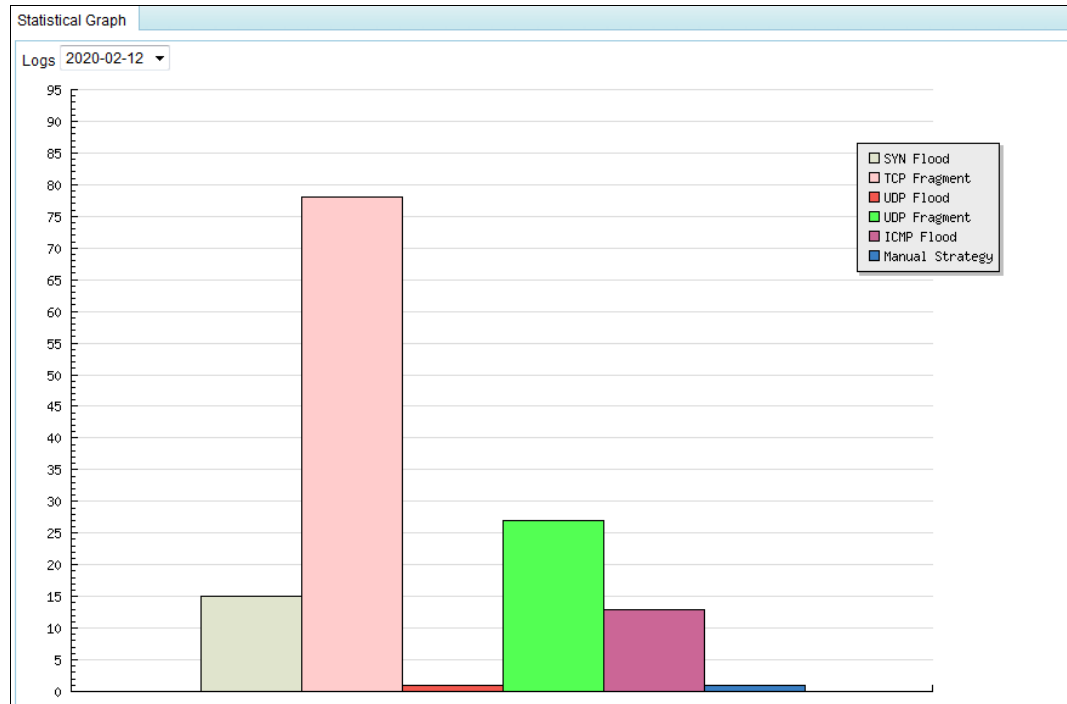




Figure 7-3 Number of attacks of each type



## 7.2 System Logs

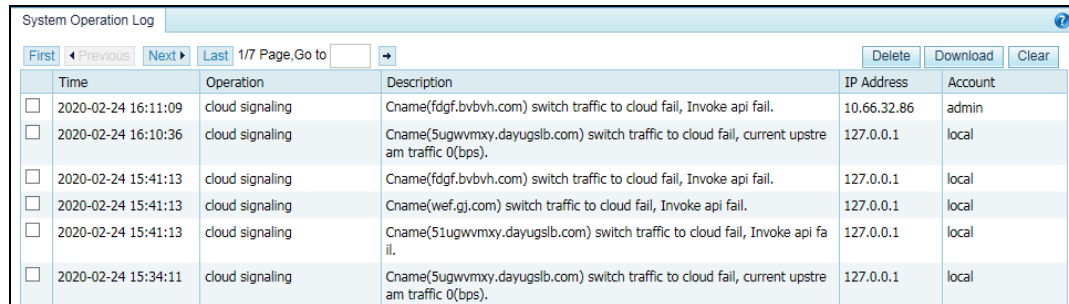
System logs include the following:

- [System Operation Logs](#)
- [System Login Logs](#)
- [Link Status Logs](#)
- [Traffic Diversion Logs](#)
- [HA Synchronization Logs](#)
- [Syslog Diversion Logs](#)
- [Authentication Configuration Logs](#)

### 7.2.1 System Operation Logs

As shown in [Figure 7-4](#), the system operation log table displays main operations of users in the system as well as NTP synchronization information.

Figure 7-4 System operation logs



Time	Operation	Description	IP Address	Account
2020-02-24 16:11:09	cloud signaling	Cname(fdgr.bvbvh.com) switch traffic to cloud fail, Invoke api fail.	10.66.32.86	admin
2020-02-24 16:10:36	cloud signaling	Cname(5ugwvmxy.dayugslb.com) switch traffic to cloud fail, current upstream traffic 0(bps).	127.0.0.1	local
2020-02-24 15:41:13	cloud signaling	Cname(fdgr.bvbvh.com) switch traffic to cloud fail, Invoke api fail.	127.0.0.1	local
2020-02-24 15:41:13	cloud signaling	Cname(wef.gj.com) switch traffic to cloud fail, Invoke api fail.	127.0.0.1	local
2020-02-24 15:41:13	cloud signaling	Cname(51ugwvmxy.dayugslb.com) switch traffic to cloud fail, Invoke api fail.	127.0.0.1	local
2020-02-24 15:34:11	cloud signaling	Cname(5ugwvmxy.dayugslb.com) switch traffic to cloud fail, current upstream traffic 0(bps).	127.0.0.1	local

Table 7-2 describes parameters of system operation logs.

Table 7-2 Parameters of system operation logs

Parameter	Description
Time	Time when a user performs an operation.
Operation	Operation performed by a user.
Description	Details about an operation.
IP Address	IP address of the host on which the operation is performed.
Account	Account of the user that performs the operation.

To the upper right of the log table, you can operate on logs as follows:

- Download logs.  
Click **Download** to download operation logs to a local disk drive in text format.
- Clear logs.  
Click **Clear** and **OK** in the confirmation dialog box to clear all the current operation logs.
- Delete logs.  
Select one or more logs and click **Delete** to delete the selected logs.

## 7.2.2 System Login Logs

As shown in Figure 7-5, the system login log table displays system login details.

Figure 7-5 System login logs

The screenshot shows a web interface titled "System Login Log". At the top, there are navigation buttons: "First", "Previous", "Next", "Last", and a "Go to" field with "1/2 Page" and a right arrow. On the right side, there are buttons for "Delete", "Download", and "Clear". Below the navigation is a table with the following columns: Account, Password, Login IP, Result, and Login Time. The table contains 11 rows of data, all for the 'admin' user, with 'Succeeded' as the result and various timestamps from 2020-02-27.

Account	Password	Login IP	Result	Login Time
<input type="checkbox"/> admin	*****	10.66.32.7	Succeeded	2020-02-27 18:45:22
<input type="checkbox"/> admin	*****	10.66.250.166	Succeeded	2020-02-27 14:36:05
<input type="checkbox"/> admin	*****	10.66.250.166	Succeeded	2020-02-27 14:35:53
<input type="checkbox"/> admin	*****	10.66.250.166	Succeeded	2020-02-27 14:35:32
<input type="checkbox"/> admin	*****	10.66.250.166	Succeeded	2020-02-27 14:35:10
<input type="checkbox"/> admin	*****	10.66.250.166	Succeeded	2020-02-27 14:34:02
<input type="checkbox"/> admin	*****	10.66.250.166	Succeeded	2020-02-27 14:33:56
<input type="checkbox"/> admin	*****	10.66.250.166	Succeeded	2020-02-27 14:32:15
<input type="checkbox"/> admin	*****	10.66.250.166	Succeeded	2020-02-27 14:32:10
<input type="checkbox"/> admin	*****	10.66.250.166	Succeeded	2020-02-27 14:25:25

Table 7-3 describes parameters of system login logs.

Table 7-3 Parameters of system login logs

Parameter	Description
Account	User name used by a user for login
Password	Password used by a user for login
Local IP	IP address of a login user
Result	Whether the login succeeded or failed
Login Time	Time when an account logs in

To the upper right of the log table, you can operate on logs as follows:

- Download logs.  
Click **Download** to download login logs to a local disk drive in text format.
- Clear logs.  
Click **Clear** and **OK** in the confirmation dialog box to clear all current login logs.
- Delete logs.  
Select one or more logs and click **Delete** to delete the selected logs.

## 7.2.3 Link Status Logs

As shown in Figure 7-6, the link status log table displays the interface connection status (UP to DOWN or DOWN to UP) of ADS.

Figure 7-6 Link status logs

Link Status Log	
Time	Description
<input type="checkbox"/> 2020-02-24 10:42:13	Link state of port G2/2 is detected from DOWN to UP.
<input type="checkbox"/> 2020-02-24 10:42:13	Link state of port G2/1 is detected from DOWN to UP.
<input type="checkbox"/> 2020-02-24 10:42:12	Link state of Management port is detected from DOWN to UP.
<input type="checkbox"/> 2020-02-24 10:42:09	Link state of port F4/4 is detected from UP to DOWN.
<input type="checkbox"/> 2020-02-24 10:42:09	Link state of port F4/3 is detected from UP to DOWN.
<input type="checkbox"/> 2020-02-24 10:42:09	Link state of port T3/2 is detected from UP to DOWN.
<input type="checkbox"/> 2020-02-24 10:42:08	Link state of port T3/1 is detected from UP to DOWN.
<input type="checkbox"/> 2020-02-24 10:42:08	Link state of port G2/8 is detected from UP to DOWN.
<input type="checkbox"/> 2020-02-24 10:42:08	Link state of port G2/7 is detected from UP to DOWN.
<input type="checkbox"/> 2020-02-24 10:42:08	Link state of port G2/6 is detected from UP to DOWN.

Table 7-4 describes parameters of link status logs.

Table 7-4 Parameters of link status logs

Parameter	Description
Time	Time when the status of an interface changes.
Description	Status change details of an interface.

To the upper right of the log table, you can operate on logs as follows:

- Download logs.  
Click **Download** to download link status logs to a local disk drive in text format.
- Clear logs.  
Click **Clear** and **OK** in the confirmation dialog box to clear all current link status logs.
- Delete logs.  
Select one or more logs and click **Delete** to delete the selected logs.

## 7.2.4 Traffic Diversion Logs

As shown in Figure 7-7, the traffic diversion log table displays the route operations performed by ADS upon receiving alerts from NSFOCUS's anti-DDoS detection devices, as well as manual diversion routing operations performed on the web-based manager. Logs can be retained for 10 days at most.


 <b>Note</b>	Traffic diversion logs can be viewed only in diversion modes.
--	---

Figure 7-7 Traffic diversion logs

Traffic Diversion Log						
Traffic Diversion Log/2020-02-24						
First	Previous	Next	Last	1/1 Page,Go to	Delete	Download
<input type="checkbox"/>	2020-02-24 10:49:15	Established	bgp.bgp_v6 local_ip:8091.28::1 peer_ip:8091.28::254		local	admin
<input type="checkbox"/>	2020-02-24 10:47:12	Established	bgp.bgp_ipv4 local_ip:80.91.28.1 peer_ip:80.91.28.254		local	admin
<input type="checkbox"/>	2020-02-24 10:42:01	Divert service	startup		local	admin

Table 7-5 describes parameters of traffic diversion logs.

Table 7-5 Parameters of traffic diversion logs

Parameter	Description
Time	Time when traffic diversion happens.
Operation	Type of traffic diversion operations.
Description	Destination IP address and of the traffic to be diverted, netmask of the destination IP address, and the diversion destination IP address. If the operation is <b>Change Status</b> , changes of the status will also be displayed.
IP Address	IP address of ADS that diverts the traffic or NSFOCUS NTA that detects attack traffic. Both IPv4 and IPv6 addresses are allowed.
Account	User name (for example, <b>admin</b> ) that performs traffic diversion or device name (for example, <b>probe</b> ) of NSFOCUS NTA.

To the upper right of the log table, you can operate on logs as follows:

- Download logs.  
Click **Download** to download traffic diversion logs to a local disk drive in text format.
- Clear logs.  
Click **Clear** and OK in the confirmation dialog box to clear all current traffic diversion logs.
- Delete logs.  
Select one or more logs and click **Delete** to delete the selected logs.

## 7.2.5 HA Synchronization Logs



Currently, as ADS NX5-10000 lacks support for the HA function, it does not support query of HA synchronization logs.

When the keepalive information, synchronization information (MAC address, diversion information, and protection group information), and engine failure information is synchronized between active and standby ADS devices, the two devices record such operations as HA synchronization logs for statistics and analysis.

Choose **Logs > System Logs > HA Sync Logs**. The **HA Sync Logs** page appears, as shown in [Figure 7-8](#).

Figure 7-8 HA synchronization logs

HA Sync Logs				Delete	Download	Clear
Time	Type	Description	Result			
<input type="checkbox"/> 2016-03-05 13:43:00	HaStop	HA service stop	success			
<input type="checkbox"/> 2016-03-05 13:43:00	Exception	Change bgp metric to value configured in BGP.	success			
<input type="checkbox"/> 2016-03-04 11:48:55	Exception	Leave cluster: peer 10.66.250.250 abnormal or configuration changed.	success			
<input type="checkbox"/> 2016-03-04 11:48:55	Exception	Receive abnormal message from 10.66.250.250.	success			
<input type="checkbox"/> 2016-03-04 11:31:31	Exception	Receive manual diversion message: syn diversion is off.	fail			
<input type="checkbox"/> 2016-03-04 11:31:31	Exception	Receive manual diversion message: syn diversion is off.	fail			
<input type="checkbox"/> 2016-03-04 11:31:31	Exception	Change bgp metric to 100.	success			
<input type="checkbox"/> 2016-03-04 11:31:31	HaStart	HA connection with 10.66.250.250 established.	success			
<input type="checkbox"/> 2016-03-04 11:29:33	HaStart	HA service start	success			
<input type="checkbox"/> 2016-03-04 11:29:23	UpdateHaConf	Update ha configuration	success			

[Table 7-6](#) describes parameters of HA synchronization logs.

Table 7-6 Parameters of HA synchronization logs

Parameter	Description
Time	Time when a log is recorded.
Type	What type of information a log records. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>HaStart</b>: indicates that the log records HA connection establishment.</li> <li>• <b>Exception</b>: indicate that the log records exceptions.</li> <li>• <b>SyncConf</b>: indicates that the log records file and heartbeat synchronization.</li> </ul>
Description	Log details.
Result	Operation result, which could be <b>success</b> or <b>fail</b> .

To the upper right of the log table, you can operate on logs as follows:

- Download logs.  
Click **Download** to download HA synchronization logs to a local disk drive in text format.
- Clear logs.  
Click **Clear** and **OK** in the confirmation dialog box to clear all current HA synchronization logs.
- Delete logs.  
Select one or more logs and click **Delete** to delete the selected logs.

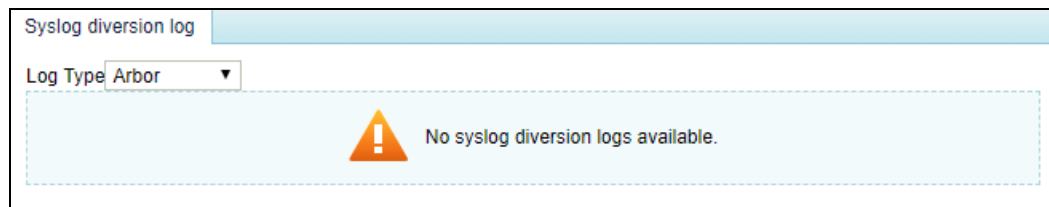
## 7.2.6 Syslog Diversion Logs

As shown in [Figure 7-9](#), the syslog diversion log list displays logs generated during collaboration between NSFOCUS ADS and a third-party device from Genie, Arbor, Samurai, or Kuanguang. Logs can be retained for 10 days at most.



- Syslog diversion logs can be viewed only in diversion mode.
- Currently, ADS uses only IPv4 addresses to collaborate with third-party devices in either IPv4 or dual-stack mode.

Figure 7-9 Syslog diversion logs



## 7.2.7 Authentication Configuration Logs

The **Authentication Configuration Log** page is available only when vADS is used. For details about authorization configuration, see section [3.4.1 License](#).

As shown in [Figure 7-10](#), the authentication configuration log list displays the authentication time and status of vADS.

Figure 7-10 Authentication configuration logs

Authorization Configuration Log				
Time	Type	Status	Details	
<input type="checkbox"/> 2020-02-27 11:17:05	cloudauth	success	Cloud authentication succeeds.	
<input type="checkbox"/> 2020-02-27 11:15:34	cloudauth	failed	Cloud authentication failed. Reason: Take cloud auth Error. Reason: Auth Stamp Code Expires; code: 111; error code: causecode_111;	

## 7.3 Log Analysis

As shown in [Figure 7-11](#), you can set query conditions and click **Generate Report** to generate reports in chronological order. ADS supports three types of reports: daily report, weekly report, and monthly report. Note that the scale factor cannot be changed for a daily report. In addition, you can click **Download Report** to download the generated report to a local disk drive.

Figure 7-11 Attack traffic statistics

Attack Traffic Statistics	
Daily	2016-3-7
Scale Factor	1
<a href="#">Generate Report</a>	<a href="#">Download Report</a>
Basic Information	Details
Time: 2016-03-07 00:00-15:10	24-hour traffic (Kpps)
Average Traffic: 1Mbps	24-hour traffic (Mbps)

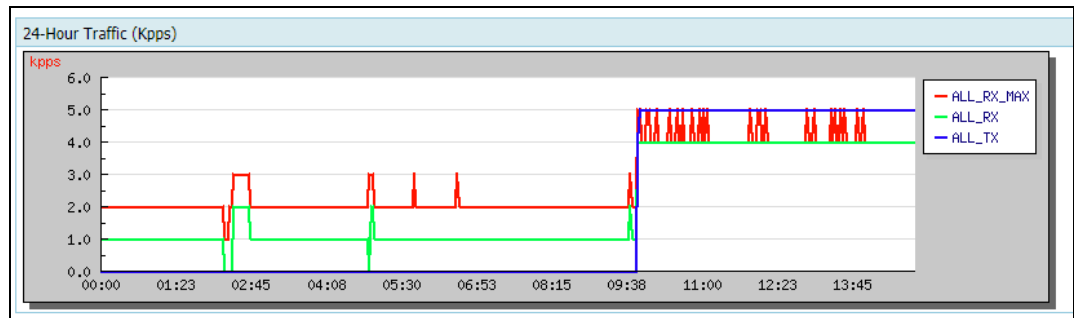
## Daily Attack Traffic Report

The **Basic Information** column includes statistical time, average incoming traffic, average normal incoming traffic, and average outgoing traffic (unit:Mbps) about attacks on a specific day.

The **Details** column contains the following information:

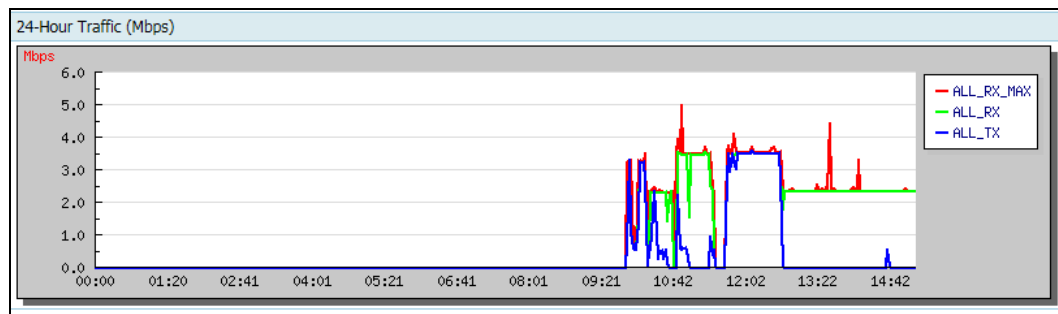
- 24-hour traffic (in kpps)
  - As shown in [Figure 7-12](#), incoming/outgoing traffic (unit: kpps) of a specific day is displayed.

Figure 7-12 24-hour traffic (in kpps)



- 24-hour traffic (in Mbps)
  - As shown in [Figure 7-13](#), incoming/outgoing traffic (unit:Mbps) of a specific day is displayed.

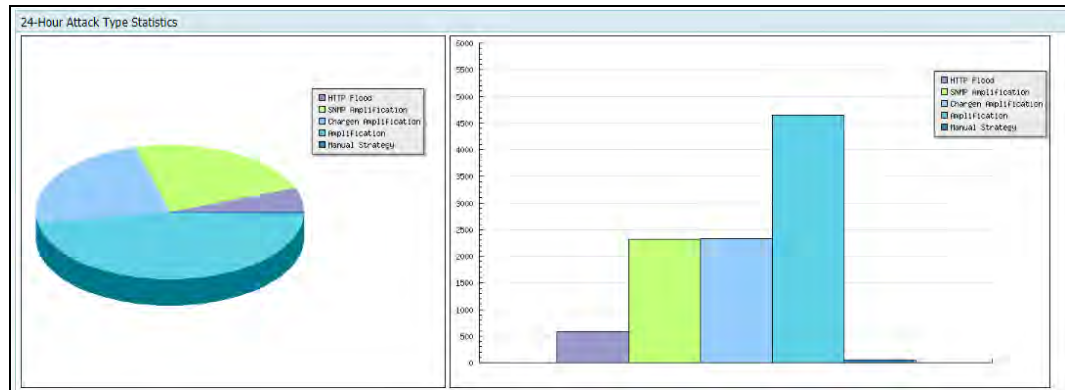
Figure 7-13 24-hour traffic (in Mbps)



- 24-hour attack type statistics
  - As shown in [Figure 7-14](#), types of attacks on a specific day are displayed in a pie chart and a bar chart.
    - Pie chart: Proportion of each type of attacks on the current day.
    - Bar chart: Number of each type of attack logs on the current day.



Figure 7-14 24-hour attack type statistics



- 24-hour attacked IP statistics

As shown in Figure 7-15, attacked IP addresses and attack traffic on a specific day are displayed in the list.

Figure 7-15 24-hour attacked IP statistics

Attacked IP	SYN Flood	ACK Flood	ICMP Flood	UDP Flood	Connection Flood	Stream Flood
40.40.40.1	0	0	0	0	8	0
0040:0040:0040:0001:0000:0000:0000:0001	0	0	0	0	16	0

## Weekly Attack Traffic Report

A weekly report is similar to a daily report, except that the statistical period is one week.

## Monthly Attack Traffic Report

A monthly report is similar to a daily report, except that the statistical period is one month.



The system can generate data only when it is running.

## 7.4 Protection Logs

To make it easier for users to view the information about attack logs, ADS provides the function of protection event statistics. Users can view the details about attack logs from the perspective of protection policies and adjust protection policies accordingly.

Choose **Logs > Protection Logs > Protection Event Statistics** to view an attack log by specifying the protection group, destination IP, destination port, policy, and time.

- If the attacked destination IP does not belong to any of the custom protection groups, the value of **Group** is displayed as **default\_protection\_group**.

- If the attack remains inactive for 5 minutes, the attack is deemed to end. Otherwise, the attack is always "ongoing".

Figure 7-16 Protection event statistics

Group	Destination IP	Destination Port	Policies	Start Time	End Time
test	99.7.80.100	8888	Invalid_DNS_Query_Packet	2020-11-07 02:41:13	Ongoing

Click **Download** above the log list to download the presented logs to a local disk drive, allowing you to check and process the logs.

Click **Clear** above the log list and click **OK** in the dialog box that appears to delete all logs for protection events that are completed.

# 8 Advanced Applications

This chapter dwells upon two advanced functions of the system, containing the following sections:

Section	Description
<a href="#">Packet Capture Management</a>	Describes a tool usually used to analyze transmitted packets in the network.
<a href="#">Pattern Matching Rules</a>	Describes a protection rule used to filter packets based on signature patterns.
<a href="#">Cloud Signaling</a>	Describes how to configure collaboration between ADS and the cloud cleaning center.
<a href="#">Collaboration with NTI</a>	Describes how to configure collaboration between ADS and NTI.

## 8.1 Packet Capture Management

Packet capture is the act of capturing network packets that meet the specified conditions, so as to provide evidence for electronic forensics. ADS supports manual packet capture and automatic packet capture.

### 8.1.1 Configuring Manual Packet Capture

- Manual packet capture configuration for ADS NX3-800E/2020E, NX5-4020E/6025E, ADS NX5-8000, NX5-10000, NX5-12000, NX3-HD2500, NX5-HD4500, NX5-HD6500, and NX5-HD8500 is as follows:
  - A maximum of six packet capture tasks can be configured and saved.
  - A maximum of three packet capture tasks can be enabled at the same time.
  - A maximum of 10 packet capture files can be saved in total.

#### 8.1.1.1 Creating a Manual Packet Capture Task

To configure a manual packet capture task, perform the following steps:

**Step 1** Choose **Advanced > Packet Capture > Manual Packet Capture**.

In the upper part of the **Manual Packet Capture** page, the status of packet capture tasks is displayed in the **Status** column. For an ongoing packet capture task, **Status** is displayed as **Running**. Otherwise, **Status** is displayed as **Stop**.

In the lower part of the page, packet capture files are listed for completed packet capture tasks. Packet capture parameters are displayed in the **Task Details** column.

Figure 8-1 Manual Packet Capture page

Manual Packet Capture Rules				
<input type="checkbox"/> Select All	Name	Status	Number of Packet Capture Files	Operation
<input type="checkbox"/>	b	Stop	1	
<input type="checkbox"/>	a	Stop	2	

Packet Capture Files				
<input type="checkbox"/> Select All	Filename	Size(bytes)	Task Details	Operation
<input type="checkbox"/>	colicap_b_2020-02-24_17-22-01.cap	25790	Interface: ALL   Protocol: ALL   Source/Destination IP: 0121:0001:0009:0000:0000:0000:0000:0005   Advanced Options: Received	View Download
<input type="checkbox"/>	colicap_a_2020-02-24_17-02-11.cap	267024	Interface: ALL   Protocol: ALL   Source/Destination IP: 121.1.9.5   Advanced Options: Received	View Download
<input type="checkbox"/>	colicap_a_2020-02-24_17-01-58.cap	24	Interface: ALL   Protocol: ALL   Source/Destination IP: 121.1.9.5   Advanced Options: Sent	View Download

**Step 2** Click **Add** to create a manual packet capture task.

Figure 8-2 Creating a manual packet capture task




Item	Value
Name	<input type="text"/>
Interface	All
Protocol	All
Packets to Be Captured	<input type="text"/> (1-30000)
Capture Duration	<input type="text"/> (1-3600s) (*As long as the value of Packets to Be Captured or Capture Duration reaches the maximum value, the packet capture ends.)
Source IP	<input type="text"/> (*Example: 192.168.1.0/24. For IPv4 addresses, the network mask length should be 1 to 32; for IPv6 addresses, the prefix length should be 1 to 128.)
Destination IP/Group	<input checked="" type="radio"/> IP <input type="text"/> <input type="radio"/> Group test_old
Source/Destination IP	<input type="text"/> (*If this field is set, ignore Source IP and Destination IP.)
Max Packet Length	<input type="text"/> (64-1518)
Advanced Options	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Received <input type="checkbox"/> Sent <input type="checkbox"/> Drop (*If no option is selected, received packets will be captured by default.)

**Step 3** Configure parameters.

Table 8-1 describes parameters for creating a manual packet capture task.

Table 8-1 Parameters for creating a manual packet capture task

Parameter	Description
Name	Name of the packet capture task.
Interface	Interface on which packets are captured for this task. <b>All</b> indicates that packets are captured on all interfaces.
Protocol	Protocol used by packets to be captured. Values can be <b>All</b> , <b>TCP</b> , <b>UDP</b> , and <b>ICMP</b> , <b>ICMPV6</b> , and <b>Custom</b> , with <b>All</b> as the default value. When <b>Protocol</b> is set to <b>Custom</b> , you can set a protocol port number, which must be in the range of 0-255.
Packets to Be Captured	Number of packets to be captured. The value ranges from 1 to 30000.


Parameter	Description
Capture Duration	Specifies how long a capture task can last at most. The value range is 1–3600 in seconds. The system stops capturing packets when either the setting of <b>Packets to Be Captured</b> or that of <b>Capture Duration</b> is met.
Source IP	Source IP address of this task. This parameter is optional. If the source IP address is empty, it indicates that packets from any IP address can be captured.  <b>Note</b> The source IP address can be an IPv4 or IPv6 address.
Destination IP	Destination IP address of this task. This parameter is optional. If the destination IP address is empty, it indicates that packets destined to any IP address can be captured.  <b>Note</b> The destination IP address can be an IPv4 or IPv6 address.
Destination IP/Group	Destination IP address or group of this task. You can select <b>IP</b> or <b>Group</b> . <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>IP</b>: When this is selected, you can further specify an IP address in the input box next to it. Leaving the box empty indicates no restriction on the destination of packets. Both IPv4 and IPv6 are supported.</li> <li>• <b>Group</b>: When this is selected, you need to select a protection group from the drop-down list.</li> </ul>
Source/Destination IP	Source or destination IP address of the task. This parameter is optional. If you set this parameter, ignore <b>Source IP</b> and <b>Destination IP</b> .  <b>Note</b> Both IPv4 and IPv6 addresses are allowed.
Source Port	Source port of this task. This parameter is optional. If the source port is empty, it indicates that packets from any port can be captured.
Destination Port	Destination port of this task. This parameter is optional. If the destination port is empty, it indicates that packets to any port can be captured.
Source/Destination Port	Source or destination port of the task. This parameter is optional. If this parameter is specified, the system ignores both <b>Source Port</b> and <b>Destination Port</b> .
Max Packet Length	Maximum length of the packet to be captured. The value ranges from 64 to 1518.
Advanced Options	This parameter is optional. Options are as follows: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Received</b>: indicates that ADS captures received packets.</li> <li>• <b>Sent</b>: indicates that ADS captures packets that are sent.</li> <li>• <b>Drop</b>: indicates that ADS captures dropped packets.</li> </ul> If none is selected, received packets will be captured by default.

**Step 4** Click **OK**.

The new manual packet task starts only after you click **Start**.


---End

### 8.1.1.2 Starting a Manual Packet Capture Task

In the **Manual Packet Capture Rules** area shown in [Figure 8-1](#), click  in the **Operation** column of a manual packet capture task to start this task.


- When the packet capture task is in progress, **Status** is displayed as **Running**, and the forensics file is displayed on the file list.
- When the packet capture task is completed, **Status** is displayed as **Stop**.

### 8.1.1.3 Stopping a Manual Packet Capture Task

In the **Manual Packet Capture Rules** area shown in [Figure 8-1](#), click  in the **Operation** column of a manual packet capture task to stop this task.

After the packet capture task is stopped, **Status** is displayed as **Stop**.


### 8.1.1.4 Viewing a Manual Packet Capture Task

In the **Manual Packet Capture Rules** area shown in [Figure 8-1](#), click  in the **Operation** column of a manual packet capture task to view its configuration information.

Click **Refresh** to view the current status of manual packet capture tasks.

### 8.1.1.5 Editing a Manual Packet Capture Task


To edit a manual packet capture task, perform the following steps:

- Step 1** In the **Manual Packet Capture Rules** area shown in [Figure 8-1](#), click  in the **Operation** column of a manual packet capture task.
- Step 2** Edit parameters, click **OK** to save the settings, and return to the **Manual Packet Capture** page.

---End

### 8.1.1.6 Deleting a Manual Packet Capture Task

You can delete manual packet capture tasks one by one or in batches as follows:

- Method 1: In the **Manual Packet Capture Rules** area shown in [Figure 8-1](#), click  in the **Operation** column of a manual packet capture task and click **OK** in the confirmation dialog box to delete this task.
- Method 2: In the **Manual Packet Capture Rules** area shown in [Figure 8-1](#), select one or more manual packet capture tasks (or select the **Select All** check box to select all manual packet capture tasks), click **Delete** in the lower-right corner of the area, and click **OK** in the confirmation dialog box to delete the selected tasks.



Ongoing packet capture tasks cannot be deleted.

### 8.1.1.7 Viewing a Manual Packet Capture File

After a manual packet capture task is ended, a packet capture file is generated and added to the file list, as shown in the **Packet Capture Files** area shown in [Figure 8-1](#).

You can click **View** in the **Operation** column of a packet capture file to view its details.

Figure 8-3 Viewing details of a packet capture file

The screenshot shows the 'Packet Details' window for a file named 'colicap\_b\_2020-02-24\_17-22-01.cap'. The 'Packet Summary' section indicates the file size is 25790 and task details include interface, protocol, and source/destination IP ranges. Below this is a table of captured packets:

No	Time	Source	Src Port	Destination	Dst Port	Protocol	Length	Information
1	2020-02-24 17:22:01	9564:2e0d:e24:98a2:3b28:79fd:669:adfc	45258	121.1.9.:5	53	dns	93	query.www.baidu.com
2	2020-02-24 17:22:01	2098:ed5:de3e:7c42:bb89:6cd:c9f8:fbfe	45230	121.1.9.:5	53	dns	93	query.www.baidu.com
3	2020-02-24 17:22:01	3190:f495:f60fe8b4:5c9:a46:1718:575d	32404	121.1.9.:5	53	dns	93	query.www.baidu.com
4	2020-02-24 17:22:01	b5eb:2288:6cd:506d:e6f9:409a:52e3:f080	53178	121.1.9.:5	53	dns	93	query.www.baidu.com
5	2020-02-24 17:22:01	1451:d169:fc5:3c6e:6dba:c8f7:263b:aa1b	37046	121.1.9.:5	53	dns	93	query.www.baidu.com

Below the table, the 'IP Layer' details are shown:

Source IP	9564:2e0d:e24:98a2:3b28:79fd:669:adfc	Total Length	39
Destination IP	121:1:9.:5	IP Header Length	40
TOS	0x0000	TTL	0
IP Flag	0x0000	offset	--
Protocol	udp	Checksum	0x0000
IP ID	0x0000		

The 'UDP' section shows:

Source Port	45258	Destination Port	53
Total Length	39	Checksum	0xa0a9

The 'DNS' section shows:

Packet Type	query	Domain Name	www.baidu.com
DNS Flag	0x0100	Trans ID	0x0203

At the bottom, there are options for 'Hexadecimal' and 'ASCII' data views, and a button for 'Application-Layer Fingerprint Extraction'.

### Viewing the Summary of the Packet Capture File

As shown in [Figure 8-3](#), in the upper part of the page, **Packet Summary** displays the abstract of the packet capture file, including the file name, size, and task details.

### Viewing the Packet Abstract

On the **Packet Details** page, abstract information of all captured packets contained in the packet capture file is displayed. [Table 8-2](#) describes parameters of a packet capture file.

Table 8-2 Parameters of a packet capture file

Parameter	Description
No	Sequence number of the packet in the packet capture file
Time	System time when the packet was captured
Source	Source IP address of the packet
Src Port	Source port of the packet

Parameter	Description
Destination	Destination IP address of the packet
Dst Port	Destination port of the packet
Protocol	Protocol used by the packet, such as ICMP
Length	Packet length
Information	Packet information

## Viewing Details About a Captured Packet

On the page shown in [Figure 8-3](#), details about the first packet are displayed by default.

You can click a packet to view its details. The displayed information varies with packets. See [Figure 8-4](#).

Figure 8-4 Viewing details about a captured packet

Packet Details

Packet Summary: Name:collcap\_b\_2020-02-24\_17-22-01.cap Size:25790 Task Details:Interface: ALL | Protocol: ALL | Source/Destination IP: 0121:0001:0009:0000:0000:0000:0005 | Advanced Options: Received

First | Previous | Next | Last | 1/1 pages | 1000entries | Go to

No	Time	Source	Src Port	Destination	Dst Port	Protocol	Length	Information
1	2020-02-24 17:22:01	9564:2e0d:e24:98a2:3b28:79fd:669:adfc	45258	121:1:9::5	53	dns	93	query:www.baidu.com
2	2020-02-24 17:22:01	2098:ed5:de3e:7c42:bb89:6cd:c9f8:fofe	45230	121:1:9::5	53	dns	93	query:www.baidu.com
3	2020-02-24 17:22:01	3190:f495:f60fe8b4:5c9:a46:1718:575d	32404	121:1:9::5	53	dns	93	query:www.baidu.com
4	2020-02-24 17:22:01	b5eb:2288:6cd:506d:e6f9:409a:52e3:f080	53178	121:1:9::5	53	dns	93	query:www.baidu.com
5	2020-02-24 17:22:01	1451:d169:fc5:3c6e:6dba:c8f7:263b:aa1b	37046	121:1:9::5	53	dns	93	query:www.baidu.com

IP Layer

Source IP	3190:f495:f60fe8b4:5c9:a46:1718:575d	Total Length	39
Destination IP	121:1:9::5	IP Header Length	40
TOS	0x0000	TTL	0
IP Flag	0x0000	offset	--
Protocol	udp	Checksum	0x0000
IP ID	0x0000		

Source IP Blocking

UDP

Source Port	32404	Destination Port	53
Total Length	39	Checksum	0x2334

DNS

Packet Type	query	Domain Name	www.baidu.com
DNS Flag	0x0100	Trans ID	0x0203

Application-Layer Fingerprint Extraction

Data

Hexadecimal	ASCII
-------------	-------

## Source IP Blocking

On the **Packet Details** page, you can directly click **Source IP Blocking** to add a source IP address to the global blacklist. For details, see section [5.2.9 Blacklist](#).

To add a source IP address to the blacklist, perform the following steps:



**Step 1** View IP layer information.

As shown in [Figure 8-4](#), network layer information of the captured packet is displayed in the **IP Layer** area.

Figure 8-5 IP Layer area

IP Layer			
Source IP	3190:f495:f60f:e8b4:5c9:a46:1718:575d	Total Length	39
Destination IP	121:1:9::5	IP Header Length	40
TOS	0x0000	TTL	0
IP Flag	0x0000	offset	--
Protocol	udp	Checksum	0x0000
IP ID	0x0000		

**Step 2** Click **Source IP Blocking**.

Figure 8-6 Confirmation dialog box

**Source IP Blocking:**

Item	Value
IP Address	1.1.1.11
Lockout Period	Block for a period ▼ 120 (minutes)

OK Back

**Step 3** Set the block period. For parameter details, see [Table 5-34](#).**Step 4** Click **OK** in the confirmation dialog box to add the source IP address to the blacklist.**Step 5** View the newly created blacklist entry.

Choose **Policies > Access Control > Blacklist** and click **Blacklist List** in the lower-right corner of the **Blacklist** page.

Figure 8-7 Newly created blacklist entry

Blacklist

Blacklist List

Manually Blocked IPs: 949967 IP segments: 0 | Auto Blocked IPs: 0

Latest 1000 entries:

Select All	Item	IP Address	Elapsed Block Duration (minutes)	Remaining Block Time (min)	Block Cause	Blocked Packets	Blocked Traffic (byte)	Destination IP
<input type="checkbox"/>	1	9.8.7.6	20 minutes	956minutes	BLOCK_MANJUAL	0 (pkts)	0(bytes)	--
<input type="checkbox"/>	2	10.50.50.1	278 minutes	Permanent	BLOCK_MANJUAL	0 (pkts)	0(bytes)	--
<input type="checkbox"/>	3	1.16.65.162	281 minutes	Permanent	BLOCK_MANJUAL	0 (pkts)	0(bytes)	--
<input type="checkbox"/>	4	1.16.65.163	281 minutes	Permanent	BLOCK_MANJUAL	0 (pkts)	0(bytes)	--
<input type="checkbox"/>	5	1.16.65.164	281 minutes	Permanent	BLOCK_MANJUAL	0 (pkts)	0(bytes)	--
<input type="checkbox"/>	6	1.16.65.165	281 minutes	Permanent	BLOCK_MANJUAL	0 (pkts)	0(bytes)	--
<input type="checkbox"/>	7	1.16.65.166	281 minutes	Permanent	BLOCK_MANJUAL	0 (pkts)	0(bytes)	--
<input type="checkbox"/>	8	1.16.65.167	281 minutes	Permanent	BLOCK_MANJUAL	0 (pkts)	0(bytes)	--
<input type="checkbox"/>	9	1.16.65.168	281 minutes	Permanent	BLOCK_MANJUAL	0 (pkts)	0(bytes)	--
<input type="checkbox"/>	10	1.16.65.169	281 minutes	Permanent	BLOCK_MANJUAL	0 (pkts)	0(bytes)	--
<input type="checkbox"/>	11	1.16.65.17	281 minutes	Permanent	BLOCK_MANJUAL	0 (pkts)	0(bytes)	--
<input type="checkbox"/>	12	1.16.65.170	281 minutes	Permanent	BLOCK_MANJUAL	0 (pkts)	0(bytes)	--
<input type="checkbox"/>	13	1.16.65.171	281 minutes	Permanent	BLOCK_MANJUAL	0 (pkts)	0(bytes)	--
<input type="checkbox"/>	14	1.16.65.172	281 minutes	Permanent	BLOCK_MANJUAL	0 (pkts)	0(bytes)	--
<input type="checkbox"/>	15	1.16.65.173	281 minutes	Permanent	BLOCK_MANJUAL	0 (pkts)	0(bytes)	--
<input type="checkbox"/>	16	1.16.65.174	281 minutes	Permanent	BLOCK_MANJUAL	0 (pkts)	0(bytes)	--

System Version V4.5R90F03 | Uptime: 4:42 6 days | System Time: 15:24

----End

## DNS Fingerprint Extraction

For DNS packets, you can extract DNS fingerprints from their detailed information to directly generate a DNS keyword checking rule. For details about DNS keyword checking rules, see section [5.1.2.8 DNS Keyword Checking Policy](#).

To create a DNS keyword checking rule based on fingerprints, perform the following steps:

**Step 1** View details about a DNS packet.

On the **Packet Details** page, application-layer information of the captured DNS packet is displayed in the **DNS** area, as shown in [Figure 8-8](#).

Figure 8-8 DNS packet information

DNS			
Packet Type	query	Domain Name	www.baidu.com
DNS Flag	0x0100	Trans ID	0x0203
<a href="#">Application-Layer Fingerprint Extraction</a>			

**Step 2** Click **Application-Layer Fingerprint Extraction**.

Figure 8-9 Extracting DNS fingerprints

**Step 3** Set **Name** and **Fingerprint**.

**Step 4** Click **OK**.

The system automatically generates a DNS keyword checking rule according to the settings.

**Step 5** View the newly created DNS keyword checking rule.

Choose **Policies > Access Control > DNS Keyword Checking** to view the newly created DNS keyword checking rule. Parameters of a DNS keyword checking rule are as follows:

- **Name:** policy name you have typed.
- **Source IP:** source IP address of the packet, which is **0.0.0.0(::)**.
- **Netmask:** subnet mask of the packet, which is **0.0.0.0(0)**.

- **Keyword:** The system generates checking rules according to the fingerprint(s) selected in [Step 2](#). For unselected fingerprints, their settings are left empty.
- **Action:** action to be taken for matched packets, with **Drop** as the default value.

Figure 8-10 Newly created DNS keyword checking rule

DNS Keyword Checking								
<input type="checkbox"/>	Name	Source IP	Netmask	Feature Field	Action	Description	Time of Creation	Operation
<input type="checkbox"/>	test_ads	14.1.1.1	255.255.255.255	DNS Flags:0100	Drop		2021-01-21 14:42:28	

----End

## HTTP Fingerprint Extraction

For HTTP packets, you can extract HTTP fingerprints from their detailed information to directly generate a HTTP keyword checking rule. For details about HTTP keyword checking rules, see section [5.2.6 HTTP Keyword Checking](#).

To create an HTTP keyword checking rule based on fingerprints, perform the following steps:

**Step 1** View details about an HTTP packet.

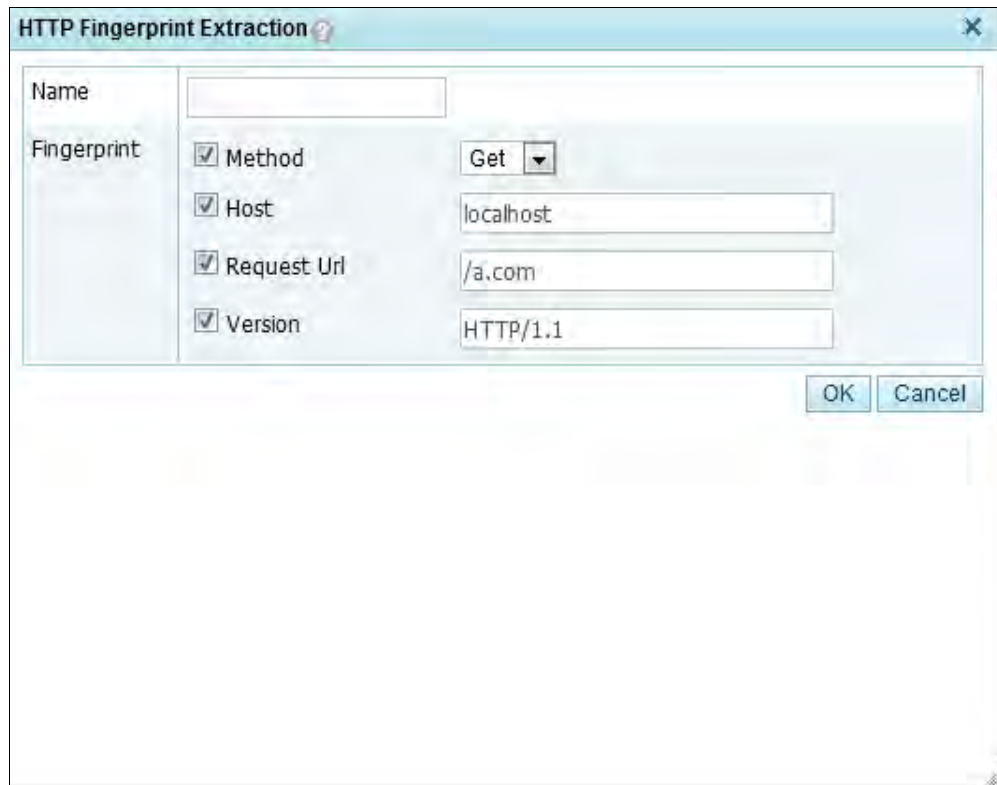
As shown in [Figure 8-4](#), the information about the captured HTTP packet is displayed in the **HTTP** area.

Figure 8-11 HTTP area

HTTP			
Method	GET	Host	localhost
URI	/a.com	Referer	--
User_agent	--	x-forward-for	--
cdn-src-ip	--		

**Step 2** Click **Application-Layer Fingerprint Extraction**.

Figure 8-12 Extracting HTTP fingerprints



**Step 3** Set **Name** and select one or multiple domains for **Fingerprint**.

**Step 4** Click **OK**.

The system automatically generates an HTTP keyword checking rule according to the settings.

**Step 5** View the newly created HTTP keyword checking rule.

Choose **Policies > Access Control > HTTP Keyword Checking**. Parameters of an HTTP keyword checking rule is as follows:

- **Name:** policy name you have typed.
- **Source IP:** source IP address of the packet, which is **0.0.0.0(::)**.
- **Netmask:** subnet mask of the packet, which is **0.0.0.0(0)**.
- **Keyword:** The keyword value depends on the setting of **Fingerprint**.
- **Action:** action to be taken for matched packets, with **Drop** as the default value.

Figure 8-13 Newly created HTTP keyword checking rule

Name	Source IP	Netmask	Feature Field	Action	Description	Time of Creation	Operation
test1	::	0	Method:get   Host:localhost   Request Url:/11   Version:HTTP/1.1	Drop		2020-02-21 14:40:36	

----End

## Payload Fingerprint Extraction

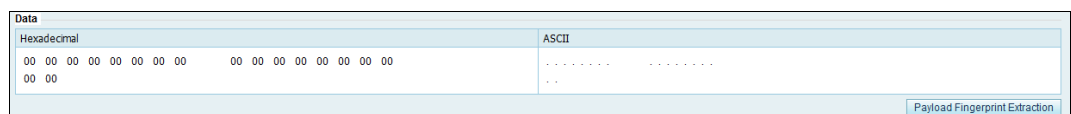
For TCP, UDP, and ICMP packets, you can extract payload fingerprints from the data displayed in the **Data** area by taking consecutive hexadecimal characters to directly create a pattern matching rule. For details about pattern matching rules, see section [8.2 Pattern Matching Rules](#).

To create a pattern matching rule based on fingerprints, perform the following steps:

**Step 1** View details about a TCP, UDP, or ICMP packet.

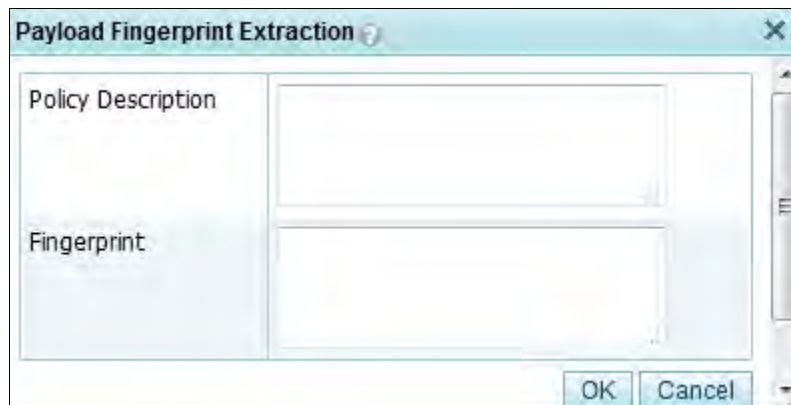
As shown in [Figure 8-4](#), the payload information of the captured TCP, UDP, or ICMP packet is displayed in the **Data** area.

Figure 8-14 Data area



**Step 2** Click **Payload Fingerprint Extraction**.

Figure 8-15 Extracting payload fingerprints



**Step 3** Set **Policy Description** and type one or more hexadecimal values in the **Fingerprint** text box.

**Step 4** Click **OK**.

The system automatically generates a pattern matching rule.

**Step 5** View the newly created pattern matching rule.

Choose **Advanced > Pattern Matching > Pattern Matching Rules** to view the newly created pattern matching rule. As shown in [Figure 8-16](#), parameters of a pattern matching rule are as follows:

- **Status:** indicate the status of the rule, which is **Disable**.
- **Source IP/Destination IP:** indicate the source/destination IP address of the packet, which are both **0.0.0.0(::)**.

- **Protocol:** indicates the protocol of the packet. This parameter is automatically filled according to the protocol you selected for the packet capture task. If **ALL** is selected, **TCP** is displayed by default.
- **Feature Field:** The feature field value depends on the setting of **Fingerprint**.
- **Description:** description of the rule, which is the same as the content of **Policy Description**.

Figure 8-16 Newly created pattern matching rule

Destination IP	Dst IP Prefix Length/Netmask	Destination Port	Source IP	Src IP Prefix Length/Netmask	Source Port	Protocol	Access Control	Status	Description	Time of Creation	Operation
0.0.0.0	0.0.0.0		0.0.0.0	0.0.0.0		UDP	Drop	Disable	1111	2020-02-21 14:37:34	
::	0		::	0		TCP	Drop	Disable	123	2020-02-21 14:40:29	

----End

### 8.1.1.8 Downloading a Manual Packet Capture File

After a manual packet capture task ends, the manual packet capture file is displayed on the file list, as shown in the **Packet Capture Files** area in [Figure 8-1](#). You can click **Download** in the **Operation** column of a manual packet capture file to download it to a local disk drive.

### 8.1.1.9 Deleting a Packet Capture File

- Step 1** In the **Manual Packet Capture Rules** area shown in [Figure 8-1](#), select one or more packet capture files (or select the **Select All** check box to select all files) and click **Delete**.
- Step 2** Click **OK** in the confirmation dialog box.

 <b>Note</b>	Packet capture files of ongoing tasks cannot be deleted.
-----------------	--

----End

## 8.1.2 Creating Automatic Packet Capture

- Automatic packet capture configuration for ADS NX3-800E, ADS NX3-2020E, ADS NX5-4020E, ADS NX5-6025E, ADS NX5-8000, ADS NX5-10000, and ADS NX5-HD6500 is as follows:
  - A maximum of three packet capture tasks can be configured and saved.
  - A maximum of three packet capture tasks can be enabled at the same time.
  - A maximum of 10 packet capture files can be saved in total (at most 10 packet capture files for each task).

### 8.1.2.1 Creating an Automatic Packet Capture Task

To configure an automatic packet capture task, perform the following steps:

**Step 1** Choose **Advanced > Packet Capture > Automatic Packet Capture**.

The status of packet capture tasks is displayed. For an ongoing packet capture task, **Status** is displayed as **Running**. Otherwise, **Status** is displayed as **Stop**.

Figure 8-17 Automatic Packet Capture page

Name	Status	Number of Packet Capture Files	Operation
test	Running	0	

Refresh Add

**Step 2** Click **Add** to create an automatic packet capture task.**Step 3** Configure parameters.

Figure 8-18 Configuring an automatic packet capture task

**Create Automatic Packet Capture Rule**

**Trigger Condition**

Item	Value
Destination IP	<input type="text"/>
Trigger Rate	<input type="text"/> * <input type="text"/> bps (1-42949672960)

**Parameter Configuration**


Item	Value
Name	<input type="text"/> (Only uppercase letters, lowercase letters, and digits are accepted.)
Interface	All
Protocol	All
Packets to Be Captured	<input type="text"/> * (1-30000)
Source IP	<input type="text"/> (*Example: 192.168.1.0/24. For IPv4 addresses, the network mask length should be 1 to 32; for IPv6 addresses, the prefix length should be 1 to 128.)
Destination IP	<input type="text"/>
Source/Destination IP	<input type="text"/> (*If this field is set, ignore Source IP and Destination IP.)
Max Packet Length	<input type="text"/> (64-1518)
Advanced Options	<input type="checkbox"/> Received <input type="checkbox"/> Sent <input type="checkbox"/> Drop (*If no option is selected, the system captures received packets by default.)
Upload to ADS M	<input type="radio"/> Yes <input checked="" type="radio"/> No

OK Cancel

[Table 8-3](#) describes some parameters for automatic packet capture. For details, see [Table 8-1](#).

Table 8-3 Automatic packet capture parameters

Parameter	Description
Destination IP	Specifies the destination IP address for this packet capture task. For the value of <b>0.0.0.0</b> , ADS will automatically start capturing packets when the traffic reaches the trigger rate.
Trigger Rate	Specifies the number of packets received by the destination IP address per second that will trigger automatic packet capture. The value range is 1-4294967295 pps or 1-42949672960 bps.
Upload to ADS M	Controls whether to upload automatic packet capture data to ADS M.

Parameter	Description
	 <p><b>Note</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>You can configure up to three automatic packet capture tasks, but can enable this for only one task.</li> <li>For the implementation of this function, you should configure the IP address of ADS M during management mode configuration. For details, see section <a href="#">3.1.4.1 Configuring the Management Mode</a>.</li> </ul>


**Step 4** Click **OK** to complete the configuration.

The automatic packet capture task starts only when specified conditions are triggered.

---End

### 8.1.2.2 Managing an Automatic Packet Capture Task

After automatic packet capture tasks are configured, you can manually start or stop them. In addition, you can refresh, view, edit and delete such tasks in the same way as manual packet capture tasks.

 <b>Note</b>	<p>When the number of automatic packet capture files reaches the upper limit, after you start a new automatic packet capture task, the system will automatically clear the existing automatic packet capture files.</p>
--	---

### 8.1.2.3 Managing Automatic Packet Capture Files


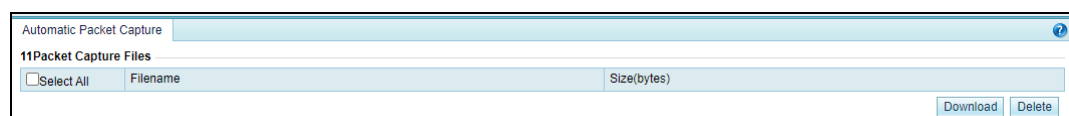
On the page shown in [Figure 8-17](#), click  in the **Operation** column of an automatic packet capture task to open the packet capture file list, as shown in [Figure 8-19](#).

Figure 8-19 Automatic packet capture file list



You can download, view, and delete automatic packet capture files in the same way as manual packet capture files.

## 8.2 Pattern Matching Rules

To defend against unknown attacks, ADS can adopt the pattern matching function to filter out packets with certain signatures based on signature matching. The key of the process is to find typical signatures of packets of unknown attacks.



This section covers the following topics:

- [Creating a Pattern Matching Rule](#)
- [Creating Pattern Matching Rules in Batches](#)
- [Enabling/Disabling Pattern Matching Rules](#)
- [Modifying Pattern Matching Rules](#)
- [Deleting Pattern Matching Rules](#)
- [Viewing Pattern Matching Rules](#)

## 8.2.1 Creating a Pattern Matching Rule

To create a pattern matching rule, perform the following steps:

**Step 1** Choose **Advanced > Pattern Matching > Pattern Matching Rules**.

Figure 8-20 Pattern Matching Rules page

<input type="checkbox"/>	Destination IP	Dst IP Prefix Length/Netmask	Destination Port	Source IP	Src IP Prefix Length/Netmask	Source Port	Protocol	Access Control	Status	Description	Time of Creation	Operation
<input type="checkbox"/>	8.18.66.0	255.255.255.0		0.0.0.0	0.0.0.0		TCP	Drop	Disable		2018-07-19 11:41:34	
<input type="checkbox"/>	1.1.1.1	255.255.255.255	1:100	2.2.2.2	255.255.255.255	2:100	TCP	Protect	Disable	description	2018-06-07 14:17:07	
<input type="checkbox"/>	1.1.1.1	255.255.255.255	1:100	2.2.2.2	255.255.255.255	2:100	TCP	Drop	Disable	description	2018-06-07 14:18:17	
<input type="checkbox"/>	1.1.1.1	255.255.255.255	1:100	2.2.2.2	255.255.255.255	2:100	TCP	Drop	Disable	description	2018-06-07 14:18:17	

**Step 2** Click **Add**.

Figure 8-21 Creating a pattern matching rule (TCP)


Pattern Matching Rules

**Add Pattern Matching Rule**

Item	Value	Invert
Destination IP	<input type="text" value=""/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Dst IP Prefix Length/Netmask	<input type="text" value="255.255.255.0"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Destination Port	From <input type="text" value=""/> To <input type="text" value=""/>	<input type="radio"/> Yes <input checked="" type="radio"/> No
Source IP	<input type="text" value=""/>	<input type="checkbox"/> Yes <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> No
Src IP Prefix Length/Netmask	<input type="text" value="255.255.255.0"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Source Port	From <input type="text" value=""/> To <input type="text" value=""/>	<input type="checkbox"/> Yes <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> No
Protocol	TCP	
Access Control	Drop	
Enable	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Yes <input type="radio"/> No	
Interface	From <input type="text" value=""/> To <input type="text" value=""/>	<input type="checkbox"/> Yes <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> No
Packet Length	From <input type="text" value=""/> To <input type="text" value=""/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
IP ID	From <input type="text" value=""/> To <input type="text" value=""/>	<input type="checkbox"/> Yes <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> No
TOS	--	
TTL/HopLimit	--	
UDP Validation	<input type="checkbox"/> (0 indicates that packets whose checksum is 0 are matched; 1 indicates that packets whose checksum is not 0 are matched; an empty value indicates that all packets are matched.)	
ICMP Header Type	--	
ICMPv6 Header Type	--	
TCP Seq Number	From <input type="text" value=""/> To <input type="text" value=""/>	<input type="checkbox"/> Yes <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> No
TCP ACK Number	From <input type="text" value=""/> To <input type="text" value=""/>	<input type="checkbox"/> Yes <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> No
TCP Option	--	
Check TCP Flag	<input type="checkbox"/>	
TCP Flag	<input type="checkbox"/> SYN <input type="checkbox"/> ACK <input type="checkbox"/> FIN <input type="checkbox"/> RST <input type="checkbox"/> URG <input type="checkbox"/> PSH	
Signature Offset	0 (Bytes)(0--1480)	
Signature Depth	1480 (Bytes)(0--1480)	
Match Case	<input type="radio"/> Yes <input checked="" type="radio"/> No	
Signature	<input type="text" value=""/> (Ordinary characters)	<input type="checkbox"/> Yes <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> No
Description	<input type="text" value=""/>	
Time of Creation	2019-02-25 16:30:04	

Table 8-4 describes parameters for creating a pattern matching rule.

Table 8-4 Automatic packet capture parameters

Parameter	Description
Destination IP	Destination IP address of packets matching this rule. You can type an IPv4 or IPv6 address according to the actual network deployment.
Dst IP Prefix Length/Netmask	Prefix length (for IPv6 protocol) or netmask (for IPv4 protocol) of the destination IP address.
Destination Port	Destination port range. This is required only when <b>Protocol</b> is set to <b>TCP</b> or <b>UDP</b> . For example, 1049–5094 indicates packets with the destination port in the range from 1049 to 5094. If only <b>1049</b> is filled, it indicates that only packets with the destination port 1049 will be deemed to match this rule.
Source IP	Source IP address of packets to be matched with this rule. You can type an IPv4 or IPv6 address according to the actual network deployment.
Src IP Prefix Length/Netmask	Prefix length (for IPv6 protocol) or netmask (for IPv4 protocol) of the source IP address.
Source Port	Source port range. This is required only when <b>Protocol</b> is set to <b>TCP</b> or <b>UDP</b> . For example, 1049–5094 indicates packets with the source port in the range from 1049 to 5094. If only <b>1049</b> is filled, it indicates that only packets with the source port 1049 will be deemed to match this rule.
Protocol	Values are <b>TCP</b> , <b>UDP</b> , <b>ICMP</b> , and <b>ICMPv6</b> .
Access Control	<p>Action performed by ADS on packets matching this rule.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Filter</b> indicates that ADS allows packets matching this rule to pass through.</li> <li>• <b>Drop</b> indicates that ADS drops packets matching this rule.</li> <li>• <b>Drop and add to blacklist</b> indicates that ADS drops packets matching this rule and adds their source IP addresses to the blacklist.</li> <li>• <b>Drop and disconnect</b> indicates that ADS drops packets matching this rule and sends an RST packet to the server to interrupt the connections.</li> <li>• <b>Drop,add to blacklist,and disconnect</b> indicates that ADS drops packets matching this rule, adds their source IP addresses to the blacklist, and sends an RST packets to the server to interrupt connections.</li> <li>• <b>Rate-limiting</b> indicates that the maximum number of packets matching this rule that are allowed to pass through per second should not exceed the threshold specified here. Excessive packets will be dropped. The value range is 1–6000000 pps, with <b>4000</b> as the default value.</li> </ul> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>If <b>Access Control</b> is set to <b>Drop and add to blacklist</b> or <b>Drop,add to blacklist,and disconnect</b>, you also need to enable the global blacklist function. Otherwise, the blacklist is invalid. For details, see section <a href="#">5.2.9 Blacklist</a>.</p>
Enable	Controls whether to enable this rule. The value <b>Yes</b> indicates this rule is enabled.
Interface	Range of the interfaces (working interfaces on the front panel of ADS) through which packets are transmitted.
Packet Length	Length range of packets to be matched with this rule.
IP ID	IP identification in an IPv4 header. Either a specific value or a value range is allowed. The value range is 0–65536.

Parameter	Description
TOS	Service type. Values include <b>Min latency</b> , <b>Max throughput</b> , <b>Highest reliability</b> , <b>Min cost</b> , and <b>Common service</b> .
TTL/HopLimit	Matching method of the TTL value, which can be <b>Greater than</b> , <b>Smaller than</b> , or <b>Equal to</b> .
UDP Validation	Checksum of UDP packets. This is available only when <b>Protocol</b> is set to <b>UDP</b> .
ICMP Header Type	Type of the ICMP packet header. This is available only when <b>Protocol</b> is set to <b>ICMP</b> .
ICMPv6 Header Type	Type of the ICMPv6 packet header. This is available only when <b>Protocol</b> is set to <b>ICMPv6</b> .
TCP Seq Number	TCP sequence number in a TCP header. Either a specific value or a value range is allowed. The value range is 0–4294967295.
TCP ACK Number	TCP acknowledgement number in a TCP header. Either a specific value or a value range is allowed. The value range is 0–4294967295.
TCP Option	Three options are available: <b>Max Packet Length</b> , <b>Window Scale</b> , and <b>Timestamp</b> . This is available only when <b>Protocol</b> is set to <b>TCP</b> .
Check TCP Flag	Controls whether to check TCP flags. Selection of this check box indicates that ADS will check TCP flags in packets.
TCP Flag	Flag bit of the TCP packet header, which can be <b>SYN</b> , <b>ACK</b> , <b>FIN</b> , <b>RST</b> , <b>URG</b> , and <b>PSH</b> . This is available only when <b>Protocol</b> is set to <b>TCP</b> .
Signature Offset	Number of bytes from the start of the packet body to a given position where the search starts. Its value should be smaller than the total length of the packet body. For TCP packets, the packet body includes the TCP header. For UDP packets, the packet body refers to the payload.
Signature Depth	Maximum number of bytes allowed for searching. The depth is equal to the total length of packet body minus the offset.
Match Case	Controls whether signature characters are case sensitive. Only English letters are under this restriction.
Signature	Signature characters to be searched for. Special and unprintable characters need to be translated into hex format (for example, translate carriage return and line feed into \x0d\x0a). You can also leave this field empty. In this case, <b>Offset</b> and <b>Depth</b> are both <b>0</b> , which cannot be changed. Requirements for typing ordinary characters are as follows: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Special characters (! \$ ") and spaces, and GBK encoded characters (Chinese) are not supported.</li> <li>• Characters preceded with \x will be interpreted as hexadecimal characters. As \x is used to differentiate hexadecimal characters from ordinary characters, characters preceded with \x are not allowed if <b>Ordinary characters</b> is selected.</li> </ul> Requirements for typing hexadecimal characters are as follows: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Hexadecimal characters with or without \x, such as \x67\x1f and 671f, are supported.</li> </ul>

Parameter	Description
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Only single-byte characters, like \x67\x1f, are allowed.</li> <li>• Double-byte characters, like \x671f\x1a, are not allowed.</li> <li>• Characters like \x6\x1a are not allowed.</li> <li>• Spaces are not allowed.</li> </ul> <p>You can select <b>Ordinary characters</b> or <b>Hexadecimal characters</b> for <b>Signature</b>.</p> <p>You are advised to copy the signature characters from the packet capture file and paste them to the <b>Signature</b> text box. If certain characters are not required, delete them.</p> <p>The following shows how to copy signature characters from Wireshark:</p> <p>Use Wireshark to open a captured packet, right-click the target signature character line, and choose <b>Copy &gt; Bytes &gt; Hex Stream</b> to copy the selected hexadecimal character line.</p>
Description	Brief description of this rule.
Time of Creation	Time when the rule is created, which is automatically generated by the system.



The **Invert** column is available for some parameters. Suppose that you specify **202.114.1.242** as the source IP address and **255.255.255.0** as the netmask. If you select **Yes** for **Invert**, packets with a source IP address beyond the range 202.114.1.1–202.114.1.254 are deemed to match the configured rule.

**Step 3** Set parameters and click **OK** to save the settings.

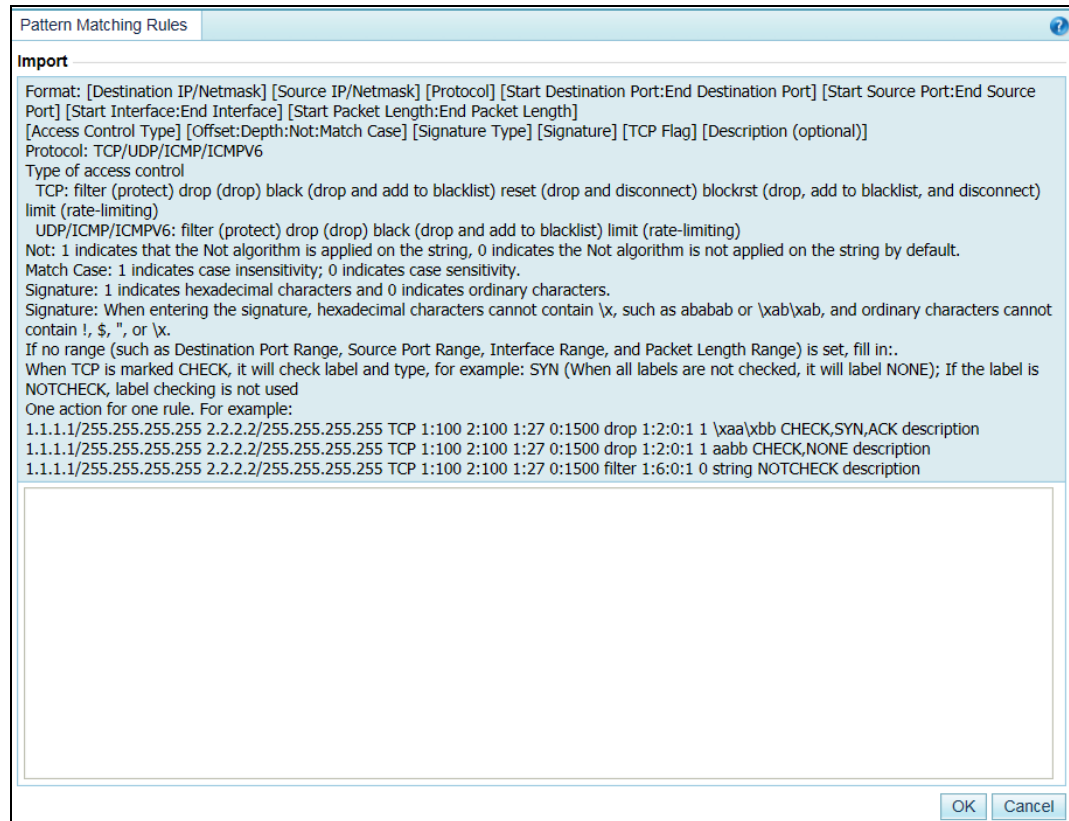
---End

## 8.2.2 Creating Pattern Matching Rules in Batches

To create pattern matching rules in batches, perform the following steps:

**Step 1** On the **Pattern Matching Rules** page shown in [Figure 8-20](#), click **Import** below the table to create pattern matching rules in batches.

Figure 8-22 Creating pattern matching rules in batches



**Step 2** Type pattern matching rules as prompted.

Pay attention to the following format specifications:

- Parameters of each pattern matching rule are separated by spaces.
- Each rule should take up one line.

**Step 3** After the parameter configuration is completed, click **OK** to save the settings.

----End

## 8.2.3 Enabling/Disabling Pattern Matching Rules

On ADS, only enabled pattern matching rules are valid, while disabled ones are invalid. Enabling and disabling pattern matching rules can free you from frequent deletion and addition operations. If some pattern matching rules are not required currently, you can disable them.

### Enabling Pattern Matching Rules

Enable pattern matching rules that are disabled.

On the **Pattern Matching Rules** page shown in [Figure 8-20](#), select one or more pattern matching rules (or select the **Select All** check box to select all rules), click **Enable** below the table, and then click **OK** in the confirmation dialog box to enable the selected rules.


## Disabling Pattern Matching Rules

Disable pattern matching rules that are enabled.

On the **Pattern Matching Rules** page shown in [Figure 8-20](#), select one or more pattern matching rules (or select the **Select All** check box to select all rules), click **Disable** below the table, and then click **OK** in the confirmation dialog box to disable the selected rules.

### 8.2.4 Modifying Pattern Matching Rules


After configuring pattern matching rules, you can edit rule parameters by performing the following steps:

- Step 1** On the **Pattern Matching Rules** page shown in [Figure 8-20](#), click  in the **Operation** column to edit parameters of a rule, as shown in [Figure 8-21](#).
- Step 2** Click **OK** to save the settings and return to the **Pattern Matching Rules** page.


---End

### 8.2.5 Deleting Pattern Matching Rules

You can delete one pattern matching rule or multiple rules in batches on ADS in either of the following ways:

- On the **Pattern Matching Rules** page shown in [Figure 8-20](#), click  in the **Operation** column and then click **OK** in the confirmation dialog box to delete a rule.
- On the **Pattern Matching Rules** page shown in [Figure 8-20](#), select one or more pattern matching rules (or select the **Select All** check box to select all rules in the list) to be deleted, click **Delete** below the table, and then click **OK** in the confirmation dialog box to delete the selected rules.

### 8.2.6 Viewing Pattern Matching Rules

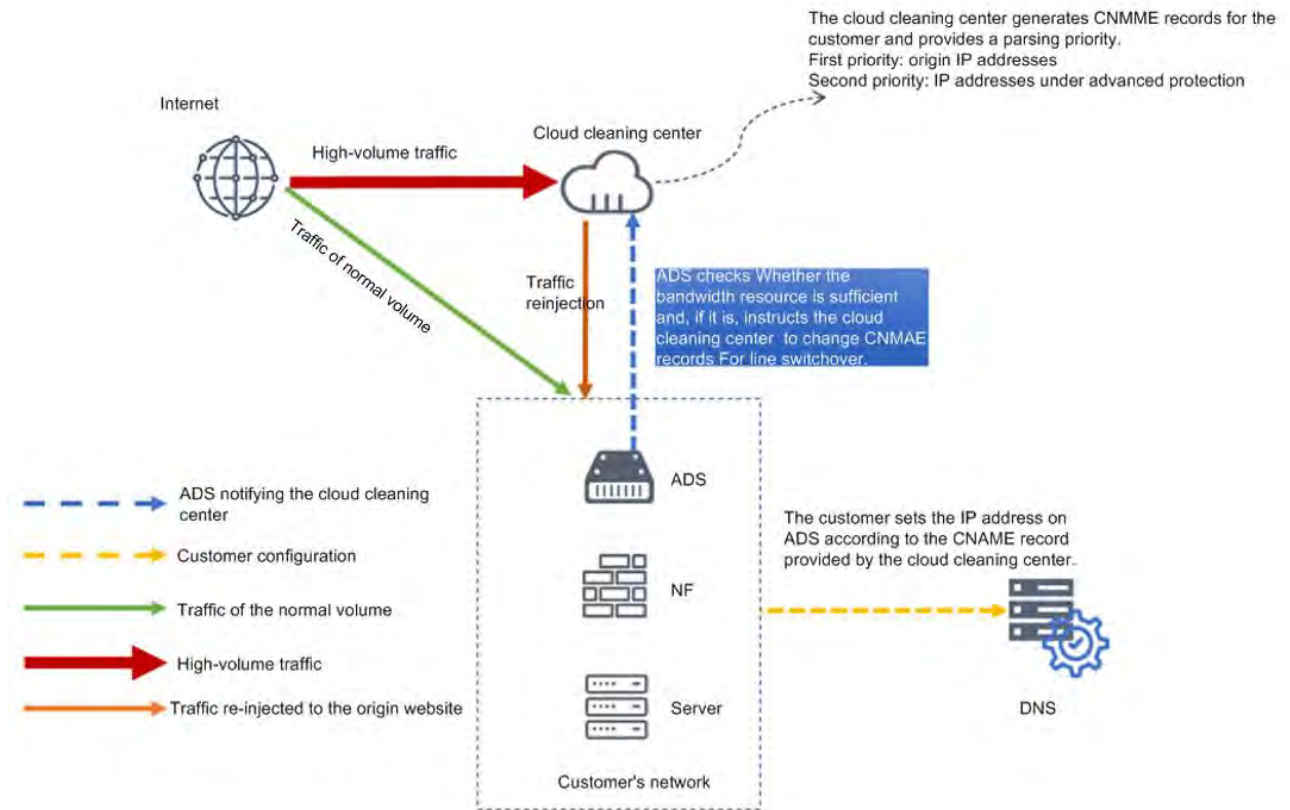
On the **Pattern Matching Rules** page shown in [Figure 8-20](#), click  in the **Operation** column of a pattern matching rule to view its information.

After viewing rules, click **Back** to return to the **Pattern Matching Rules** page.

## 8.3 Cloud Signaling

The cloud signaling function is available only after you purchase the cloud cleaning service. [Figure 8-23](#) shows the topology of the application scenario. Via cloud signaling, ADS, in the case of volumetric attacks, can divert traffic to the cloud cleaning center for cleaning. Then the traffic is injected back to the origin website after being cleaned.

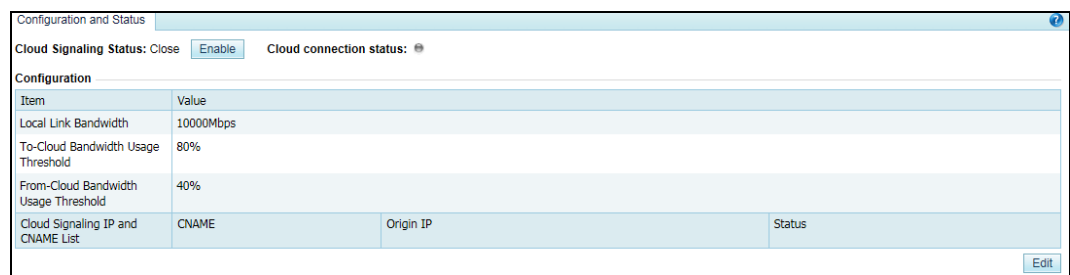
Figure 8-23 Topology of the cloud signaling scenario



To configure cloud signaling, perform the following steps:

**Step 1** Choose **Advanced > Cloud Signaling > Configuration and Status**.

Figure 8-24 Configuration and Status page



**Step 2** Configure parameters.

a. Click **Edit**.

Figure 8-25 Configuring cloud signaling parameters

Item	Value
Local Link Bandwidth	10000 Mbps 1~10000000
To-Cloud Bandwidth Usage Threshold	80 % 10~100
From-Cloud Bandwidth Usage Threshold	40 % 1~95

Cloud Signaling IP and CNAME List

CNAME	Origin IP	Operation
<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	

OK Cancel

b. (Optional) Modify default parameters.

Table 8-5 Parameters for configuring cloud signaling

Parameter	Description
Local Link Bandwidth	Specifies the bandwidth of the link on which ADS resides. The unit is Mbps. The value range is 1–10000000, with <b>10000</b> as the default value.
To-Cloud Bandwidth Usage Threshold	When the incoming traffic exceeds the to-cloud bandwidth usage threshold, the traffic will be automatically switched to the cloud cleaning center for cleaning. The value range is 10–100, with <b>80</b> as the default value.
From-Cloud Bandwidth Usage Threshold	When the total traffic falls below the from-cloud bandwidth usage threshold, the traffic will be automatically switched to the local ADS for cleaning. The value range is 1–95, with <b>40</b> as the default value.  <b>Note</b> The from-cloud bandwidth usage threshold must be smaller than or equal to the to-cloud bandwidth usage threshold minus 5.

c. Configure origin IP addresses and CNAME records.

You can click to add multiple entries.



Figure 8-26 Configuring the cloud signaling IP address and CNAME list

Item	Value
Local Link Bandwidth	10000 Mbps 1~10000000
To-Cloud Bandwidth Usage Threshold	80 % 10~100
From-Cloud Bandwidth Usage Threshold	40 % 1~95

CNAME	Origin IP	Operation
nsfocus.com	1.2.3.4	X

Table 8-6 Parameters for configuring origin IP addresses and CNAME records

Parameter	Description
CNAME	CNAME is a Canonical Name Record or Alias Record that maps one domain name, for example, M, to another, for example, M'. Therefore, changing the IP address that maps domain name M' also changes the IP address translated for domain name M. Here, you should type the CNAME string provided by NSFOCUS operations personnel. The CNAME string contains a maximum of 256 characters.
Origin IP	Specifies the origin IP address of the website whose traffic requires cloud cleaning. It is usually the public IPv4 address of the local server mapping the domain name used for providing services. One CNAME record supports a maximum of four origin IP addresses and all origin IP addresses, no matter to which CNAME record they belong, must be unique.

**Step 3** Enable cloud signaling.

After you click **Enable**, ADS automatically checks its connection to the cloud cleaning center. Then different information will be returned, depending on whether the connection is successfully established.

- If the connection cannot be established, a dialog box shown in [Figure 8-27](#) is displayed.
- If the connection is successfully established, the **Origin IP Addresses** area is displayed, indicating the source IP address of legitimate traffic, which is injected back to the customer's server by the cloud cleaning center.

Figure 8-27 Message displayed in the case that cloud signaling cannot be enabled

Enabling failure.  
Failed to connect to the cloud cleaning center. Please make sure ADS is connected to the Internet and the CNAME configuration is correct.

OK


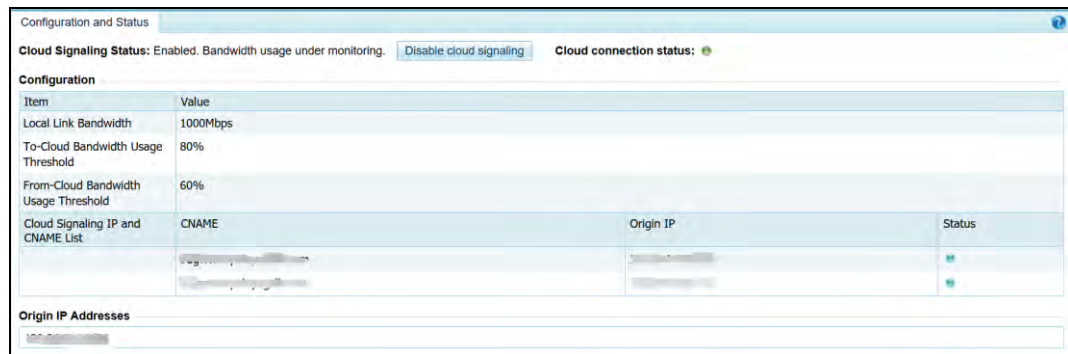
 <b>Note</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>You are advised to add the source IP address to the whitelist on ADS, the firewall, and WAF.</li> <li>After cloud signaling is enabled, no settings can be edited.</li> </ul>
--	--







Figure 8-28 Page displayed after cloud signaling is enabled



**Step 4** Check the interaction status between ADS and the cloud cleaning center.

After cloud signaling is enabled, the status of the interaction between ADS and the cloud cleaning center is displayed in the **Status** column shown in [Figure 8-28](#).

Table 8-7 Status description

Traffic	Status Description
When there is no volumetric attack or attack traffic is smaller than the to-cloud bandwidth usage threshold, the traffic destined for the origin IP address will not be directed to the cloud cleaning center, but will be cleaned locally.	<b>Status</b> is displayed as  .
When the attack traffic exceeds the to-cloud bandwidth usage threshold, cloud signaling will be triggered and attack traffic will be diverted to the cloud cleaning center for scrubbing.	<b>Status</b> is displayed as  To-cloud lines updating ...  .
The attack traffic is successfully diverted to the cloud cleaning center for scrubbing.	<b>Status</b> is displayed as  Traffic already diverted to cloud. .
When the attack traffic falls below the from-cloud bandwidth usage threshold, attack traffic will be switched back from the cloud cleaning center to ADS for local cleaning.	<b>Status</b> is displayed as  From-cloud lines updating ...  .

----End

## 8.4 Collaboration with NTI



To use this function, you need to buy an additional license. For details, contact NSFOCUS technical support.

ADS can collaborate with NTI. Specifically, ADS uploads blacklisted source IP addresses to NTI, which sends the data to ADS. For high-risk IP addresses, ADS automatically lists them on the blacklist and blocks packets from these addresses.

Choose **Advanced > Advanced Protection > NTI**. The **NTI** page appears, as shown in [Figure 8-29](#).

Figure 8-29 NTI page

Item	Value
Enable	<input type="radio"/> Yes <input checked="" type="radio"/> No
Synchronization Status	Last synchronization record: None
	Last share record: None
	Test Connectivity: Unavailable

[Table 8-8](#) describes NTI-related parameters.

Table 8-8 NTI-related parameters

Parameter	Description
Enable	Controls whether to enable collaboration with NTI. After this function is enabled, ADS immediately downloads data from NTI and refreshes the current blacklist. For high-risk IP addresses, ADS will block packets from them.
Threat Intelligence Sharing	Controls whether to share threat intelligence with NTI. After this function is enabled, ADS reports the discovered high-risk IP addresses to NTI. If you need to enable this function, you are advised to enable the blacklist function at the same time. Only in this way can ADS automatically upload the local blacklisted source IP addresses to NTI.
Server Address	Specifies the URL of NSFOCUS's threat intelligence server. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>For use on the Chinese mainland, choose <b>nti.nsfocus.com</b>.</li> <li>For use in other countries and regions, choose <b>nti.nsfocusglobal.com</b>.</li> </ul> ADS must be connected to the Internet before collaborating with NTI.
Synchronization Status	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Last synchronization record:</b> provides information about the last synchronization from NTI. This information is automatically updated on a daily basis.</li> <li><b>Last share record:</b> provides information about the last upload of data to NTI. This information is automatically updated on an hourly basis.</li> </ul>
Test Connectivity	A button for you to test whether ADS is properly connected to NTI. After you

Parameter	Description
	click this button, if <b>Connected</b> is displayed, ADS can properly communicate with NTI; if another word is displayed, you must check the network status to ensure the proper communication between ADS and NTI.

You can also query the threat intelligence in NTI from ADS. In the area shown in [Figure 8-30](#), type one or more IP addresses separated by commas (;), and then click **Search** to check whether specific IP addresses exist in NTI. The matched IP addresses are displayed in the lower part of the page together with the credit level and update time.

Figure 8-30 Threat Intelligence Query area

The screenshot shows the 'Threat Intelligence Query' interface. At the top, there is a text input field labeled 'IP Address' with a placeholder 'Separated by commas'. Below the input field is a 'Search' button. Underneath the search area are navigation buttons: 'First', '< Previous', 'Next >', and 'Last'. Below these buttons is a table with three columns: 'IP Address', 'Level', and 'Update Time'. The table is currently empty, displaying a message 'No data.' with an information icon.

# 9 Operation and Maintenance

This chapter contains the following sections:

Section	Description
<a href="#">Device Protection Status</a>	Describes how to check the trust status of source IP addresses and the protection status of destination IP addresses.
<a href="#">Network Diagnosis</a>	Describes how to diagnose network faults.

## 9.1 Device Protection Status

This section covers the following:

- [Device Protection Status](#)
- [Network Diagnosis](#)

### 9.1.1 Checking the Trust Status

To check the trust status of source IP addresses, perform the following steps:

**Step 1** Choose **O&M > Device Protection Status > Trusted IP**.

Figure 9-1 Trusted IP page

Item	Value
------	-------

**Step 2** Type a source IP address and click **Search**. Then the trust information of this address is displayed, such as the trust level, remaining time of the current trust status, and trust reason.

Figure 9-2 Viewing the trust information of a source IP address

The screenshot shows a web interface titled "Trusted IP". At the top, there is a search bar with the text "Source IP" and the value "192.168.1.1". To the right of the search bar are two buttons: "Search" and "Clear Trust". Below the search bar is a table with two columns: "Item" and "Value". The table is currently empty, and a warning icon (a yellow triangle with an exclamation mark) is displayed in the center of the table area with the text "No data." to its right.

Click **Clear Trust** to clear the information about existing trusted IP addresses.

---End

## 9.1.2 Checking the Protection Status

To check the protection status of a destination IP address for which traffic is being diverted for cleaning, perform the following steps:

**Step 1** Choose **O&M > Device Protection Status > Protection Status**.

Figure 9-3 Protection Status page

The screenshot shows a web interface titled "Protection Status". At the top, there is a search bar with the text "Destination IP" and an empty input field. To the right of the search bar is a dropdown menu labeled "Policy" with the value "UDP" selected. Below the search bar and dropdown menu is a "Search" button. Below the search bar is a table with two columns: "Item" and "Value". The table is currently empty, and a warning icon (a yellow triangle with an exclamation mark) is displayed in the center of the table area with the text "No data." to its right.

**Step 2** Configure query parameters.

Table 9-1 Parameters for querying the protection status of a destination IP address

Parameter	Description
Destination IP	Destination IP address to be queried. You can type an IPv4 or IPv6 address according to the actual network deployment scenario.
Policies	Protection policies applied to this destination IP address.
URL	URL under protection. This parameter is available only when <b>HTTP_Get</b> is selected for <b>Policy</b> .
Destination Port	Destination port. This is required only when <b>Protocol</b> is set to other protocols than <b>UDP</b> or <b>ICMP</b> .

**Step 3** Click **Search** to query the protection status of this IP address and the remaining time of the protection status.

Figure 9-4 Viewing the protection status of a destination IP address

Protection Status	
Destination IP	8.18.66.11 Policies ACK
Destination Port	80 (0-65535) Search
Item	Value
Protection Status	Under protection
Remaining Time (seconds)	98

----End

## 9.2 Network Diagnosis

When the system fails, you can troubleshoot it and locate the fault with the following network diagnosis tools available on ADS:

- Ping
- Port Check
- Tcpdump

### 9.2.1 Ping

Ping is used to check whether a host is alive or connects to the network.

To use this function, perform the following steps:

**Step 1** Choose **O&M > Network Diagnosis > Ping**.

The default diagnosis tool is ping, as shown in [Figure 9-5](#).

Figure 9-5 Network diagnosis – ping

Network Diagnosis	
Item	Value
IP	<input type="text"/>
	OK
Diagnosis Result	

**Step 2** Type an IP address and click **OK**.

The ping result will then be displayed in the text box below.

----End

## 9.2.2 Port Check

When ADS collaborates with other devices or sends data to other devices, you can check whether the peer port is reachable, so as to verify whether a firewall is configured or whether the corresponding service is disabled on the peer device.

To use this function, perform the following steps:

**Step 1** Choose **O&M > Network Diagnosis > Port Check**.

Figure 9-6 Network diagnosis – port check

Item	Value
IP	<input type="text"/>
Port	<input type="text"/>
Timeout	10 (0-30)(s)

OK

Diagnosis Result

**Step 2** Configure port check parameters.

Table 9-2 Port check parameters

Parameter	Description
IP	Peer IP address to be checked.
Port	Peer port to be checked.
Timeout	Timeout of the port check, which can be 0 to 30 seconds.

**Step 3** Click **OK**.

The port check result will then be displayed in the text box below.

---End

## 9.2.3 Tcpdump

Tcpdump is used to intercept and analyze packets being transmitted or received over a network as defined by a user. The user can check the status of and troubleshoot network interface cards (NICs) based on such analysis.



## Generating a Packet Capture File

To generate a packet capture file with Tcpcmdump, perform the following steps:

**Step 1** Choose **O&M > Network Diagnosis > Tcpcmdump**.

Figure 9-7 Network diagnosis – tcpcmdump

Item	Value
Interface	Management Interface
Source/Destination IP	
Protocol	Unlimited
Max Captured Packets	[1~10000]

OK

Status: tcpcmdump Stop Refresh

Select All	Filename	Size(bytes)
<input type="checkbox"/>		

Delete

**Step 2** Configure tcpcmdump parameters.

Table 9-3 Tcpcmdump parameters

Parameter	Description
Interface	Specifies a working interface or the management interface for capturing packets.
Source/Destination IP	Specifies the source or destination IP address of packets to be captured. No value indicates all IP addresses.
Protocol	Specifies a protocol so that packets transmitted by using this protocol will be captured. You can select <b>Unlimited</b> , <b>TCP</b> , <b>UDP</b> , <b>ICMP</b> , or <b>ICMPv6</b> .
Max Captured Packets	Specifies the maximum number of packets to be captured. The value ranges from 1 to 10000.

**Step 3** Click **OK**.

The tool then captures packets as specified and saves them in a .cap file, which is displayed in the list, as shown in [Figure 9-7](#).

----End

## Downloading a Packet Capture File

In the packet capture file list, click the name of a packet capture file to download it to a local disk drive. Such files can be opened with Ethereal or Wireshark.

## Deleting Packet Capture Files

Select the check box(es) of a file or multiple files and then click **Delete** to delete the selected file(s).

Note that packet capture files of ongoing tasks cannot be deleted.

# 10 Console-based Management

---

Via a serial connection, you can access the console-based manager to perform operations such as initial configuration, status detection, and restoration of initial configuration, which cannot be conducted on the web-based manager.

This chapter describes how to log in to and manage the console, containing the following sections:

Section	Description
<a href="#">Login to the Console</a>	Describes how to log in to the console-based manager.
<a href="#">Details</a>	Describes how to manage various initial settings of the device.

## 10.1 Login to the Console

Before logging in to the console, you need to prepare the following:

- One computer
- One serial cable included in the accessory box
- Terminal software (such as the HyperTerminal software included in Microsoft Windows) that can establish communication to the ADS device via the console
- Connection of ADS to the computer with a console cable

Here, the HyperTerminal software included in a Microsoft Windows XP operating system is taken as an example to describe how to connect ADS to terminal software:

To log in to the ADS console, perform the following steps:

**Step 1** Use the terminal software to log in to the console via a serial port.

For details on communication parameters of the console port, see appendix [B Default Parameters](#).

**Step 2** Type the initial user name and password of the console administrator.

If the user name and password are correct, you will successfully log in to the console.



Note

Note that you can only operate on the keyboard on the console. Type a sequence number as prompted and press **Enter** to open the console management menu.

----End

## 10.2 Details

After you successfully log in to the console of ADS, the main menu is displayed, as shown in [Figure 10-1](#). Type a sequence number as prompted and press **Enter** to open a menu.

For the initial login, the system asks you to change the initial password. You must change the password before performing other operations. For details on changing the password, see section [10.2.4 Changing the Console Password](#).

Figure 10-1 Main menu of the console

```

Welcome to Nsfocus ADS
-----
  1. IPv4 Network setting
  2. IPv6 Network setting
  3. DNS setting
  4. Console Password change
  5. Datetime setting
  6. All Default setting
  7. Web Password Default setting
  8. Console time out setting
  9. Rollback system
 10. System state check
 11. Management interface ACL status
 12. Web server control
 13. Remote Login Management
 14. Reset authentication selection
 15. Reboot System
 16. Logout
-----
Your password is the initial password.
Please choose "Console Password Change" to customize a new one.
Input your selection: █

```

### 10.2.1 Configuring IPv4 Network Settings

On the main menu, type **1** and press **Enter** to open the IPv4 address configuration screen. Type the IPv4 address, netmask, and gateway address, with each followed by a carriage return. The system displays the settings, as shown in [Figure 10-2](#).

After confirming the settings, type **y** and press **Enter** to save the settings and return to the main menu.

Figure 10-2 IPv4 network settings

```

Current network setting:
  IP=10.30.2.105
NETMASK=255.255.0.0
GATEWAY=10.30.255.254
Input your network setting:
Input the IP address(10.30.2.105):
Input the netmask(255.255.0.0):
Input the gateway(10.30.255.254):

Your network setting is:
  IP=10.30.2.105
NETMASK=255.255.0.0
GATEWAY=10.30.255.254
Are you sure to save and enable this setting(y/n):

```

## 10.2.2 Configuring IPv6 Network Settings

On the main menu, type **2** and press **Enter** to open the IPv6 address configuration screen. Type the IPv6 address, prefix length, and gateway address, with each followed by a carriage return. The system displays the settings, as shown in [Figure 10-3](#).

After confirming the settings, type **y** and press **Enter** to save the settings and return to the main menu.

Figure 10-3 IPv6 network settings

```

Current network setting:
  IP_v6_link=
      inet6 addr: fe80::210:f3ff:fe2a:a24a/64 Scope:Link
IP_v6_global=
      inet6 addr: 2001::98/64 Scope:Global
  GATEWAY_v6=null
Input your network setting:
Input the IP address(2001::98):
Input the netmask(64):
Input the gateway:

Your network setting is:
  IP_v6=2001::98/64
  GATEWAY_v6=
Are you sure to save and enable this setting(y/n):

```

## 10.2.3 Configuring DNS Settings

On the main menu, type **3** and press **Enter** to open the DNS configuration screen.

As shown in [Figure 10-4](#), type the IP address of the DNS server as prompted, and press **Enter** to save the settings and return to the main menu.

Figure 10-4 Configuring the DNS server

```

Input the DNS address(192.168.1.1):192.168.1.2
Mon Mar 26 14:48:17 CST 2012
Mon Mar 26 14:48:17 CST 2012
tar: removing leading '/' from member names
DNS changed!

```

## 10.2.4 Changing the Console Password

On the main menu, type **4** and press **Enter** to change the login password of the console, as shown in [Figure 10-5](#).

Type the current password and new password, and press **Enter**. Then the system displays a message notifying you whether the password is successfully changed.

After the password is changed, the main menu is changed as shown in [Figure 10-6](#).

Figure 10-5 Changing the console password

```

Note: a good password should have different characters such as [A-Z][a-z][0-9][!@#%],and no less than 8 characters

Thu Feb 21 16:45:33 CST 2019
Changing password for admin
Enter the new password (minimum of 5, maximum of 8 characters)
Please use a combination of upper and lower case letters and numbers.
New password:
Re-enter new password:
They don't match; try again.
New password:
Re-enter new password:
passwd: password changed.
Thu Feb 21 16:46:05 CST 2019

```

Figure 10-6 Main menu after the password is changed

```

welcome to nsfocus ADS
=====
1. IPv4 Network setting
2. IPv6 Network setting
3. DNS setting
4. Console Password change
5. Datetime setting
6. All Default setting
7. web Password Default setting
8. Console time out setting
9. Rollback system
10. System state check
11. Management interface ACL status
12. web server control
13. Reboot System
14. Logout
=====
Input your selection:█

```



Note

Please set the login password of the console as prompted. See appendix [B Default Parameters](#) for the initial account of the console.

## 10.2.5 Setting System Time

On the main menu, type **5** and press **Enter** to set system time, as shown in [Figure 10-7](#).

Type the new system date and time (format: 2013-03-26 14:52:12), and then press **Enter** to save the settings and return to the main menu.

Figure 10-7 Setting system time

```
Datetime set:
Current date is 2012-03-26 14:52:12
Input the new date: █
```



Caution

Changing system time may interrupt BGP routes and suspend traffic diversion. Please handle with caution.

## 10.2.6 Restoring Default Settings

On the main menu, type **6** and press **Enter** to restore default settings, including network settings and password of the web administrator. This operation takes effect immediately.

Note that the IP address of the management interface is restored as follows:

- If the management interface is configured with an IPv6 address, the IPv6 address is cleared.
- If the management interface is configured with an IPv4 address, the default IPv4 address is restored.

## 10.2.7 Restoring Initial Password of Web Administrator

On the main menu, type **7** and press **Enter** to restore the initial password of the web administrator, as shown in [Figure 10-8](#).

Type **y** as prompted and press **Enter** to restore the initial password, **nsfocus**.

Figure 10-8 Restoring the initial password of the web administrator

```
Input your selection:7
Warning: it will reset web password as default
Are you sure to continue(y/n)?: █
```

## 10.2.8 Setting the Console Timeout Value

On the main menu, type **8** and press **Enter** to open the console timeout setting window.

Figure 10-9 Setting the console timeout value

```

Console time out value is 10 minutes.
=====
  1. Enable console time out
  2. Disable console time out
  3. Set console time out value
  4. return
=====
Input your selection:
  
```

In the window shown in [Figure 10-10](#), you can perform the following operations:

- Type **1** and press **Enter** to enable the console timeout function.  
The console timeout function is enabled by default. The default timeout value is **10** minutes.
- Type **2** and press **Enter** to disable the console timeout function.
- Type **3** and press **Enter**. Then you can specify the console timeout value in minutes, which must be an integer in the range of 1 to 60.

Figure 10-10 Setting the timeout value

```

Console time out is close.
=====
  1. Enable console time out
  2. Disable console time out
  3. Set console time out value
  4. return
=====
Input your selection:3
Time value in minute[1~60]:█
  
```

- Type **4** and press **Enter** to return to the main menu.

## 10.2.9 Rolling Back the Version



This function works only for ADS V4.5R88F30 and later, but not for ADS V4.5R90F01 currently.

On the main menu, type **9** and press **Enter** to open the version rollback window.

Figure 10-11 Rolling back the version

```
welcome to Nsfocus ADS
=====
 1. IPv4 Network setting
 2. IPv6 Network setting
 3. DNS setting
 4. Console Password change
 5. Datetime setting
 6. All Default setting
 7. Web Password Default setting
 8. Console time out setting
 9. Rollback system
10. System state check
11. Management interface ACL status
12. Reboot System
13. Logout
=====
Input your selection:9
This operation will rollback system to last available version.
And it will reboot system automatically if rollback succeed. Are you sure want to
rollback system[y/n]?y
It will rollback to version v4.5R90F01 (build date: 20180917). Are you sure to co
ntinue?[y/n]
y
Start to rollback system and it will take a few minutes. Please wait.....
Rollback succeed and it will reboot system after a few seconds.█
```

In the window shown in [Figure 10-11](#), type **y** and press **Enter**. Then the current version is rolled back to the previous one, that is, the one before the upgrade. Note that the version can be rolled back only once.

## 10.2.10 Viewing System Information

On the main menu, type **10** and press **Enter**. Then system information is displayed. As shown in [Figure 10-12](#), the system information shows that the system is normally started. This function is used to check the startup status of the device.

Figure 10-12 Viewing system information

```
Input your selection:10
Current system is ready, system hash id: 9104-4884-99BE-B6F6.█
```

## 10.2.11 Configuring the Management Interface Access Control Function

On the main menu, type **11** and press **Enter** to open the management interface access control setting window.

Figure 10-13 Configuring the management interface access control function

```
The management interface ACL function has been enabled.
The default ACL action is permit
Management interface ACL list:
10.66.70.214      255.255.255.255      permit
10.245.25.211    255.255.255.255      permit
Do you want to disable management interface ACL function?[yes/no]█
```



In the window shown in [Figure 10-13](#), type **yes** and press **Enter** to disable the management interface access control function or type **no** and press **Enter** to return to the previous menu, with the current status of this function unchanged.

## 10.2.12 Configuring the Web Server Control Function

On the main menu, type **12** and press **Enter** to open the web server control window.

Figure 10-14 Managing the web server

```
Input your selection:12
You can start or stop or restart web server here
    0. stop web server
    1. start web server
    2. restart web server
Input your selection:█
```

In the window shown in [Figure 10-14](#), you can perform the following operations:

- Type **0** and press **Enter** to stop the web server.
- Type **1** and press **Enter** to start the web server.
- Type **2** and press **Enter** to restart the web server.

## 10.2.13 Configuring Remote Assistance

On the main menu, type **13** and press **Enter** to open the remote assistance configuration window, as shown in [Figure 10-15](#). This window shows the key for remote login and QR code of the key.

Figure 10-15 Configuring remote assistance



In the window shown in [Figure 10-15](#), you can perform the following operations:

- Type **1** and press **Enter** to disable remote assistance.
- Type **2** and press **Enter** to return to the main menu.

## 10.2.14 Resetting Authentication Method

On the main menu, type **14** and press **Enter** to open the vADS authentication resetting window, as shown in [Figure 10-16](#).

Figure 10-16 Resetting the vADS authentication method

```
Input your selection:14
Warning: it will reset authentication selection
Are you sure to continue(y/n)?:
```

In the window shown in [Figure 10-16](#), type **y** and press **Enter** to reset the vADS authentication method or type **n** and press **Enter** to return to the previous menu, with the current configuration unchanged.

## 10.2.15 Restarting the System

On the main menu, type **15** and press **Enter** to open the system restart setting window.

Figure 10-17 Restarting the system

```
Input your selection:15
Are you sure to reboot system? Y(y) or N(n)
```

In the window shown in [Figure 10-17](#), type **y** and press **Enter** to restart the system.

Figure 10-18 System restart setting window

```
Input your selection:15
Are you sure to reboot system? Y(y) or N(n)y
Start to Reboot system
reboot
reboot slot 1
```

## 10.2.16 Exiting the Console

On the main menu, type **16** and press **Enter** to log out of the console-based manager.

# 11 Initial Configuration

---

The device can operate properly after you complete simple network configuration and import a valid certificate. Network configuration involves the following:

- IP address
- Subnet mask
- Gateway
- DNS Server

Network configuration can be conducted on the console or the web-based manager. Both approaches require a computer and accessories (included in the accessory box). Choose an approach as required.

To perform configurations on the console, you need to connect the device to a computer with a console port cable. The console port rate of ADS devices is 115200 bps. After login, you can perform configurations by selecting menus. For details, see section [11.2 Network Configuration on the Console](#).

To perform configurations on the web-based manager, do as follows:

- Step 1** Use a crossover cable (included in the accessory box) to connect the working interface on the device to the network interface on the computer.
- Step 2** Configure computer-related parameters to make it in the same network segment as the device.
- Step 3** Log in to the Web management interface through HTTPS and configure the device. For details, see sections [11.3 Login to Web-Based Manager](#) and [11.5 Network Configuration on Web-based Manager](#).

---End

The certificate file can be imported only on the web-based manager. You are recommended to import a certificate file the first time you log in to the Web management interface.

## 11.1 Login to Console

Before logging in to the console, the administrator needs to prepare the following:

- One computer
- One serial cable included in the accessory box
- Terminal software (such as the HyperTerminal software included in Microsoft Windows) that can establish communication to the ADS device via the console

- Connect the ADS device and the computer by using a console cable.

Here, the terminal software included in a Microsoft Windows XP operating system is used as an example to detail the connection process:

If the user name and password are correct, the administrator will successfully log in to the console. An optimal display effect will be achieved for terminal ID VT100.

----End



Note

After logging in to the console, you can only operate on the keyboard. Type a sequence number as prompted and press **Enter** to open the corresponding console management menu.

## 11.2 Network Configuration on the Console

After successful login, configure network parameters of the device as required.

**Step 1** Configure the IP address. Since ADS devices support IPv4/IPv6 dual-stack, you can configure the IP address/subnet mask and IPv6 address/prefix length for the management interface.

- IPv4 address: On the main menu, type **1** and press **Enter** to configure the IPv4 address, subnet mask and gateway address as prompted. After confirming the settings, type **y** and press **Enter** to save the settings and return to the main menu.
- IPv6 address: On the main menu, type **2** and press **Enter** to configure the IPv6 address, prefix length and gateway address as prompted. After confirming the settings, type **y** and press **Enter** to save the settings and return to the main menu.

**Step 2** On the main menu, type **3** and press **Enter** to configure the DNS server.

**Step 3** After the configuration is complete, type **14** on the main menu and press **Enter** to log out of the console.

----End

## 11.3 Login to Web-Based Manager

To log in to the web-based manager of the ADS device (here, an ADS NX5-4020 product is used as an example), perform the following steps:

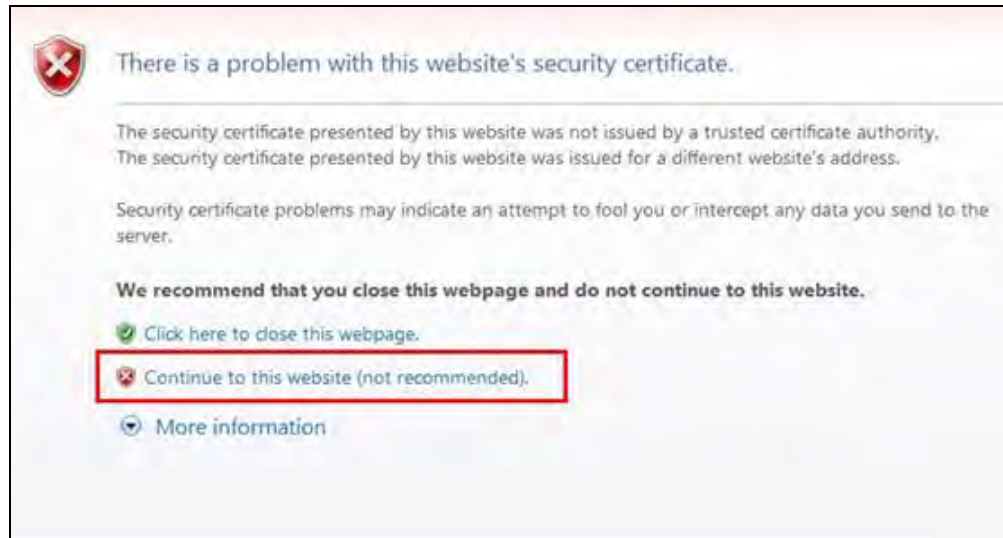
**Step 1** Verify that the client is connected to the Internet.

**Step 2** Start the IE browser and access the web-based manager's IP address by HTTPS.

As the ADS device supports both IPv4 and IPv6 protocols, you can type an IPv4 address (for example, <https://192.168.1.1>) or IPv6 address (for example, [https://\[2001::107\]](https://[2001::107])).

After you type the IP address, a security alert page appears as shown in [Figure 11-1](#).

Figure 11-1 Security alert page



**Step 3** Click **Continue to this website (not recommended)** to accept the channel secured by NSFOCUS NIPS certificate.

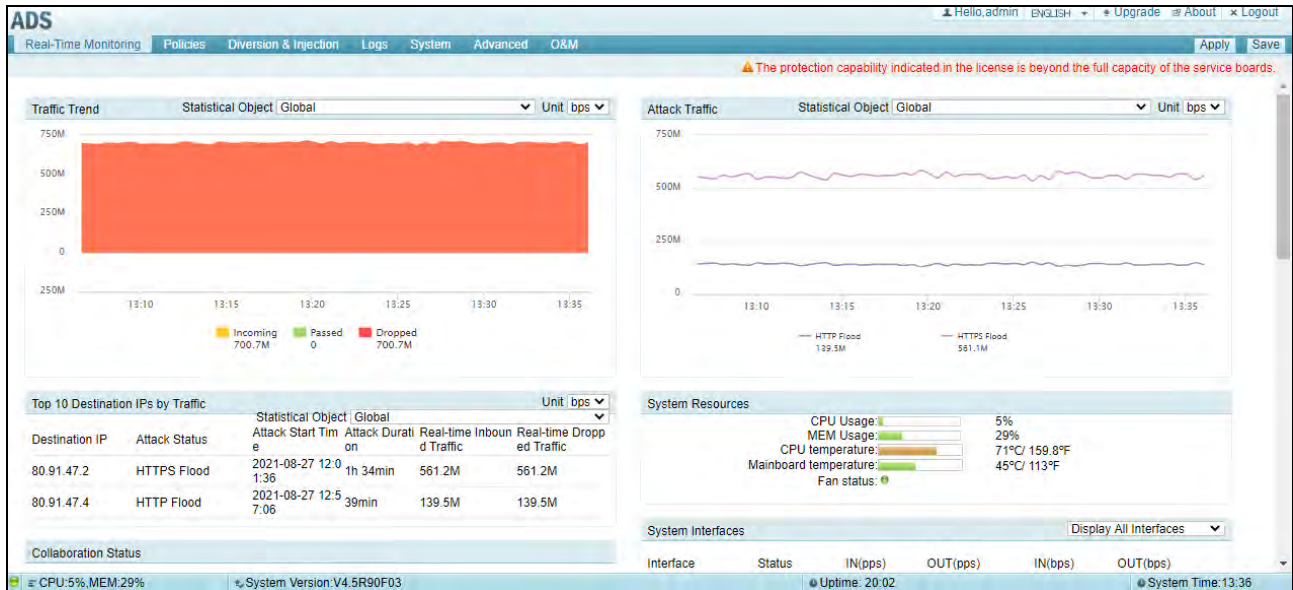
**Step 4** In the login page shown in [Figure 11-2](#), select a language, type a correct user name and password, and click **Login** to log in to the web-based manager.

Figure 11-2 Login page



After a successful login, the web-based manager appears, as shown in [Figure 11-3](#).

Figure 11-3 Web-based manager



**Step 5** On the page shown in [Figure 11-3](#), set the user locality, system time zone, and system time.

Figure 11-4 Setting the country/region and time zone

The screenshot shows the "Region and Time Settings" configuration page. It contains the following fields:

- Region:** A dropdown menu set to "EMEA".
- System Time Zone:** A dropdown menu set to "(GMT+08:00), Beijing, Chongqing, Hong Kong, Urumqi, Shanghai".
- System Time:** A text input field set to "2021-09-15 10:21".

A "Next" button is located at the bottom right of the form.

**Step 6** Click Next.

The page for changing the initial password appears.

The new password must be a string of no less than 8 characters and contain at least two of the following character types: English letters, digits, and special characters.

Figure 11-5 Changing the initial password

**Step 7** After changing the initial password, click **Finish** to make the settings take effect. The web-based manager appears.

---End



Note

- You are advised to use IE 8.0 through 10.0 or Chrome, with the resolution of 1024x768 or higher. If you use the IE-based tabbed browsers (such as MyIE and Maxthon) or browsers that are not based on IE core (such as Opera), pages may be displayed improperly.
- Before login, check whether **Block all pop-ups** is selected. If yes, deselect it.
- The browser you use must support JavaScript, cookies, and frames.
- Possible causes for login failures: incorrect user name, incorrect password, and upper/lower case confusion of the user name or password.
- During your first login, the system prompts a dialog box of changing the password. You can proceed only after successfully changing the password. The new password cannot be the same as the default password.
- The system will return to the login page if a user is idle for the period specified by **Auto Idle Logout**. After that, the user needs to log in again if the user wants to perform operations.
- You need to import the license after the first login. For details, refer to the NSFOCUS ADS User Guide.

## 11.4 Importing a License

After logging in to an ADS device, you must import a license before using it. To import a license, perform the following steps:

**Step 1** Choose **System > Others > License Info**.

Figure 11-5 shows the license page.

Figure 11-6 License page before the import of a license

License Info	
Type	/ /
Running Mode	/ /
Start Date	/ /
End Date	/ /
Processing Capacity (pps)	0
Processing Capacity (Gbps)	0.00
Authorization module	IPv6 / /
Holder	NTI / /
Serial No.	/ /

License Update: Choose File No file chosen. [Submit] [Preview] [Export]

**Step 2** Click **Choose File** to browse to an ADS license file.

 <b>Note</b>	To get an ADS license file, please contact technical support personnel of NSFOCUS.
-----------------	--

**Step 3** Click **Submit** to import the license file.

A dialog box appears, asking you to confirm the terms and conditions for use of NSFOCUS products.

**Step 4** Click **OK** in the dialog box to continue the license import.

The page after an import success is as shown in **错误!未找到引用源。**

Figure 11-7 Importing the license successfully

License Info	
Type	Trial License
Running Mode	Diversion
Start Date	2021-09-14
End Date	2021-10-14
Processing Capacity (pps)	2,976,000
Processing Capacity (Gbps)	4.00
Authorization module	IPv6 Supported NTI Supported
Holder	Carson
Serial No.	4DA1-4D4F-BB32-A319

License Update: Choose File No file chosen. [Submit] [Preview] [Export]

----End

## 11.5 Network Configuration on Web-based Manager

The web-based manager enables you to configure network parameters as required.

Choose **System > Local Settings > Basic Settings**, and click **Edit** to configure network parameters. Then click **Save** at the upper-right corner of the page to make the configuration take effect.



After the configuration is complete, the device is ready for use. For detailed usage, refer to the *NSFOCUS ADS User Guide*.

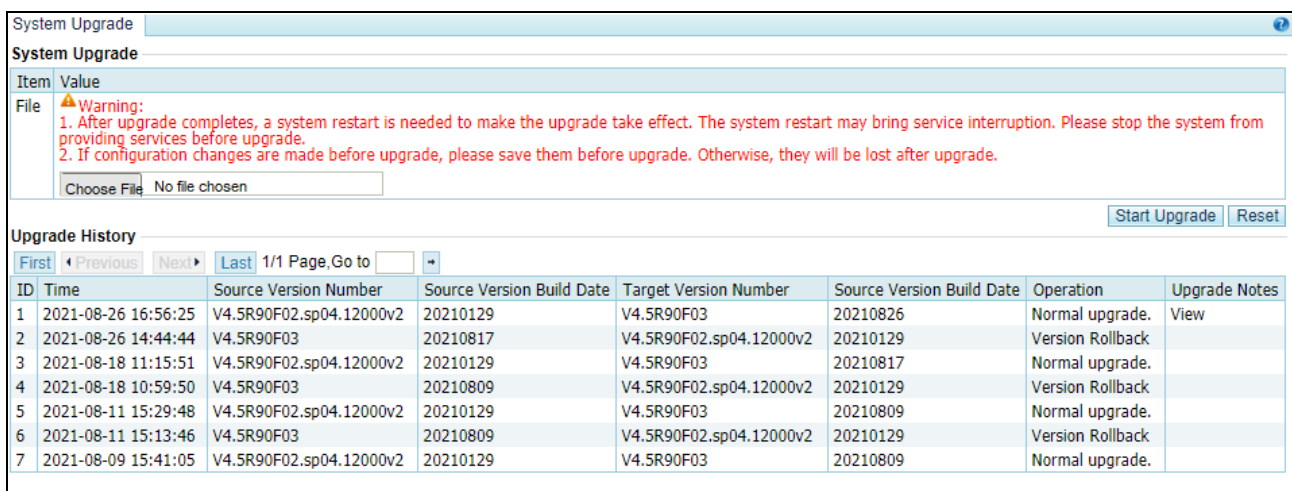
# 12 System Maintenance

## 12.1 System Upgrade

Timely system upgrade will increase the anti-attack capability. The system procedure is as follows:

**Step 1** Choose **System > Others > System Upgrade** to open the system upgrade page, as shown in [Figure 3-69](#).

Figure 12-1 System upgrade



The screenshot shows the 'System Upgrade' page. At the top, there is a 'System Upgrade' title bar. Below it, there is a 'System Upgrade' section with a table of 'Item' and 'Value'. The 'File' row shows a warning message: 'Warning: 1. After upgrade completes, a system restart is needed to make the upgrade take effect. The system restart may bring service interruption. Please stop the system from providing services before upgrade. 2. If configuration changes are made before upgrade, please save them before upgrade. Otherwise, they will be lost after upgrade.' Below the warning is a 'Choose File' button and a text box containing 'No file chosen'. To the right of the text box are 'Start Upgrade' and 'Reset' buttons. Below this is the 'Upgrade History' section, which includes a table with the following data:

ID	Time	Source Version Number	Source Version Build Date	Target Version Number	Source Version Build Date	Operation	Upgrade Notes
1	2021-08-26 16:56:25	V4.5R90F02.sp04.12000v2	20210129	V4.5R90F03	20210826	Normal upgrade.	View
2	2021-08-26 14:44:44	V4.5R90F03	20210817	V4.5R90F02.sp04.12000v2	20210129	Version Rollback	
3	2021-08-18 11:15:51	V4.5R90F02.sp04.12000v2	20210129	V4.5R90F03	20210817	Normal upgrade.	
4	2021-08-18 10:59:50	V4.5R90F03	20210809	V4.5R90F02.sp04.12000v2	20210129	Version Rollback	
5	2021-08-11 15:29:48	V4.5R90F02.sp04.12000v2	20210129	V4.5R90F03	20210809	Normal upgrade.	
6	2021-08-11 15:13:46	V4.5R90F03	20210809	V4.5R90F02.sp04.12000v2	20210129	Version Rollback	
7	2021-08-09 15:41:05	V4.5R90F02.sp04.12000v2	20210129	V4.5R90F03	20210809	Normal upgrade.	

**Step 2** Click **Choose File**, select an upgrade package, and then click **Start Upgrade**.



During the upgrade, you need to wait patiently until a message indicating successful upgrade appears.

**Step 3** On receiving a successful upgrade message, please restart the system without clicking **Save**.

**Step 4** View version information to confirm upgrade success.

Re-log in to the system, choose **System > Others >Version Info**, and view the version number; or you can view the current version information in the **Upgrade History** table in the **System Upgrade** page shown in [Figure 12-1](#).

**Note**

If problems emerge after upgrade and version rollback is needed, the version can only be rolled back to the source version. For detailed rollback operations, please contact technical support personnel of NSFOCUS.

---End

## 12.2 Common Troubleshooting

### 12.2.1 Web Login Failure

#### Symptom

Fail to access the web-based manager after the manager is installed.

#### Troubleshooting

Check whether the network connection between the client and the device management port is restricted by a firewall. If so, make sure that port 443 of the ADS device is accessible.

### 12.2.2 Device Access Failure

#### Symptom

The device is not accessible though its threshold is not triggered yet.

#### Troubleshooting

- Check whether the device that is directly connected with the ADS has a hub or not. A hub could degrade performance and should be replaced by a switch.
- Check whether the parameters about attack protection rules are too strictly configured.
- Check whether the IP protection rules have restrictions on the IP address.

### 12.2.3 License Import Failure

#### Symptom

Fail to import a license.

#### Troubleshooting

If the license complies with the device model, check the following:

- The production date of the new license must be later than the original one.
- The expiry date of the new license must be later than the original one.

You can import license successfully only when both the preceding conditions are satisfied.

Once a new license is imported, you are barred from importing old licenses. To use such old ones, you need to reapply them.

## 12.2.4 MAC Address Learning Failure

### Symptom

When connected with a router, neither the router nor the device can learn the MAC address.

### Troubleshooting

Check the following:

- Check whether IP addresses of the two devices are in the same network segment, whether the IP configuration is incorrect, or whether the interface is not shut down.
- If the connected interface is an optical port, change the optical module or the optical fiber. There once was a MAC learning problem caused by the optical module with too high power. Changing an optical module addressed the problem.
- If the connected interface is an electrical port, set the two ends to the same negotiation mode and speed.
- If the problem persists, contact NSFOCUS technical support engineers.

## 12.2.5 Ping Failure or Excessive Packets Drop

### Symptom

The device does not answer pinging or too many packets are dropped.

### Troubleshooting

Check the following from lower layers to high layers:

- Check the working mode and current state of the NIC to determine whether connections are proper.
- Set the operating mode of the device to packet forwarding mode to determine whether the device software operates properly.

Remove the device and detect packet loss on uplink and downlink devices to determine whether the device operates properly.

# A Acronyms and Abbreviations

---

ACL	access control list
ARP	Address Resolution Protocol
CGI	Common Gateway Interface
CSRF	cross-site request forgery
CSS/XSS	cross-site scripting
DDoS	distributed denial-of-service
HTTP	Hypertext Transfer Protocol
IDC	Internet Data Center
IP	Internet Protocol
LAN	local area network
MAC	Media Access Control
MIME	Multipurpose Internet Mail Extensions
NSFOCUS WAF	NSFOCUS Web Application Firewall
SQL	Structured Query Language
URL	Uniform Resource Locator
WAN	wide area network

# B Default Parameters

---

## B.1 Default Parameters of the Management Interface

Management IP Address	192.168.1.100
Netmask	255.255.255.0
Default Gateway	192.168.1.1

## B.2 Default Account of the Web Administrator

User Name	admin
Password	nsfocus

## B.3 Default Account of the Console Administrator

User Name	admin
Password	nsfocus

## B.4 Default Account of the CLI Administrator

User Name	routerman
-----------	-----------

## B.5 Communication Parameters of the Console Port

Baud Rate	115200 bps
Data Bits	8

# C IPv4/IPv6 Support

The following table lists the support of ADS NX series' modules for IPv4 and IPv6.

Module	Function	IPv4	IPv6
Real-Time Monitoring			
Policies	SYN flood detection	√	√
	ACK flood detection	√	√
	UDP flood detection	√	√
	ICMP flood detection	√	√
	HTTP protection	√	√
	HTTPS protection	√	√
	DNS protection algorithms 1 and 2	√	√
	DNS protection algorithm 3	√	√
	DNS protection algorithm 4	√	√
	TCP control parameters	√	√
	TCP control parameters – TCP fragment control	√	√
	IP behavior control	√	√
	SIP protection – default DDoS	√	√
	SIP protection – groups	√	√
	UDP payload check – payload check	√	√
	UDP payload check – mode check	√	√
	UDP protection – UDP fragment control	√	√
	ICMP fragment control	√	√
	UDP protection – drop UDP fragments – groups	√	√
	UDP protection – maximum packet length	√	√
UDP protection – traffic control by Src IP + Src port	√	√	
UDP protection – traffic control by Dst IP + Dst port	√	√	

Module	Function	IPv4	IPv6
	UDP protection – traffic control by Src IP	√	√
	UDP protection – traffic control by Dst IP	√	√
	UDP protection – minimum packet length	√	√
	UDP protection – traffic control by Dst IP + Src port	√	√
	ICMP traffic rate limiting	√	√
	Watermark protection	√	×
	Protocol ID check	√	√
	Group traffic control	√	√
	Port check	√	√
	URL rules	√	√
	Advanced global parameters	√	√
	Policy auto-learning	√	√
	Access control rules	√	√
	Reflection protection rules	√	√
	GeoIP rules	√	√
	Regular expression rules	√	√
	Hardware access control rules	√	√
	Connection exhaustion rules	√	√
	URL-ACL protection rules	√	√
	Blacklist	√	√
	Whitelist	√	√
	HTTP keyword checking	√	√
	DNS keyword checking	√	√
Diversion & Injection	Running mode	√	√
	Port channel configuration	√	√
	IP address configuration	√	√
	Working interface access control (web and SSH)	√	√
	BGP diversion	√	√
	OSPF diversion	√	√
	ISIS	√	×
	RIP	√	√
	LDP	√	×
	IP route assignment	√	√



Module	Function	IPv4	IPv6
	Injection interface	√	√
	Layer 2 injection	√	√
	Layer 3 injection	√	√
	MPLS injection	√	√
	MPLS VPN injection	√	√
	GRE tunnel injection	√	√
	MAC address table	√	√
	Filtering rules	√	√
	Manual diversion	√	√
	Group diversion	√	√
	Diversion routing table	√	√
	MPLS route	√	×
	Syslog diversion configuration – collaboration with Genie devices	√	×
	Syslog diversion configuration – collaboration with Arbor devices	√	√
	Syslog diversion configuration – collaboration with Samurai devices	√	×
	Syslog diversion configuration – collaboration with Kuanguang devices	√	×
Collaboration	Collaboration with ADS M	√	√
	Collaboration with ESPP	√	×
	Collaboration with NTA V4.5.61.2	√	×
	Collaboration with NTA V4.5R90F01	√	√
Logs	Attack logs	√	√
	System operation logs	√	√
	System login logs	√	√
	Link status logs	—	—
	Traffic diversion logs	√	√
	HA synchronization logs	√	√
	Syslog diversion logs	√	√
System	Basic settings	√	√
	Interface link configuration	—	—
	System user management	√	√
	Management mode configuration	√	√

Module	Function	IPv4	IPv6
	Configuration file management	√	√
	HA configuration	√	√
	Management interface access control	√	√
	Collaboration configuration	√	√
	Bandwidth overrun limit	—	—
	Login security settings	√	√
	Locked user management	√	√
	Authentication configuration	√	√
	Syslog configuration	√	√
	SNMP trap configuration	√	√
	SNMP agent setting	√	×
	Email configuration	√	√
	SFTP/SSH log export	√	√
	License interface	—	—
	License speed limit	—	—
	System upgrade	—	—
	Remote assistance	—	—
	SSL certificate import	—	—
	One-click inspection	—	—
	Version information	—	—
Advanced	Packet capture management	√	√
	Pattern matching rules	√	√
NTI	Upload	√	√
	Synchronization	√	×
	Query	√	×